Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- ☑ Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

- ☐ Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☑ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- ☑ Showthrough/ Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

☑ Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires: Various paging. Irregular pagination: [1] - 211, 214 - 218, 217 - 412 p.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
								✓			

VOYAGES

FROM

MONTREAL

THROUGH THE

Continent of North America, &c. &c.

VOYAGES

FROM

MONTREAL,

ON THE RIVER ST. LAURENCE,

THROUGH THE

CONTINENT OF NORTH AMERICA,

TO THE

FROZEN AND PACIFIC OCEANS;

In the Years 1789 *and* 1793.

WITH A PRELIMINARY ACCOUNT

OF THE RISE, PROGRESS, AND PRESENT STATE OF

THE FUR TRADE

OF THAT COUNTRY.

ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS.

BY ALEXANDER MACKENZIE, ESQ.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR T. CADELL, JUN. AND W. DAVIES, STRAND; COBBETT AND MORGAN, PALL-MALL; AND W. CREECH, AT EDINBURGH.

BY R. NOBLE, OLD-BAILEY.

M.DCCC.

PAAF
FC
3905.1
N81
1801

27402

TO

HIS MOST SACRED MAJESTY

GEORGE THE THIRD,

THIS VOLUME

IS INSCRIBED,

BY *HIS MAJESTY'S*

MOST FAITHFUL SUBJECT,

AND

DEVOTED SERVANT,

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE.

PREFACE.

ON preſenting this Volume to my Country, it is not neceſſary to enter into a particular account of thoſe voyages whoſe journals form the principal part of it, as they will be found, I truſt, to explain themſelves. It appears, however, to be a duty, which the Public have a right to expect from me, to ſtate the reaſons which have influenced me in delaying the publication of them.

It has been aſſerted, that a miſunderſtanding between a perſon high in office and myſelf, was the cauſe of this procraſtination. It has alſo been propagated, that it was occaſioned by that precaution which the policy of commerce will ſometimes ſuggeſt; but they are both equally devoid of foundation. The one is an idle tale; and there could be no ſolid reaſon for concealing the circumſtances of diſcoveries, whoſe arrangements and proſecution were ſo honourable to my aſſociates and myſelf, at whoſe expence they were undertaken. The delay actually aroſe from the very active and buſy mode of life in which I was engaged ſince the voyages have been completed; and when, at length, the opportunity arrived, the apprehenſion of preſenting myſelf to the Public in the character of an Author, for which the courſe and occupations of

my life have by no means qualified me, made me hesitate in committing my papers to the Press; being much better calculated to perform the voyages, arduous as they might be, than to write an account of them. However, they are now offered to the Public with the submission that becomes me.

I was led, at an early period of life, by commercial views, to the country North-West of Lake Superior, in North America, and being endowed by Nature with an inquisitive mind and enterprising spirit; possessing also a constitution and frame of body equal to the most arduous undertakings, and being familiar with toilsome exertions in the prosecution of mercantile pursuits, I not only contemplated the practicability of penetrating across the continent of America, but was confident in the qualifications, as I was animated by the desire, to undertake the perilous enterprize.

The general utility of such a discovery, has been universally acknowledged; while the wishes of my particular friends and commercial associates, that I should proceed in the pursuit of it, contributed to quicken the execution of this favourite project of my own ambition: and as the completion of it extends the boundaries of geographic science, and adds new countries to the realms of British commerce, the danger I have encountered, and the toils I have suffered, have found their recompence; nor will the many tedious and weary days, or the gloomy and inclement nights which I have passed, have been passed in vain.

The

The firſt voyage has ſettled the dubious point of a practicable North-Weſt paſſage; and I truſt, that it has ſet that long agitated queſtion at reſt, and extinguiſhed the diſputes reſpecting it for ever. An enlarged diſcuſſion of that ſubject will be found to occupy the concluding pages of this volume.

In this voyage, I was not only without the neceſſary books and inſtruments, but alſo felt myſelf deficient in the ſciences of aſtronomy and navigation: I did not heſitate, therefore, to undertake a winter's voyage to this country, in order to procure the one and acquire the other. Theſe objects being accompliſhed, I returned, to determine the practicability of a commercial communication through the continent of North America, between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, which is proved by my ſecond journal. Nor do I heſitate to declare my decided opinion, that very great and eſſential advantages may be derived by extending our trade from one ſea to the other.

Some account of the fur trade of Canada from that country, of the native inhabitants, and of the extenſive diſtricts connected with it, forms a preliminary diſcourſe, which will, I truſt, prove intereſting to a nation whoſe general policy is blended with, and whoſe proſperity is ſupported by, the purſuits of commerce. It will alſo qualify the reader to purſue the ſucceeding voyages with ſuperior intelligence and ſatisfaction.

Theſe voyages will not, I fear, afford the variety that may be expected from them; and that which they offered to the eye, is not of a

nature

nature to be effectually transferred to the page. Mountains and vallies, the dreary waſte, and wide-ſpreading foreſts, the lakes and rivers ſucceed each other in general deſcription; and, except on the coaſts of the Pacific Ocean, where the villages were permanent, and the inhabitants in a great meaſure ſtationary, ſmall bands of wandering Indians are the only people whom I ſhall introduce to the acquaintance of my readers.

The beaver and the buffalo, the mooſe-deer and the elk, which are the principal animals to be found in theſe countries, are already ſo familiar to the naturaliſts of Europe, and have been ſo often as well as correctly deſcribed in their works, that the bare mention of them, as they enlivened the landſcape, or were hunted for food; with a curſory account of the ſoil, the courſe and navigation of lakes and rivers, and their various produce, is all that can be reaſonably expected from me.

I do not poſſeſs the ſcience of the naturaliſt; and even if the qualifications of that character had been attained by me, its curious ſpirit would not have been gratified. I could not ſtop to dig into the earth, over whoſe ſurface I was compelled to paſs with rapid ſteps; nor could I turn aſide to collect the plants which nature might have ſcattered on the way, when my thoughts were anxiouſly employed in making proviſion for the day that was paſſing over me. I had to encounter perils by land and perils by water; to watch the ſavage who was our guide, or to guard againſt thoſe of his tribe who might meditate our deſtruction. I had, alſo, the paſſions and

fears

fears of others to control and ſubdue. To day I had to aſſuage the riſing diſcontents, and on the morrow to cheer the fainting ſpirits, of the people who accompanied me. The toil of our navigation was inceſſant, and oftentimes extreme; and in our progreſs over land we had no protection from the ſeverity of the elements, and poſſeſſed no accommodations or conveniences but ſuch as could be contained in the burden on our ſhoulders, which aggravated the toils of our march, and added to the wearifomeneſs of our way.

Though the events which compoſe my journals may have little in themſelves to ſtrike the imagination of thoſe who love to be aſtoniſhed, or to gratify the curioſity of ſuch as are enamoured of romantic adventures; nevertheleſs, when it is conſidered that I explored thoſe waters which had never before borne any other veſſel than the canoe of the ſavage; and traverſed thoſe deſerts where an European had never before preſented himſelf to the eye of its ſwarthy natives; when to theſe conſiderations are added the important objects which were purſued, with the dangers that were encountered, and the difficulties that were ſurmounted to attain them, this work will, I flatter myſelf, be found to excite an intereſt, and conciliate regard, in the minds of thoſe who peruſe it.

The general map which illuſtrates this volume, is reduced by Mr. Arrowſmith from his three-ſheet map of North-America, with the lateſt diſcoveries, which he is about to republiſh. His profeſſional abilites are well known, and no encomium of mine will advance the general and merited opinion of them.

Before

Before I conclude, I muſt beg leave to inform my readers, that they are not to expect the charms of embelliſhed narrative, or animated deſcription; the approbation due to ſimplicity and to truth is all I preſume to claim; and I am not without the hope that this claim will be allowed me. I have deſcribed whatever I ſaw with the impreſſions of the moment which preſented it to me. The ſucceſſive circumſtances of my progreſs are related without exaggeration or diſplay. I have ſeldom allowed myſelf to wander into conjecture; and whenever conjecture has been indulged, it will be found, I truſt, to be accompanied with the temper of a man who is not diſpoſed to think too highly of himſelf: and if at any time I have delivered myſelf with confidence, it will appear, I hope, to be on thoſe ſubjects which, from the habits and experience of my life, will juſtify an unreſerved communication of my opinions. I am not a candidate for literary fame: at the ſame time, I cannot but indulge the hope that this volume, with all its imperfections, will not be thought unworthy the attention of the ſcientific geographer; and that, by unfolding countries hitherto unexplored, and which, I preſume, may now be conſidered as a part of the Britiſh dominions, it will be received as a faithful tribute to the proſperity of my country.

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE.

London,
November 30, 1801.

PUBLIC MACHINES
OF CANADA

A

GENERAL HISTORY

OF THE

FUR TRADE

FROM

CANADA TO THE NORTH-WEST.

THE fur trade, from the earlieſt ſettlement of Canada, was conſidered of the firſt importance to that colony. The country was then ſo populous, that, in the vicinity of the eſtabliſhments, the animals whoſe ſkins were precious, in a commercial view, ſoon became very ſcarce, if not altogether extinct. They were, it is true, hunted at former periods, but merely for food and clothing. The Indians, therefore, to procure the neceſſary ſupply, were encouraged to penetrate into the country, and were generally accompanied by ſome of the Canadians, who found means to induce the remoteſt tribes of natives to bring the ſkins which were moſt in demand, to their ſettlements, in the way of trade.

It is not neceſſary for me to examine the cauſe, but experience proves that it requires much leſs time for a civilized people to deviate into

A MAP OF AMERI

between the Latitudes 40 and 70, and Longitud

EXHIBITING MACKENZIE'S

From Montreal *to* Fort Chipewyan *&from the*

In 1789, & to the West Pacific Ocean *in*

NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN

BERINGS STRAIT

STRAIT OF CHELEKHOF

COOKS INLET

Cape Prince of Wales

Norton Sound

Bristol Bay

Shoal Water

Williams Sound

Admiralty Bay

Cross Sound

Dixons Entrance

Observatory Inlet

Port Chipewyan

Slave River

Slave Lake

Great Bear Lake

Great Bear River

Mackenzie River

River of the Mountains

Peace River

Athapuscow or Great Slave Lake

Thickwood Hills

Methye Portage

Methye R.

Clear Water R.

Pine Island L.

Buffaloe R.

Buffaloe Lake

Salt Springs

High Rocks

Rocky Hills

Stony Mountains

Old Establishment

New Establishment

Cheefadawe Lake

Doobaunt Lake

Northlined Lake

Wholdyachuck L.

Anawanechad Lake

Thickwood Hills

THE SEA

Seen by Mr Hearne in 1771

COPPER INDIANS

MOUNTAIN IND

NATHANA IND.

INLAND IND.

BEAVER IND.

STRONGBOW INDIANS

THEVE KEE IVNED INDIANS

HARE IND.

Quarrellers Islands

Cape Lisburn

Cape Halkett

Cape Prince of Wales

Cape Darby

Cape Shallow water

Cape Newenham

Cape Douglas

Cape Elizabeth

Cape Edgecumbe

Cape Ankerapsky

Cape Muzon

Mt St Elias

Point Barrow

Point Hope

Point Franklin

Point Grenville

Point Lake

Point L.

Cape Dorset

Cape Fullerton

Cape Churchill

Cape Tatnam

Cape Esquimaux

Cape Perry

Cape Bathurst

Cape Kendall

Cape Parry

Cape Krusenstern

Cape Lisburne

Cape Thompson

Cape Beaufort

Cape Bedford

Cape Hotham

Cape Wrangell

Cape Fanshaw

Cape Ommaney

Cape Chacon

Cape Decision

Cape Muzon

Cape Edgecumbe

Cape Elizabeth

Cape Ankerapsky

Cape Douglas

Cape Newenham

Cape Prince of Wales

Cape Darby

Cape Shallow water

Cape Lisburne

Cape Halkett

Cape Lisburn

Cape Thompson

Cape Krusenstern

Cape Parry

Cape Kendall

Cape Bathurst

Cape Perry

Cape Esquimaux

Cape Tatnam

Cape Churchill

Cape Fullerton

Cape Dorset

Cape Bedford

Cape Hotham

Cape Wrangell

Cape Fanshaw

Cape Ommaney

Cape Chacon

Cape Decision

Point Barrow

Point Hope

Point Franklin

Point Grenville

Point Lake

Point L.

Mt St Elias

Admiralty Bay

Port Mulgrave

Port Francais

Port Fairweather

Port Banks

Port Bucarelli

Port Etches

Port Conclusion

Port Mulgrave

Port Francais

Port Fairweather

Port Banks

Port Bucarelli

Port Etches

Port Conclusion

Cook's Inlet

Kadiak I.

Unalaska I.

Andreanof I.

Schumagins I.

Kodiak I.

Trinity Islands

Foxe Basin

Foxe Channel

Fury and Hecla Strait

Repulse Bay

Melville Peninsula

Southampton I.

Baffins Bay

Lancaster Sound

Barrow Strait

Prince Regent Inlet

Boothia Peninsula

Gulf of Boothia

Victoria I.

Prince of Wales I.

Banks Land

Melville I.

Cornwallis I.

Devon I.

Somerset I.

Bathurst I.

Byam Martin I.

Parry Islands

Wellington Channel

Queen Elizabeths Islands

Ellesmere Land

Grinnell Land

Grant Land

Nares Land

Greenland

Davis Strait

Hudsons Bay

Hudsons Straits

Labrador

Newfoundland

Gulf of St Lawrence

Anticosti I.

Prince Edwards I.

Cape Breton I.

Nova Scotia

New Brunswick

Canada

Lake Superior

Lake Michigan

Lake Huron

Lake Erie

Lake Ontario

Lake Winnipeg

Lake Winnipegoos

Lake Manitou

Lake of the Woods

Lake Nipigon

Lake Abitibi

Lake Temiscamingue

Lake St John

Lake Mistassini

Lake Nichicun

Lake Attikamegue

Lake Nipissing

Lake Simcoe

Lake Champlain

Lake George

Lake Winnipeg

Lake Winnipegoos

Lake Manitou

Lake of the Woods

Lake Nipigon

Lake Abitibi

Lake Temiscamingue

Lake St John

Lake Mistassini

Lake Nichicun

Lake Attikamegue

Lake Nipissing

Lake Simcoe

Lake Champlain

Lake George

Lake Superior

Lake Michigan

Lake Huron

Lake Erie

Lake Ontario

Hudsons Bay

Hudsons Straits

Davis Strait

Greenland

Labrador

Newfoundland

Gulf of St Lawrence

Anticosti I.

Prince Edwards I.

Cape Breton I.

Nova Scotia

New Brunswick

Canada

Bristol Bay

Cook's Inlet

Kadiak I.

Unalaska I.

Andreanof I.

Schumagins I.

Kodiak I.

Trinity Islands

Foxe Basin

Foxe Channel

Fury and Hecla Strait

Repulse Bay

Melville Peninsula

Southampton I.

Baffins Bay

Lancaster Sound

Barrow Strait

Prince Regent Inlet

Boothia Peninsula

Gulf of Boothia

Victoria I.

Prince of Wales I.

Banks Land

Melville I.

Cornwallis I.

Devon I.

Somerset I.

Bathurst I.

Byam Martin I.

Parry Islands

Wellington Channel

Queen Elizabeths Islands

Ellesmere Land

Grinnell Land

Grant Land

Nares Land

Greenland

Davis Strait

Hudsons Bay

Hudsons Straits

Labrador

Newfoundland

Gulf of St Lawrence

Anticosti I.

Prince Edwards I.

Cape Breton I.

Nova Scotia

New Brunswick

Canada

Lake Superior

Lake Michigan

Lake Huron

Lake Erie

Lake Ontario

Lake Winnipeg

Lake Winnipegoos

Lake Manitou

Lake of the Woods

Lake Nipigon

Lake Abitibi

Lake Temiscamingue

Lake St John

Lake Mistassini

Lake Nichicun

Lake Attikamegue

Lake Nipissing

Lake Simcoe

Lake Champlain

Lake George

OF AMERICA,

and 70, and Longitudes 45 and 180 WEST,

MACKENZIE's TRACK

Fort Chipewyan *& from thence to the* North Sea

the West Pacific Ocean *in 1793.*

110 105 100 95 90 85 80 75 70 65 60 55 50 70 65 60

DAVIS STRAIT

WEST GREENLAND

EAST GREENLAND

Bells River
Bear Island
Cruzader Fiord
Bear Sound
Fredrick Fiord
Tunnudliarbik
Serrenoak
Cape Farewell

CUMBERLAND STR. 1585
C. Walsingham
Cape Walsingham
FROBISHERS STRAIT
North Bay
Saddle Back
Resolution I.
HUDSON'S STRAIT OR FROBISHERS MISTAKEN STRAIT
Charles I.
Salisbury Harbour
Long I.
South Bay
C. Chidley
C. Worstenholm
C. Grinnington
NAIN
Ogbuctoke
Byrons Bay
Ivucktoke
Round Hill
St Francis
Cape Charles
Hamilton Inlet
Bay of Bonavista
Bonavista
Cape Freels
St Johns
Trinity Bay
Placentia Bay
NEWFOUNDLAND
LABRADOR
ATLANTIC OCEAN
HUDSON STRAITS
HUDSON BAY
EAST MAIN
Great Whale River
Cape Jones
Cape Tatnam
West Pens
East Pens
Lookout
Severn House
Beacon
Seal Islands
Rupert's Creek
Owl River
Cape Churchill
Churchill Fort
Seal R.
Shethani R.
Egg River
Northlined Lake
Thlewdiaza R.
Dear River
Knaps Bay
Esquimeaux
Knight I.
Whale Cove
Marble Island
Rankins Inlet
Corbet Inlet
Lalaberé
Wager Island
St Tho. Roe's Welcome
Chesterfield Inlet
Hook Water
Baker's Lake
Repulse Bay
discovered 1742
C. Hope
Dear Sound
Savage Sound
Wager River
Cape Dobbs
Whale Point
C. Fullerton
Seahorse Pt.
Cape Comfort
Mill's Islands
Nottingham I.
Cary Swan's Nest
South Cape
Mansfield I.
Cape South
Thompson Hark
West Sleepers
Yath Kyed Lake
Doobaunt Lake
Napaoosish Lake
Cheefadawa Lake
Castsandgrin Lake
Clower L.
Firey mens L.
Anarnucshad Lake
Thirteen Island Lake
Wuddrahad Lake
Thelewyed Lake
Tittmeg L.
Wrigley L.
Weather L.
Clath-ha-chaga R.
L. Maomure and R.
Nevils Bay
Deskonnee R.
Thelewhish River
Very Hilly
and Stoney
This River by Indian report Joins the Sea
Very high Hills
There kye lyned L.
There kye kyed L.
High Rocks
Rocky Hills
Stone River
Rein Deer

NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN

Queen Charlottes Sound
Queen Charlottes Islands
Dixons Entrance
Observatory Inlet
Portland Canal
Tongass
Cape Chacon
Cape Edgecumbe
Norfolk Sound
C. Onmaney
Cape Ashington
Pt. Bucarelli
Fort Wrangel
Hippa I.
Resnells Sound
Ithbertoni Sound
C. St. James
Kingcott
Cabore R.
Hugh Sound
Scotts Bay
Cape Spliton
Fort Brook
Quadra & Vancouver I.
Nootka
Breakers Point
Suppossed Strait of Juan de Fuca
Pinnacle
Queen Firth
Whidbeys Harbr
Saddle Hill
C. Mizaria
Quick Sand Bay
C. Foulweather
C. Perpetua
C. Gregory
Cape Blanco
Pt. St. George
Trinidad
Port Discovery
Admiralty Inlet
Houghton
Finlays River
Rocky Mountains
Slave River
Buffalo L.
Wholdyschuck L.
Thirtimah River
Dockanies R.
Northlined L.
High Rocks
Salt Springs
Rocky Hills
Stone River
Old Establishment
New Establishment
Chipewyan or Peck R.
Fort Chipewyan
Elk Isle
Red Willow River
Pelican Rr.
Rain Deer Lake
Mountain of Hill R.
Lake Primrose Lake
Black Bear Lakes
Carrying Place
Buffalo Lake
Ia la Crue R. Lake
Fir L.
Burnwood Lake
Sweet Herb L.
Rood L.
Pine Island L.
Thompson L.
Cedar L.
Red Deer L.
Swan Lake
Somerset House
Carlton House
Northern House
Granke Ho.
Thorburne Ho.
M. Donalds Ho.
Stone Indians
Knifs R.
Pawnee Village
Missexinnie
Fall R.
Red Deer R.
Beaver L.
Beaver Lake
Beaver Rr.
Rapids
Moon L.
Pembina R.
Saskatchewan R.
Elbow or Bad River
Eaglehill Creek
Edge Coal Creek
great quantity of Coal in this Creek
Buffalo L.
Kikumeo L.
Battle R.
Manchester House
Hudsons Ho.
Shell R.
Cumberland Ho.
South Branch House
Etow we mah mik
Swan R.
Red River
Red Deer River
Carrying Place
Burnwood
Sturgeon L.
Pine Island L.
Cumberland Ho.
Saskatchewan R.
Shell R.
Swan Lake
Somerset House
Northern House
Carlton

HUDSON BAY

Northlined Lake
Churchill Fort
Cape Churchill
Owl River
Rupertsoak
Cape Tatnam
Great Whale River
Cape Jones
Lockout
Severn House Factory
Falconer L.
R. Hematiway
Seal Islands
Seal R.
Shethani R.
Stone River
Hills
Rain Deer Lake
Black Bear Lake
Split L.
Gull L.
Sinking L.
Fort Nelson R.
Steel Riv.
Bill R.
Swampy Lake
Knee Lake
Severn Lake
Severn River
Dead River
NENA WEWHOK INDIANS
Frog L.
Albany Fc.
Charlton L.
Albany River
East Main or Slude R.
East Main Factory
Moose Fort
Hurricanaw R.
Missinabanna L.
French Cr.
Gloucester House
Fabomit L.
Meminisca L.
Albany R.
Brunswick Ho.
Moose Brook
Abbitibbe L.
ABBITIBBES
Frederick Ho.
Abbitibbi R.
Ouibikee
Tobmeg River
Falls
Outpurn House
Red Lake House
Lake Pr. of Wales
L. Paquark
L. Seal
L. Joseph
L. Swan
Lake St. Joseph
Little Lake
Lake St. Pierre
R. Winnipon
Great Discharge
Sturgeon Lake
Shandbeadbury Lake
Miniapic Ho.
Otter Ho.
Royal I.
Mechipicoten
Keewena
White Fish R.
Grand Portage
Pt. au Sable
Gun Island
Dongean R.
Garlick R.
Dead R.
Montreal R.
River St Louis
Mississippi Riv.
Leaf River
Crow R.
Otter Tail Lake
Leech Lake
Red Lake R.
Red Lake
Goose R.
Pembina R.
Reed R.
Knife R.
Pawnee Village
Missouri
Thorburne Ho.
H. Donalds
Stone Indian R.
Grants Ho.
Carlton House
Northern Indians
Swan R.
Swan Lake
Red Deer
Red Deer L.
Cumberland House
Pine Island L. R.
Saskashawin R.
Beaver Lake
Portage
Carrying Place
Sweet Herb L.
Rood L.
Bill Portage
Painted Stone
Buckscontan or Evergreen Lake
Pathapeow Winapee L.
Setting Lake
Burntwood Lake
Sasquagamma Lake
3 Points L.
Rivers
Fir L.
Birch Lake
Portage
Grass L. Portage
Simpson L.
Cedar L.
LAKE WINNIPIC
Dona Pt.
Egg Isles
Poplar River
Eagle L.
Goose L.
Family Lake
Catt Lake
Catt Lake House
Beaver R.
Cumberland House
Somerset House
Martins Bay
Bulls Head
Ox Strait
Cedhead
Red Lake
Provision Store
Gun Wegon L.
Portage
Bottomless L.
Manitoulins
Dog Head
Granks Ho.
Thorburne Ho.
H. Donalds
Stone Indian R.
Reed R.
Pembina R.
Goose R.
Red Lake R.
Red Lake
Boo ohn R.
River Sturn R.
Red River
Leech Lake
Otter Tail Lake
Crow R.
Leaf River
Mississippi Riv.
River St Louis
Knife R.
Pawnee Village
Missouri
Green Bay
Menistic R.
LAKE MICHIGAN
Detroit
River Thames
R. Ohio
LAKE ERIE
Presque I.
Sandusky
Fort Erie
York
Navy Hall
Lake Simcoe
LAKE ONTARIO
Oswego
Ge. Sodus
R. Trent
Kingston
Thousand Is.
Wolf I.
New York
Connecticut River
Rhode Is.
Boston Harb.
Cape Cod
Nantucket I.
Martha's Vineyard
Penobscot B.
Passamaquoddy B.
Machias Bay
Cape Sable
Shelburne
Liverpool
Annapolis
Halifax Harb.
Dartmouth
Windsor
Minas Basin
St Croix R.
St John R.
St Andrews
Mouth of St Croix R.
Mouth of St John R.
Mouth of St Lawrence R.
Mouth of Ottawa R.
Mouth of Black R.
Mouth of Chaudiere R.
Mouth of Richelieu R.
Mouth of Sorel R.
Mouth of Yamaska R.
Mouth of St Francis R.
Mouth of Chateaugay R.
Mouth of Beauharnois R.
Mouth of Lachine R.
Mouth of Ouse R.
Mouth of Genesee R.
Mouth of Oswegatchie R.
Mouth of Cataraqui R.
Mouth of Trent R.
Mouth of Humber R.
Mouth of Grand R.
Mouth of Thames R.
Mouth of Detroit R.
Mouth of Sandusky R.
Mouth of Cuyahoga R.
Mouth of Ashtabula R.
Mouth of Conneaut R.
Mouth of Erie R.
Mouth of Chautauque R.
Mouth of Niagara R.
Mouth of Genesee R.
Mouth of Oswego R.
Mouth of Onondaga R.
Mouth of Seneca R.
Mouth of Susquehanna R.
Mouth of Delaware R.
Mouth of Hudson R.
Mouth of Connecticut R.
Mouth of Thames R.
Mouth of Housatonic R.
Mouth of Quinnipiac R.
Mouth of Saco R.
Mouth of Androscoggin R.
Mouth of Kennebec R.
Mouth of Penobscot R.
Mouth of St John R.
Mouth of St Croix R.
Mouth of Passamaquoddy B.
Mouth of Machias Bay
Mouth of Cape Sable
Mouth of Shelburne
Mouth of Liverpool
Mouth of Annapolis
Mouth of Halifax Harb.
Mouth of Dartmouth
Mouth of Windsor
Mouth of Minas Basin
Mouth of St Croix R.
Mouth of St John R.
Mouth of St Andrews
Mouth of Mouth of St Croix R.
Mouth of Mouth of St John R.
Mouth of Mouth of St Lawrence R.
Mouth of Mouth of Ottawa R.
Mouth of Mouth of Black R.
Mouth of Mouth of Chaudiere R.
Mouth of Mouth of Richelieu R.
Mouth of Mouth of Sorel R.
Mouth of Mouth of Yamaska R.
Mouth of Mouth of St Francis R.
Mouth of Mouth of Chateaugay R.
Mouth of Mouth of Beauharnois R.
Mouth of Mouth of Lachine R.
Mouth of Mouth of Ouse R.
Mouth of Mouth of Genesee R.
Mouth of Mouth of Oswegatchie R.
Mouth of Mouth of Cataraqui R.
Mouth of Mouth of Trent R.
Mouth of Mouth of Humber R.
Mouth of Mouth of Grand R.
Mouth of Mouth of Thames R.
Mouth of Mouth of Detroit R.
Mouth of Mouth of Sandusky R.
Mouth of Mouth of Cuyahoga R.
Mouth of Mouth of Ashtabula R.
Mouth of Mouth of Conneaut R.
Mouth of Mouth of Erie R.
Mouth of Mouth of Chautauque R.
Mouth of Mouth of Niagara R.
Mouth of Mouth of Genesee R.
Mouth of Mouth of Oswego R.
Mouth of Mouth of Onondaga R.
Mouth of Mouth of Seneca R.
Mouth of Mouth of Susquehanna R.
Mouth of Mouth of Delaware R.
Mouth of Mouth of Hudson R.
Mouth of Mouth of Connecticut R.
Mouth of Mouth of Thames R.
Mouth of Mouth of Housatonic R.
Mouth of Mouth of Quinnipiac R.
Mouth of Mouth of Saco R.
Mouth of Mouth of Androscoggin R.
Mouth of Mouth of Kennebec R.
Mouth of Mouth of Penobscot R.
Mouth of Mouth of St John R.
Mouth of Mouth of St Croix R.
Mouth of Mouth of Passamaquoddy B.
Mouth of Mouth of Machias Bay
Mouth of Mouth of Cape Sable
Mouth of Mouth of Shelburne
Mouth of Mouth of Liverpool
Mouth of Mouth of Annapolis
Mouth of Mouth of Halifax Harb.
Mouth of Mouth of Dartmouth
Mouth of Mouth of Windsor
Mouth of Mouth of Minas Basin

HUDSON BAY
JAMES'S BAY
SOUTH WALES
MISTASSINI
LAKE SUPERIOR
LAKE HURON
LAKE MICHIGAN
LAKE ERIE
LAKE ONTARIO
LOWER CANADA
UPPER CANADA
NEW BRUNSWICK
NOVA SCOTIA
NEW ENGLAND
UNITED STATES
ATLANTIC

105 100 Longitude West 95 from Grenwich. 90 85 80 75 70

Printed for Alexander Mac Kenzie No. 38 Norfolk Street Strand.

the manners and cuſtoms of ſavage life, than for ſavages to riſe into a ſtate of civilization. Such was the event with thoſe who thus accompanied the natives on their hunting and trading excurſions; for they became ſo attached to the Indian mode of life, that they loſt all reliſh for their former habits and native homes. Hence they derived the title of *Coureurs des Bois*, became a kind of pedlars, and were extremely uſeful to the merchants engaged in the fur trade; who gave them the neceſſary credit to proceed on their commercial undertakings. Three or four of theſe people would join their ſtock, put their property into a birch-bark canoe, which they worked themſelves, and either accompanied the natives in their excurſions, or went at once to the country where they knew they were to hunt. At length, theſe voyages extended to twelve or fifteen months, when they returned with rich cargoes of furs, and followed by great numbers of the natives. During the ſhort time requiſite to ſettle their accounts with the merchants, and procure freſh credit, they generally contrived to ſquander away all their gains, when they returned to renew their favourite mode of life: their views being anſwered, and their labour ſufficiently rewarded, by indulging themſelves in extravagance and diſſipation during the ſhort ſpace of one month in twelve or fifteen.

This indifference about amaſſing property, and the pleaſure of living free from all reſtraint, ſoon brought on a licentiouſneſs of manners which could not long eſcape the vigilant obſervation of the miſſionaries, who had much reaſon to complain of their being a diſgrace to the Chriſtian religion; by not only ſwerving from its duties themſelves, but by thus

thus bringing it into diſrepute with thoſe of the natives who had become converts to it; and, conſequently, obſtructing the great object to which thoſe pious men had devoted their lives. They, therefore, exerted their influence to procure the ſuppreſſion of theſe people, and accordingly, no one was allowed to go up the country to traffic with the Indians, without a licence from the government.

At firſt theſe permiſſions were, of courſe, granted only to thoſe whoſe character was ſuch as could give no alarm to the zeal of the miſſionaries: but they were afterwards beſtowed as rewards for ſervices, on officers, and their widows; and they, who were not willing or able to make uſe of them, (which may be ſuppoſed to be always the caſe with thoſe of the latter deſcription) were allowed to ſell them to the merchants, who neceſſarily employed the Coureurs des bois, in quality of their agents; and theſe people, as may be imagined, gave ſufficient cauſe for the renewal of former complaints; ſo that the remedy proved, in fact, worſe than the diſeaſe.

At length, military poſts were eſtabliſhed at the confluence of the different large lakes of Canada, which, in a great meaſure, checked the evil conſequences that followed from the improper conduct of theſe foreſters, and, at the ſame time, protected the trade. Beſides, a number of able and reſpectable men retired from the army, proſecuted the trade in perſon, under their reſpective licences, with great order and regularity, and extended it to ſuch a diſtance, as, in thoſe days, was conſidered to be an aſtoniſhing effort of commercial enterprize. Theſe perſons and the miſſionaries having combined their views at the ſame

time, ſecured the reſpect of the natives, and the obedience of the people neceſſarily employed in the laborious parts of this undertaking. Theſe gentlemen denominated themſelves commanders, and not traders, though they were intitled to both thoſe characters: and, as for the miſſionaries, if ſufferings and hardſhips in the proſecution of the great work which they had undertaken, deſerved applauſe and admiration, they had an undoubted claim to be admired and applauded: they ſpared no labour and avoided no danger in the execution of their important office; and it is to be ſeriouſly lamented, that their pious endeavours did not meet with the ſucceſs which they deſerved: for there is hardly a trace to be found beyond the cultivated parts, of their meritorious functions.

The cauſe of this failure muſt be attributed to a want of due conſideration in the mode employed by the miſſionaries to propagate the religion of which they were the zealous miniſters. They habituated themſelves to the ſavage life, and naturaliſed themſelves to the ſavage manners, and, by thus becoming dependant, as it were, on the natives, they acquired their contempt rather than their veneration. If they had been as well acquainted with human nature, as they were with the articles of their faith, they would have known, that the uncultivated mind of an Indian muſt be diſpoſed by much preparatory method and inſtruction to receive the revealed truths of Chriſtianity, to act under its ſanctions, and be impelled to good by the hope of its reward, or turned from evil by the fear of its puniſhments. They ſhould have began their work by teaching ſome of thoſe uſeful arts which are the inlets of knowledge, and lead the mind by degrees to objects of higher comprehenſion. Agriculture ſo formed to fix and combine ſociety, and ſo preparatory to

objects

objects of ſuperior conſideration, ſhould have been the firſt thing introduced among a ſavage people: it attaches the wandering tribe to that ſpot where it adds ſo much to their comforts; while it gives them a ſenſe of property, and of laſting poſſeſſion, inſtead of the uncertain hopes of the chaſe, and the fugitive produce of uncultivated wilds. Such were the means by which the foreſts of Paraguay were converted into a ſcene of abundant cultivation, and its ſavage inhabitants introduced to all the advantages of a civilized life.

The Canadian miſſionaries ſhould have been contented to improve the morals of their own countrymen, ſo that by meliorating their character and conduct, they would have given a ſtriking example of the effect of religion in promoting the comforts of life to the ſurrounding ſavages; and might by degrees have extended its benign influence to the remoteſt regions of that country, which was the object, and intended to be the ſcene, of their evangelic labours. But by bearing the light of the Goſpel at once to the diſtance of two thouſand five hundred miles from the civilized part of the colonies, it was ſoon obſcured by the cloud of ignorance that darkened the human mind in thoſe diſtant regions.

The whole of their long route I have often travelled, and the recollection of ſuch a people as the miſſionaries having been there, was confined to a few ſuperannuated Canadians, who had not left that country ſince the ceſſion to the Engliſh, in 1763, and who particularly mentioned the death of ſome, and the diſtreſſing ſituation of them all. But if theſe religious men did not attain the objects of their perſevering piety, they were, during their miſſion, of great ſervice to the commanders who

engaged

engaged in thoſe diſtant expeditions, and ſpread the fur trade as far Weſt as the banks of the Saſkatchiwine river, in 53. North latitude, and longitude 102 Weſt.

At an early period of their intercourſe with the ſavages, a cuſtom was introduced of a very excellent tendency, but is now unfortunately diſcontinued, of not ſelling any ſpirituous liquor to the natives. This admirable regulation was for ſome time obſerved, with all the reſpect due to the religion by which it was ſanctioned, and whoſe ſevereſt cenſures followed the violation of it. A painful penance could alone reſtore the offender to the ſuſpended rites of the ſacrament. The caſuiſtry of trade, however, diſcovered a way to gratify the Indians with their favourite cordial, without incurring the eccleſiaſtical penalties, by giving, inſtead of ſelling it to them.

But notwithſtanding all the reſtrictions with which commerce was oppreſſed under the French government, the fur trade was extended to the immenſe diſtance which has been already ſtated; and ſurmounted many moſt diſcouraging difficulties, which will be hereafter noticed; while, at the ſame time, no exertions were made from Hudſon's Bay to obtain even a ſhare of the trade of a country which, according to the charter of that company, belonged to it, and, from its proximity, is ſo much more acceſſible to the mercantile adventurer.

Of theſe trading commanders, I underſtood, that two attempted to penetrate to the Pacific Ocean, but the utmoſt extent of their journey I could never learn; which may be attributed, indeed, to a failure of the undertaking.

For

For ſome time after the conqueſt of Canada, this trade was ſuſpended, which muſt have been very advantageous to the Hudſon's Bay Company, as all the inhabitants to the Weſtward of Lake Superior, were obliged to go to them for ſuch articles as their habitual uſe had rendered neceſſary. Some of the Canadians who had lived long with them, and were become attached to a ſavage life, accompanied them thither annually, till mercantile adventurers again appeared from their own country, after an interval of ſeveral years, owing, as I ſuppoſe, to an ignorance of the country in the conquerors, and their want of commercial confidence in the conquered. There were, indeed, other diſcouragements, ſuch as the immenſe length of the journey neceſſary to reach the limits beyond which this commerce muſt begin; the riſk of property; the expences attending ſuch a long tranſport; and an ignorance of the language of thoſe who, from their experience, muſt be neceſſarily employed as the intermediate agents between them and the natives. But, notwithſtanding theſe difficulties, the trade, by degrees, began to ſpread over the different parts to which it had been carried by the French, though at a great riſk of the lives, as well as the property, of their new poſſeſſors, for the natives had been taught by their former allies to entertain hoſtile diſpoſitions towards the Engliſh, from their having been in alliance with their natural enemies the Iroquois; and there were not wanting a ſufficient number of diſcontented, diſappointed people to keep alive ſuch a notion; ſo that for a long time they were conſidered and treated as objects of hoſtility. To prove this diſpoſition of the Indians, we have only to refer to the conduct of Pontiac, at Detroit, and the ſurpriſe and taking of Michilimakinac, about this period.

Hence

Hence it aroſe, that it was ſo late as the year 1766, before which, the trade I mean to conſider, commenced from Michilimakinac. The firſt who attempted it were ſatisfied to go the length of the River Cameniſtiquia, about thirty miles to the Eaſtward of the Grande Portage, where the French had a principal eſtabliſhment, and was the line of their communication with the interior country. It was once deſtroyed by fire. Here they went and returned ſucceſsful in the following ſpring to Michilimakinac. Their ſucceſs induced them to renew their journey, and incited others to follow their example. Some of them remained at Cameniſtiquia, while others proceeded to and beyond the Grande Portage, which, ſince that time has become the principal entrepôt of that trade, and is ſituated in a bay, in latitude 48. North, and longitude 90. Weſt. After paſſing the uſual ſeaſon there, they went back to Michilimakinac as before, and encouraged by the trade, returned in increaſed numbers. One of theſe, Thomas Curry, with a ſpirit of enterprize ſuperior to that of his contemporaries, determined to penetrate to the furtheſt limits of the French diſcoveries in that country; or at leaſt till the froſt ſhould ſtop him. For this purpoſe he procured guides and interpreters, who were acquainted with the country, and with four canoes arrived at Fort Bourbon, which was one of their poſts, at the Weſt end of the Cedar Lake, on the waters of the Saſkatchiwine. His riſk and toil were well recompenſed, for he came back the following ſpring with his canoes filled with fine furs, with which he proceeded to Canada, and was ſatisfied never again to return to the Indian country.

From this period people began to ſpread over every part of the country, particularly where the French had eſtabliſhed ſettlements.

Mr. James

Mr. James Finlay was the firſt who followed Mr. Curry's example, and with the ſame number of canoes, arrived, in the courſe of the next ſeaſon, at Nipawee, the laſt of the French ſettlements on the bank of the Saſkatchiwine River, in latitude nearly 43½ North, and longitude 103 Weſt: he found the good fortune, as he followed, in every reſpect, the example, of his predeceſſor.

As may be ſuppoſed, there were now people enough ready to replace them, and the trade was purſued with ſuch avidity, and irregularity, that in a few years it became the reverſe of what it ought to have been. An animated competition prevailed, and the contending parties carried the trade beyond the French limits, though with no benefit to themſelves or neighbours, the Hudſon's-Bay Company; who in the year 1774, and not till then, thought proper to move from home to the Eaſt bank of Sturgeon Lake, in latitude 53. 56. North, and longitude 102. 15. Weſt, and became more jealous of their fellow ſubjects; and, perhaps, with more cauſe, than they had been of thoſe of France. From this period to the preſent time, they have been following the Canadians to their different eſtabliſhments, while, on the contrary, there is not a ſolitary inſtance that the Canadians have followed them; and there are many trading poſts which they have not yet attained. This, however, will no longer be a myſtery when the nature and policy of the Hudſon's-Bay Company is compared with that which has been purſued by their rivals in this trade.—But to return to my ſubject.

This competition, which has been already mentioned, gave a fatal blow to the trade from Canada, and, with other incidental cauſes, in my

 opinion,

opinion, contributed to its ruin. This trade was carried on in a very diſtant country, out of the reach of legal reſtraint, and where there was a free ſcope given to any ways or means in attaining advantage. The conſequence was not only the loſs of commercial benefit to the perſons engaged in it, but of the good opinion of the natives, and the reſpect of their men, who were inclined to follow their example; ſo that with drinking, carouſing, and quarrelling with the Indians along their route, and among themſelves, they ſeldom reached their winter quarters; and if they did, it was generally by dragging their property upon ſledges, as the navigation was cloſed up by the froſt. When at length they were arrived, the object of each was to injure his rival traders in the opinion of the natives as much as was in their power, by miſrepreſentation and preſents, for which the agents employed were peculiarly calculated. They conſidered the command of their employer as binding on them, and however wrong or irregular the tranſaction, the reſponſibility reſted with the principal who directed them. This is Indian law. Thus did they waſte their credit and their property with the natives, till the firſt was paſt redemption, and the laſt was nearly exhauſted; ſo that towards the ſpring in each year, the rival parties found it abſolutely neceſſary to join, and make one common ſtock of what remained, for the purpoſe of trading with the natives, who could entertain no reſpect for perſons who had conducted themſelves with ſo much irregularity and deceit. The winter, therefore was one continued ſcene of diſagreements and quarrels. If any one had the precaution or good ſenſe to keep clear of theſe proceedings, he derived a proportionable advantage from his good conduct, and frequently proved a peace-maker between the parties. To ſuch an height had they carried this licentious conduct, that they were

were in a continual ſtate of alarm, and were even frequently ſtopped to pay tribute on their route into the country; though they had adopted the plan of travelling together in parties of thirty or forty canoes, and keeping their men armed; which ſometimes, indeed, proved neceſſary for their defence.

Thus was the trade carried on for ſeveral years, and conſequently becoming worſe and worſe, ſo that the partners, who met them at the Grande Portage, naturally complained of their ill ſucceſs. But ſpecious reaſons were always ready to prove that it aroſe from circumſtances which they could not at that time control; and encouragements were held forth to hope that a change would ſoon take place, which would make ample amends for paſt diſappointments.

It was about this time, that Mr. Joſeph Frobiſher, one of the gentlemen engaged in the trade, determined to penetrate into the country yet unexplored, to the North and Weſtward, and, in the ſpring of the year 1775, met the Indians from that quarter on their way to Fort Churchill, at Portage de Traite, ſo named from that circumſtance on the banks of the Miſſinipi, or Churchill River, latitude 55. 25. North, longitude 103¼. Weſt. It was, indeed, with ſome difficulty that he could induce them to trade with him, but he at length procured as many furs as his canoes could carry. In this perilous expedition he ſuſtained every kind of hardſhip incident to a journey through a wild and ſavage country, where his ſubſiſtence depended on what the woods and the waters produced. Theſe difficulties, nevertheleſs, did not diſcourage him from returning in the following year, when he was equally ſucceſsful.

He then ſent his brother to explore the country ſtill further Weſt, who penetrated as far as the lake of Iſle a la Croix, in latitude 55. 26. North, and longitude 108 Weſt.

He, however, never after wintered among the Indians, though he retained a large intereſt in the trade, and a principal ſhare in the direction of it till the year 1798, when he retired to enjoy the fruits of his labours; and, by his hoſpitality, became known to every reſpectable ſtranger who viſited Canada.

The ſucceſs of this gentleman induced others to follow his example, and in the ſpring of the year 1778, ſome of the traders on the Saſkatchiwine River, finding they had a quantity of goods to ſpare, agreed to put them into a joint ſtock, and gave the charge and management of them to Mr. Peter Pond, who, in four canoes, was directed to enter the Engliſh River, ſo called by Mr. Frobiſher, to follow his track, and proceed ſtill further; if poſſible, to Athabaſca, a country hitherto unknown but from Indian report. In this enterpriſe he at length ſucceeded, and pitched his tent on the banks of the Elk River, by him erroneouſly called the Athabaſca River, about thirty miles from the Lake of the Hills, into which it empties itſelf.

Here he paſſed the winter of 1778-9; ſaw a vaſt concourſe of the Kniſteneaux and Chepewyan tribes, who uſed to carry their furs annually to Churchill; the latter by the barren grounds, where they ſuffered innumerable hardſhips, and were ſometimes even ſtarved to death. The former followed the courſe of the lakes and rivers, through a country that

that abounded in animals, and where there was plenty of fiſh: but though they did not ſuffer from want of food, the intolerable fatigue of ſuch a journey could not be eaſily repaid to an Indian: they were, therefore, highly gratified by ſeeing people come to their country to relieve them from ſuch long, toilſome, and dangerous journies; and were immediately reconciled to give an advanced price for the articles neceſſary to their comfort and convenience. Mr. Pond's reception and ſucceſs was accordingly beyond his expectation; and he procured twice as many furs as his canoes would carry. They alſo ſupplied him with as much proviſion as he required during his reſidence among them, and ſufficient for his homeward voyage. Such of the furs as he could not embark, he ſecured in one of his winter huts, and they were found the following ſeaſon, in the ſame ſtate in which he left them.

Theſe, however, were but partial advantages, and could not prevent the people of Canada from ſeeing the improper conduct of ſome of their aſſociates, which rendered it dangerous to remain any longer among the natives. Moſt of them who paſſed the winter at the Saſkatchiwine, got to the Eagle hills, where, in the ſpring of the year 1780, a few days previous to their intended departure, a large band of Indians being engaged in drinking about their houſes, one of the traders, to eaſe himſelf of the troubleſome importunities of a native, gave him a doſe of laudanum in a glaſs of grog, which effectually prevented him from giving further trouble to any one, by ſetting him aſleep for ever. This accident produced a fray, in which one of the traders, and ſeveral of the men, were killed, while the reſt had no other means to ſave themſelves but by a precipitate flight, abandoning a conſiderable quantity of goods, and near

near half the furs which they had collected during the winter and the ſpring.

About the ſame time, two of the eſtabliſhments on the Aſſiniboin river, were attacked with leſs juſtice, when ſeveral white men, and a greater number of Indians were killed. In ſhort, it appeared, that the natives had formed a reſolution to extirpate the traders; and, without entering into any further reaſonings on the ſubject, it appears to be incontrovertible, that the irregularity purſued in carrying on the trade has brought it into its preſent forlorn ſituation; and nothing but the greateſt calamity that could have befallen the natives, ſaved the traders from deſtruction: this was the ſmall pox, which ſpread its deſtructive and deſolating power, as the fire conſumes the dry graſs of the field. The fatal infection ſpread around with a baneful rapidity which no flight could eſcape, and with a fatal effect that nothing could reſiſt. It deſtroyed with its peſtilential breath whole families and tribes; and the horrid ſcene preſented to thoſe who had the melancholy and afflicting opportunity of beholding it, a combination of the dead, the dying, and ſuch as to avoid the horrid fate of their friends around them, prepared to diſappoint the plague of its prey, by terminating their own exiſtence.

The habits and lives of theſe devoted people, which provided not today for the wants of to-morrow, muſt have heightened the pains of ſuch an affliction, by leaving them not only without remedy, but even without alleviation. Nought was left them but to ſubmit in agony and deſpair.

To

To aggravate the picture, if aggravation were poſſible, may be added, the putrid carcaſes which the wolves, with a furious voracity, dragged forth from the huts, or which were mangled within them by the dogs, whoſe hunger was ſatisfied with the disfigured remains of their maſters. Nor was it uncommon for the father of a family, whom the infection had not reached, to call them around him, to repreſent the cruel ſufferings and horrid fate of their relations, from the influence of ſome evil ſpirit who was preparing to extirpate their race; and to incite them to baffle death, with all its horrors, by their own poniards. At the ſame time, if their hearts failed them in this neceſſary act, he was himſelf ready to perform the deed of mercy with his own hand, as the laſt act of his affection, and inſtantly to follow them to the common place of reſt and refuge from human evil.

It was never ſatisfactorily aſcertained by what means this malignant diſorder was introduced, but it was generally ſuppoſed to be from the Miſſiſſoaic, by a war party.

The conſequence of this melancholy event to the traders muſt be ſelf-evident; the means of diſpoſing of their goods were cut off; and no furs were obtained, but ſuch as had been gathered from the habitations of the deceaſed Indians, which could not be very conſiderable: nor did they look from the loſſes of the preſent year, with any encouraging expectations to thoſe which were to come. The only fortunate people conſiſted of a party who had again penetrated to the Northward and Weſtward in 1780, at ſome diſtance up the Miſſinipi, or Engliſh River,

to

to Lake la Rouge. Two unfortunate circumſtances, however, happened to them; which are as follow.

Mr. Wadin, a Swiſs gentleman, of ſtrict probity and known ſobriety, had gone there in the year 1779, and remained during the ſummer 1780. His partners and others, engaged in an oppoſite intereſt, when at the Grande Portage, agreed to ſend a quantity of goods on their joint account, which was accepted, and Mr. Pond was propoſed by them to be their repreſentative to act in conjunction with Mr. Wadin. Two men, of more oppoſite characters, could not, perhaps, have been found. In ſhort from various cauſes, their ſituations became very uncomfortable to each other, and mutual ill-will was the natural conſequence: without entering, therefore, into a minute hiſtory of theſe tranſactions, it will be ſufficient to obſerve, that, about the end of the year 1780, or the beginning of the year 1781, Mr. Wadin had received Mr. Pond and one of his own clerks to dinner; and, in the courſe of the night, the former was ſhot through the lower part of the thigh, when it was ſaid that he expired from the loſs of blood, and was buried next morning at eight o'clock. Mr. Pond, and the clerk, were tried for this murder at Montreal, and acquitted: nevertheleſs, their innocence was not ſo apparent as to extinguiſh the original ſuſpicion.

The other circumſtance was this. In the ſpring of the year, Mr. Pond ſent the abovementioned clerk to meet the Indians from the Northward, who uſed to go annually to Hudſon's Bay; when he eaſily perſuaded them to trade with him, and return back, that they might not take

take the contagion which had depopulated the country to the Eaſtward of them: but moſt unfortunately they caught it here, and carried it with them, to the deſtruction of themſelves and the neighbouring tribes.

The country being thus depopulated, the traders and their friends from Canada, who, from various cauſes already mentioned, were very much reduced in number, became confined to two parties, who began ſeriouſly to think of making permanent eſtabliſhments on the Miſſinipi river, and at Athabaſca; for which purpoſe, in 1781-2, they ſelected their beſt canoe-men, being ignorant that the ſmall pox penetrated that way. The moſt expeditious party got only in time to the Portage la Loche, or Mithy-Ouinigam Portage, which divides the waters of the Miſſinipi from thoſe that fall into the Elk river, to diſpatch one canoe ſtrong handed, and light-loaded, to that country; but, on their arrival there, they found, in every direction, the ravages of the ſmall pox; ſo that, from the great diminution of the natives, they returned in the ſpring with no more than ſeven packages of beaver. The ſtrong woods and mountainous countries afforded a refuge to thoſe who fled from the contagion of the plains; but they were ſo alarmed at the ſurrounding deſtruction, that they avoided the traders, and were diſpirited from hunting except for their ſubſiſtence. The traders, however, who returned into the country in the year 1782-3, found the inhabitants in ſome ſort of tranquillity, and more numerous than they had reaſon to expect, ſo that their ſucceſs was proportionably better.

During the winter of 1783-4, the merchants of Canada, engaged in this trade, formed a junction of intereſts, under the name of the North-

Weſt Company, and divided it into ſixteen ſhares, without depoſiting any capital; each party furniſhing a proportion or quota of ſuch articles as were neceſſary to carry on the trade: the reſpective parties agreeing to ſatisfy the friends they had in the country, who were not provided for, according to this agreement, out of the proportions which they held. The management of the whole was accordingly entruſted to Meſſrs. Benjamin and Joſeph Frobiſher, and Mr. Simon M'Taviſh, two diſtinct houſes, who had the greateſt intereſt and influence in the country, and for which they were to receive a ſtipulated commiſſion in all tranſactions.

In the ſpring, two of thoſe gentlemen went to the Grande Portage with their credentials, which were confirmed and ratified by all the parties having an option, except Mr. Peter Pond, who was not ſatisfied with the ſhare allotted him. Accordingly he, and another gentleman, Mr. Peter Pangman, who had a right to be a partner, but for whom no proviſion had been made, came to Canada, with a determination to return to the country, if they could find any perſons to join them, and give their ſcheme a proper ſupport.

The traders in the country, and merchants at Montreal, thus entered into a co-partnerſhip, which, by theſe means, was conſolidated and directed by able men, who, from the powers with which they were entruſted, could carry on the trade to the utmoſt extent it would bear. The traders in the country, therefore, having every reaſon to expect that their paſt and future labours would be recompenſed, forgot all their former animoſities, and engaged with the utmoſt ſpirit and activity, to forward the general intereſt; ſo that, in the following year, they

they met their agents at the Grande Portage, with their canoes laden with rich furs from the different parts of that immenſe tract of country. But this ſatisfaction was not to be enjoyed without ſome interruption; and they were mortified to find that Mr. Pangman had prevailed on Meſſrs. Gregory and Macleod to join him, and give him their ſupport in the buſineſs, though deſerted by Mr. Pond, who accepted the terms offered by his former aſſociates.

In the counting houſe of Mr. Gregory I had been five years; and at this period had left him, with a ſmall adventure of goods, with which he had entruſted me, to ſeek my fortune at Detroit. He, without any ſolicitation on my part, had procured an inſertion in the agreement, that I ſhould be admitted a partner in this buſineſs, on condition that I would proceed to the Indian country in the following ſpring, 1785. His partner came to Detroit to make me ſuch a propoſition. I readily aſſented to it, and immediately proceeded to the Grande Portage, where I joined my aſſociates.

We now found that independent of the natural difficulties of the undertaking, we ſhould have to encounter every other which they, who were already in poſſeſſion of the trade of the country, could throw in our way, and which their circumſtances enabled them to do. Nor did they doubt, from their own ſuperior experience, as well as that of their clerks and men, with their local knowledge of the country and its inhabitants, that they ſhould ſoon compel us to leave the country to them. The event, however, did not juſtify their expectations; for, after the ſevereſt ſtruggle ever known in that part of the

world, and ſuffering every oppreſſion which a jealous and rival ſpirit could inſtigate; after the murder of one of our partners, the laming of another, and the narrow eſcape of one of our clerks, who received a bullet through his powder horn, in the execution of his duty, they were compelled to allow us a ſhare of the trade. As we had already incurred a loſs, this union was, in every reſpect, a deſirable event to us, and was concluded in the month of July 1787.

This commercial eſtabliſhment was now founded on a more ſolid baſis than any hitherto known in the country; and it not only continued in full force, vigour, and proſperity, in ſpite of all interference from Canada, but maintained at leaſt an equal ſhare of advantage with the Hudſon's-Bay Company, notwithſtanding the ſuperiority of their local ſituation. The following account of this ſelf-erected concern will manifeſt the cauſe of its ſucceſs.

It aſſumed the title of the North-Weſt Company, and was no more than an aſſociation of commercial men, agreeing among themſelves to carry on the fur trade, unconnected with any other buſineſs, though many of the parties engaged had extenſive concerns altogether foreign to it. It may be ſaid to have been ſupported entirely upon credit; for, whether the capital belonged to the proprietor, or was borrowed, it equally bore intereſt, for which the aſſociation was annually accountable. It conſiſted of twenty ſhares, unequally divided among the perſons concerned. Of theſe, a certain proportion was held by the people who managed the buſineſs in Canada, and were ſtyled agents for the Company. Their duty was to import the neceſſary goods from England

England, ſtore them at their own expence at Montreal, get them made up into the articles ſuited to the trade, pack and forward them, and ſupply the caſh that might be wanting for the outfits; for which they received, independent of the profit on their ſhares, a commiſſion on the amount of the accounts, which they were obliged to make out annually, and keep the adventure of each year diſtinct. Two of them went annually to the Grande Portage, to manage and tranſact the buſineſs there, and on the communication at Detroit, Michilimakinac, St. Mary's, and Montreal, where they received ſtores, packed up, and ſhipped the company's furs for England, on which they had alſo a ſmall commiſſion. The remaining ſhares were held by the proprietors, who were obliged to winter and manage the buſineſs of the concern with the Indians, and their reſpective clerks, &c. They were not ſuppoſed to be under any obligation to furniſh capital, or even credit. If they obtained any capital by the trade, it was to remain in the hands of the agents; for which they were allowed intereſt. Some of them, from their long ſervices and influence, held double ſhares, and were allowed to retire from the buſineſs at any period of the exiſting concern, with one of thoſe ſhares, naming any young man in the company's ſervice to ſucceed him in the other. Seniority and merit were, however, conſidered as affording a claim to the ſucceſſion, which, nevertheleſs, could not be diſpoſed of without the concurrence of the majority of the concern; who, at the ſame time relieved the feceding perſon from any reſponſibility reſpecting the ſhare that he transferred, and accounted for it according to the annual value or rate of the property; ſo that the ſeller could have no advantage but that of getting the ſhare of ſtock which he retained realiſed, and receiving for the transferred ſhare what was fairly determined to be the worth of it. The

former

former was alſo diſcharged from all duty, and became a dormant partner. Thus, all the young men who were not provided for at the beginning of the contract, ſucceeded in ſucceſſion to the character and advantages of partners. They entered into the Company's ſervice for five or ſeven years, under ſuch expectations, and their reaſonable proſpects were ſeldom diſappointed: there were, indeed, inſtances when they ſucceeded to ſhares, before their apprenticeſhip was expired, and it frequently happened that they were provided for while they were in a ſtate of articled clerkſhip. Shares were transferrable only to the concern at large, as no perſon could be admitted as a partner who had not ſerved his time to the trade. The dormant partner indeed might diſpoſe of his intereſt to any one he choſe, but if the tranſaction were not acknowledged by his aſſociates, the purchaſer could only be conſidered as his agent or attorney. Every ſhare had a vote, and two thirds formed a majority. This regular and equitable mode of providing for the clerks of the company, excited a ſpirit of emulation in the diſcharge of their various duties, and in fact, made every agent a principal, who perceived his own proſperity to be immediately connected with that of his employers. Indeed, without ſuch a ſpirit, ſuch a trade could not have become ſo extended and advantageous, as it has been and now is.

In 1788, the groſs amount of the adventure for the year did not exceed forty thouſand pounds,* but by the exertion, enterpriſe, and induſtry of the proprietors, it was brought in eleven years to triple that

* This might be properly called the ſtock of the company, as it included, with the expenditure of the year, the amount of the property unexpended, which had been appropriated for the adventure of that year, and was carried on to the account of the following adventure.

amount

amount and upwards; yielding proportionate profits, and ſurpaſſing, in ſhort, any thing known in America.

Such, therefore, being the proſperous ſtate of the company, it, very naturally, tempted others to interfere with the concern in a manner by no means beneficial to the company, and commonly ruinous to the undertakers.

In 1798 the concern underwent a new form, the ſhares were increaſed to forty-ſix, new partners being admitted, and others retiring. This period was the termination of the company, which was not renewed by all the parties concerned in it, the majority continuing to act upon the old ſtock, and under the old firm; the others beginning a new one; and it now remains to be decided, whether two parties, under the ſame regulations and by the ſame exertions, though unequal in number, can continue to carry on the buſineſs to a ſucceſsful iſſue. The contrary opinion has been held, which, if verified, will make it the intereſt of the parties again to coaleſce; for neither is deficient in capital to ſupport their obſtinacy in a loſing trade, as it is not to be ſuppoſed that either will yield on any other terms than perpetual participation.

It will not be ſuperfluous in this place, to explain the general mode of carrying on the fur trade.

The agents are obliged to order the neceſſary goods from England in the month of October, eighteen months before they can leave Montreal; that is, they are not ſhipped from London until the ſpring following,

lowing, when they arrive in Canada in the ſummer. In the courſe of the following winter they are made up into ſuch articles as are required for the ſavages; they are then packed into parcels of ninety pounds weight each, but cannot be ſent from Montreal until the May following; ſo that they do not get to market until the enſuing winter, when they are exchanged for furs, which come to Montreal the next fall, and from thence are ſhipped, chiefly to London, where they are not ſold or paid for before the ſucceeding ſpring, or even as late as June; which is forty-two months after the goods were ordered in Canada; thirty-ſix after they had been ſhipped from England, and twenty-four after they had been forwarded from Montreal; ſo that the merchant, allowing that he has twelve months credit, does not receive a return to pay for thoſe goods, and the neceſſary expences attending them, which is about equal to the value of the goods themſelves, till two years after they are conſidered as caſh, which makes this a very heavy buſineſs. There is even a ſmall proportion of it that requires twelve months longer to bring round the payment, owing to the immenſe diſtance it is carried, and from the ſhortneſs of the ſeaſons, which prevents the furs, even after they are collected, from coming out of the country for that period.

* This will be better illuſtrated by the following ſtatement:

We will ſuppoſe the goods for 1798;

The orders for the goods are ſent to this country - - - -	25th Oct. 1796.
They are ſhipped from London - - - - -	March 1797.
They arrive in Montreal - - - - - -	June 1797.
They are made up in the courſe of that ſummer and winter.	
They are ſent from Montreal - - - - -	May 1798.
They arrive in the Indian country, and are exchanged for furs the following winter	1798-9.
Which furs come to Montreal - - - - -	Sept. 1799.
And are ſhipped for London, where they are ſold in March and April, and paid for in May or June - - - - - -	1800.

The

The articles neceſſary for this trade, are coarſe woollen cloths of different kinds; milled blankets of different ſizes; arms and ammunition; twiſt and carrot tobacco; Manchester goods; linens, and coarſe ſheetings; thread, lines and twine; common hardware; cutlery and ironmongery of ſeveral deſcriptions; kettles of braſs and copper, and ſheet-iron; ſilk and cotton handkerchiefs; hats, ſhoes and hoſe; calicoes and printed cottons, &c. &c. &c. Spirituous liquors and proviſions are purchaſed in Canada. Theſe, and the expence of tranſport to and from the Indian country, including wages to clerks, interpreters, guides, and canoe-men, with the expence of making up the goods for the market, form about half the annual amount againſt the adventure.

This expenditure in Canada ultimately tends to the encouragement of Britiſh manufactory, for thoſe who are employed in the different branches of this buſineſs, are enabled by their gains to purchaſe ſuch Britiſh articles as they muſt otherwiſe forego.

The produce of the year of which I am now ſpeaking, conſiſted of the following furs and peltries:

106,000 Beaver ſkins,	6000 Lynx ſkins,
2100 Bear ſkins,	600 Wolverine ſkins,
1500 Fox ſkins,	1650 Fiſher ſkins,
4000 Kitt Fox ſkins,	100 Rackoon ſkins,
4600 Otter ſkins,	3800 Wolf ſkins,
17,000 Muſquaſh ſkins,	700 Elk ſkins,
32,000 Marten ſkins,	750 Deer ſkins,
1800 Mink ſkins,	1200 Deer ſkins, dreſſed,

500 Buffalo robes, and a quantity of caſtorum.

Of theſe were diverted from the Britiſh market, being ſent through the United States to China, 13,364 ſkins, fine beaver, weighing 19283 pounds; 1250 fine otters, and 1724 kitt foxes. They would have found their way to the China market at any rate, but this deviation from the Britiſh channel aroſe from the following circumſtance:

An adventure of this kind was undertaken by a reſpectable houſe in London, half concerned with the North-Weſt Company in the year 1792. The furs were of the beſt kind, and ſuitable to the market; and the adventurers continued this connexion for five ſucceſſive years, to the annual amount of forty thouſand pounds. At the winding up of the concern of 1792, 1793, 1794, 1795, in the year 1797, (the adventure of 1796 not being included, as the furs were not ſent to China, but diſpoſed of in London), the North-Weſt Company experienced a loſs of upwards of £40,000 (their half,) which was principally owing to the difficulty of getting home the produce procured in return for the furs from China, in the Eaſt India Company's ſhips, together with the duty payable, and the various reſtrictions of that company. Whereas, from America there are no impediments; they get immediately to market, and the produce of them is brought back, and perhaps ſold in the courſe of twelve months. From ſuch advantages the furs of Canada will no doubt find their way to China by America, which would not be the caſe if Britiſh ſubjects had the ſame privileges that are allowed to foreigners, as London would then be found the beſt and ſafeſt market.

But to return to our principal ſubject.—We ſhall now proceed to conſider the number of men employed in the concern: viz. fifty clerks, ſeventy-

ſeventy-one interpreters and clerks, one thouſand one hundred and twenty canoe men, and thirty-five guides. Of theſe, five clerks, eighteen guides, and three hundred and fifty canoe men, were employed for the ſummer ſeaſon in going from Montreal to the Grande Portage, in canoes, part of whom proceeded from thence to Rainy Lake, as will be hereafter explained, and are called Pork-eaters, or Goers and Comers. Theſe were hired in Canada or Montreal, and were abſent from the 1ſt of May till the latter end of September. For this trip the guides had from eight hundred to a thouſand livres, and a ſuitable equipment; the foreman and ſteerſman from four to ſix hundred livres; the middlemen from two hundred and fifty to three hundred and fifty livres, with an equipment of one blanket, one ſhirt, and one pair of trowſers; and were maintained during that period at the expence of their employers. Independent of their wages, they were allowed to traffic, and many of them earned to the amount of their wages. About one third of theſe went to winter, and had more than double the above wages and equipment. All the others were hired by the year, and ſome times for three years; and of the clerks many were apprentices, who were generally engaged for five or ſeven years, for which they had only one hundred pounds, proviſion and clothing. Such of them who could not be provided for as partners, at the expiration of this time, were allowed from one hundred pounds to three hundred pounds per annum, with all neceſſaries, till proviſion was made for them. Thoſe who acted in the two-fold capacity of clerk and interpreter, or were ſo denominated, had no other expectation than the payment of wages to the amount of from one thouſand to four thouſand livres per annum, with clothing and proviſions. The guides, who are a very uſeful ſet of men, acted alſo in the additional capacity of interpreters,

and had a ſtated quantity of goods, conſidered as ſufficient for their wants, their wages being from one to three thouſand livres. The canoe men are of two deſcriptions, foremen and ſteerſmen, and middlemen. The two firſt were allowed annually one thouſand two hundred, and the latter four hundred, livres each. The firſt claſs had what is called an equipment, conſiſting of two blankets, two ſhirts, two pair of trowſers, two handkerchiefs, fourteen pounds of carrot tobacco, and ſome trifling articles. The latter had ten pounds of tobacco, and all the other articles: thoſe are called North Men, or Winterers; and to the laſt claſs of people were attached upwards of ſeven hundred Indian women and children, victualled at the expence of the company.

This firſt claſs of people are hired in Montreal five months before they ſet out, and receive their equipments, and one third of their wages in advance; and an adequate idea of the labour they undergo may be formed from the following account of the country through which they paſs, and their manner of proceeding.

The neceſſary number of canoes being purchaſed, at about three hundred livres each, the goods formed into packages, and the lakes and rivers free of ice, which they uſually are in the beginning of May, they are then diſpatched from La Chine, eight miles above Montreal, with eight or ten men in each canoe, and their baggage; and ſixty-five packages of goods, ſix hundred weight of biſcuit, two hundred weight of pork, three buſhels of peaſe, for the men's proviſion; two oil cloths to cover the goods, a ſail, &c. an axe, a towing-line, a kettle, and a ſponge to bail out the water, with a quantity of gum, bark, and watape, to repair

repair the veſſel. An European on ſeeing one of theſe ſlender veſſels thus laden, heaped up, and ſunk with her gunwale within ſix inches of the water, would think his fate inevitable in ſuch a boat, when he reflected on the nature of her voyage; but the Canadians are ſo expert that few accidents happen.

Leaving La Chine, they proceed to St. Ann's, within two miles of the Weſtern extremity of the iſland of Montreal, the lake of the two mountains being in ſight, which may be termed the commencement of the Utawas River. At the rapid of St. Ann they are obliged to take out part, if not the whole of their lading. It is from this ſpot that the Canadians conſider they take their departure, as it poſſeſſes the laſt church on the iſland, which is dedicated to the tutelar ſaint of voyagers.

The lake of the two mountains is about twenty miles long, but not more than three wide, and ſurrounded by cultivated fields, except the Seignory belonging to the clergy, though nominally in poſſeſſion of the two tribes of Iroquois and Algonquins, whoſe village is ſituated on a delightful point of land under the hills, which, by the title of mountains, give a name to the lake. Near the extremity of the point their church is built, which divides the village in two parts, forming a regular angle along the water ſide. On the Eaſt is the ſtation of the Algonquins, and on the Weſt, one of the Iroquois, conſiſting in all of about five hundred warriors. Each party has its miſſionary, and divine worſhip is performed according to the rites of the Roman Catholic religion, in their reſpective languages in the ſame church: and ſo aſſiduous have their paſtors been, that theſe people have been inſtructed in reading and writing in their

own

own language, and are better inſtructed than the Canadian inhabitants of the country of the lower ranks: but notwithſtanding theſe advantages, and though the eſtabliſhment is nearly coeval with the colonization of the country, they do not advance towards a ſtate of civilization, but retain their ancient habits, language, and cuſtoms, and are becoming every day more depraved, indigent, and inſignificant. The country around them, though very capable of cultivation, preſents only a few miſerable patches of ground, ſown by the women with maize and vegetables. During the winter ſeaſon, they leave their habitations, and pious paſtors, to follow the chaſe, according to the cuſtom of their forefathers. Such is, indeed, the ſtate of all the villages near the cultivated parts of Canada. But we ſhall now leave them to proceed on our voyage.

At the end of the lake the water contracts into the Utawas River, which, after a courſe of fifteen miles, is interrupted by a ſucceſſion of rapids and caſcades for upwards of ten miles, at the foot of which the Canadian Seignories terminate; and all above them were waſte land, till the concluſion of the American war, when they were ſurveyed by order of government, and granted to the officers and men of the eighty-fourth regiment, when reduced; but principally to the former, and conſequently little inhabited, though very capable of cultivation.

The voyagers are frequently obliged to unload their canoes, and carry the goods upon their backs, or rather ſuſpended in ſlings from their heads. Each man's ordinary load is two packages, though ſome carry three. Here the canoe is towed by a ſtrong line. There are ſome places where the ground will not admit of their carrying the whole; they

they then make two trips, that is, leave half their lading, and go and land it at the diſtance required; and then return for that which was left. In this diſtance are three carrying-places, the length of which depends in a great meaſure upon the ſtate of the water, whether higher or lower; from the laſt of theſe the river is about a mile and an half wide, and has a regular current for about ſixty miles, when it ends at the firſt Portage de Chaudiere, where the body of water falls twenty-five feet, over cragged, excavated rocks, in a moſt wild, romantic manner. At a ſmall diſtance below, is the river Rideau on the left, falling over a perpendicular rock, near forty feet high, in one ſheet, aſſuming the appearance of a curtain; and from which circumſtance it derives its name. To this extent the lands have been ſurveyed, as before obſerved, and are very fit for culture. Many loyaliſts are ſettled upon the river Rideau, and have, I am told, thriving plantations. Some American families preferring the Britiſh territory, have alſo eſtabliſhed themſelves along a river on the oppoſite ſide, where the ſoil is excellent. Nor do I think the period is far diſtant, when the lands will become ſettled from this vicinity to Montreal.

Over this portage, which is ſix hundred and forty-three paces long, the canoe and all the lading is carried. The rock is ſo ſteep and difficult of acceſs, that it requires twelve men to take the canoe out of the water: it is then carried by ſix men, two at each end on the ſame ſide, and two under the oppoſite gunwale in the middle. From hence to the next is but a ſhort diſtance, in which they make two trips over the ſecond Portage de Chaudiere, which is ſeven hundred paces, to carry the loading alone. From hence to the next and laſt Chaudiere, or Portage des Chenes, is about

ſix

ſix miles, with a very ſtrong current, where the goods are carried ſeven hundred and forty paces; the canoe being towed up by the line, when the water is not very high. We now enter Lac des Chaudieres, which is computed to be thirty miles in length. Though it is called a lake, there is a ſtrong draught downwards, and its breadth is from two to four miles. At the end of this is the Portage des Chats, over which the canoe and lading are carried two hundred and ſeventy-four paces; and very difficult it is for the former. The river is here barred by a ridge of black rocks, riſing in pinnacles and covered with wood, which, from the ſmall quantity of ſoil that nouriſhes it, is low and ſtinted. The river finds its way over and through theſe rocks, in numerous channels, falling fifteen feet and upwards. From hence two trips are made through a ſerpentine channel, formed by the rocks, for ſeveral miles, when the current ſlackens, and is accordingly called the Lake des Chats. At the channels of the grand Calumet, which are computed to be at the diſtance of eighteen miles, the current recovers its ſtrength, and proceeds to the Portage Duſort, which is two hundred and forty-five paces long; over which the canoe and baggage are tranſported. From hence the current becomes more rapid, and requires two trips to the Décharge des Sables*, where the goods are carried one hundred and thirty-five paces, and the canoe towed. Then follows the Mountain Portage, where the canoe and lading are alſo carried three hundred and eighty-five paces; then to the Décharge of the Derigé where the goods are carried two hundred and fifty paces; and thence to the grand Calumet. This is the longeſt

* The place where the goods alone are carried, is called a *Décharge*, and that where goods and canoes are both tranſported, overland, is denominated a *Portage*.

carrying-

carrying-place in this river, and is about two thouſand and thirty-five paces. It is a high hill or mountain. From the upper part of this Portage the current is ſteady, and is only a branch of the Utawas River, which joins the main channel, that keeps a more Southern courſe, at the diſtance of twelve computed leagues. Six leagues further it forms Lake Coulonge, which is about four leagues in length: from thence it proceeds through the channels of the Allumettes to the Portage, where part of the lading is taken out, and carried three hundred and forty-two paces. Then ſucceeds the Portage des Allumettes, which is but twenty-five paces, over a rock difficult of acceſs, and but a very ſhort diſtance from Lake Coulonge. From Portage de Chenes to this ſpot, is a fine deer-hunting country, and the land in many parts very fit for cultivation. From hence the river ſpreads wide, and is full of iſlands, with ſome current for ſeven leagues, to the beginning of *Riviere Creuſe*, or Deep River, which runs in the form of a canal, about a mile and an half wide, for about thirty-ſix miles; bounded upon the North by very high rocks, with low land on the South, and ſandy; it is intercepted again by falls and cataracts, ſo that the Portages of the two Joachins almoſt join. The firſt is nine hundred and twenty-ſix paces, the next ſeven hundred and twenty, and both very bad roads. From hence is a ſteady current of nine miles to the River du Moine, where there has generally been a trading houſe; the ſtream then becomes ſtrong for four leagues, when a rapid ſucceeds, which requires two trips. A little way onward is the Décharge, and cloſe to it, the Portage of the Roche Capitaine, ſeven hundred and ninety-ſeven paces in length. From hence two trips are made through a narrow channel of the Roche Capitaine, made by an iſland four miles in length. A ſtrong current now ſucceeds, for about ſix leagues to the

Portage of the two rivers, which is about eight hundred and twenty paces; from thence it is three leagues to the Décharge of the Trou, which is three hundred paces. Near adjoining is the rapid of Levellier; from whence, including the rapids of Matawoen, where there is no carrying-place, it is about thirty-ſix miles to the forks of the ſame name; in latitude 46¼. North, and longitude 78¼. Weſt, and is at the computed diſtance of four hundred miles from Montreal. At this place the Petite Riviere falls into the Utawas. The latter comes in a North-Weſterly direction, forming ſeveral lakes in its courſe. The principal of them is Lake Temeſcamang, where there has always been a trading poſt, which may be ſaid to continue, by a ſucceſſion of rivers and lakes, upwards of fifty leagues from the Forks, paſſing near the waters of the Lake Abbitiby, in latitude 48½. which is received by the Mooſe River, that empties itſelf into James Bay.

The Petite Riviere takes a South-Weſt direction, is full of rapids and cataracts to its ſource, and is not more than fifteen leagues in length, in the courſe of which are the following interruptions—The Portage of Plein Champ, three hundred and nineteen paces; the Décharge of the Roſe, one hundred and forty-five paces; the Décharge of Campion, one hundred and eighty-four paces; the Portage of the Groſſe Roche, one hundred and fifty paces; the Portage of Pareſſeux, four hundred and two paces; the Portage of Priarie, two hundred and eighty-ſeven paces; the Portage of La Cave, one hundred paces; Portage of Talon, two hundred and ſeventy-five paces; which, for its length, is the worſt on the communication; Portage Pin de Muſique, four hundred and fifty-ſix paces, where many men have been cruſhed to death by the canoes,

canoes, and others have received irrecoverable injuries. The laſt in this river is the Turtle Portage, eighty-three paces, on entering the lake of that name, where, indeed, the river may be ſaid to take its ſource. From the firſt vaſe to the great river, the country has the appearance of having been over-run by fire, and conſiſts in general of huge rocky hills. The whole diſtance which is the height of land, between the waters of the St. Laurence and the Utawas, is one thouſand five hundred and thirteen paces to a ſmall canal in a plain, that is juſt ſufficient to carry the loaded canoe about one mile to the next vaſe, which is ſeven hundred and twenty-five paces. It would be twice this diſtance, but the narrow creek is dammed in the beaver faſhion, to float the canoes to this barrier, through which they paſs, when the river is juſt ſufficient to bear them through a ſwamp of two miles to the laſt vaſe, of one thouſand and twenty-four paces in length. Though the river is increaſed in this part, ſome care is neceſſary to avoid rocks and ſtumps of trees. In about ſix miles is the lake Nepiſingui, which is computed to be twelve leagues long, though the route of the canoes is ſomething more: it is about fifteen miles wide in the wideſt part, and bounded with rocks. Its inhabitants conſiſt of the remainder of a numerous converted tribe, called Nepiſinguis of the Algonquin nation. Out of it flows the Riviere des François, over rocks of a conſiderable height. In a bay to the Eaſt of this, the road leads over the Portage of the Chaudiere des François, five hundred and forty-four paces, to ſtill water. It muſt have acquired the name of Kettle, from a great number of holes in the ſolid rock of a cylindrical form, and not unlike that culinary utenſil. They are obſervable in many parts along ſtrong bodies of water, and where, at certain ſeaſons, and diſtinct periods, it is well known the water inundates; at

the bottom of them are generally found a number of ſmall ſtones and pebbles. This circumſtance juſtifies the concluſion, that at ſome former period theſe rocks formed the bed of a branch of the diſcharge of this lake, although ſome of them are upwards of ten feet above the preſent level of the water at its greateſt height. They are, indeed, to be ſeen in every lake and river throughout this wide extended country. The French river is very irregular, both as to its breadth and form, and is ſo interſperſed with iſlands, that in the whole courſe of it the banks are ſeldom viſible. Of its various channels, that which is generally followed by the canoes is obſtructed by the following Portages, viz. des Pins, fifty-two paces; Feaufille, thirty-ſix paces; Pariſienne, one hundred paces; Recolet, forty-five paces; and the Petite Feaufille, twenty-five paces. In ſeveral parts there are guts or channels, where the water flows with great velocity, which are not more than twice the breadth of a canoe. The diſtance to Lake Huron is eſtimated at twenty-five leagues, which this river enters in the latitude 45. 53. North, that is, at the point of land three or four miles within the lake. There is hardly a foot of ſoil to be ſeen from one end of the French river to the other, its banks conſiſting of hills of entire rock. The coaſt of the lake is the ſame, but lower, backed at ſome diſtance by high lands. The courſe runs through numerous iſlands to the North of Weſt to the river Teſſalon, computed to be about fifty leagues from the French river, and which I found to be in latitude 46. 12. 21. North; and from thence croſſing, from iſland to iſland, the arm of the lake that receives the water of Lake Superior (which continues the ſame courſe), the route changes to the South of Weſt ten leagues to the Detour, paſſing the end of the iſland of St. Joſeph, within ſix miles of the former place. On that iſland there

has

has been a military eſtabliſhment ſince the upper poſts were given up to the Americans in the year 1794; and is the Weſternmoſt military poſition which we have in this country. It is a place of no trade, and the greater part, if not the whole of the Indians, come here for no other purpoſe but to receive the preſents which our government annually allows them. They are from the American territory (except about thirty families, who are the inhabitants of the lake from the French river, and of the Algonquin nation) and trade in their peltries, as they uſed formerly to do at Michilimakinac, but principally with Britiſh ſubjects. The Americans pay them very little attention, and tell them that they keep poſſeſſion of their country by right of conqueſt: that, as their brothers, they will be friends with them while they deſerve it; and that their traders will bring them every kind of goods they require, which they may procure by their induſtry.

Our commanders treat them in a very different manner, and, under the character of the repreſentatives of their father; (which parental title the natives give to his preſent Majeſty, the common father of all his people) preſent them with ſuch things as the actual ſtate of their ſtores will allow.

How far this conduct, if continued, may, at a future exigency, keep theſe people in our intereſt, if they are even worthy of it, is not an object of my preſent conſideration: at the ſame time, I cannot avoid expreſſing my perfect conviction, that it would not be of the leaſt advantage to our preſent or future commerce in that country, or to the people themſelves; as it only tends to keep many of them in a ſtate of idleneſs about

about our military eſtabliſhments. The ammunition which they receive is employed to kill game, in order to procure rum in return, though their families may be in a ſtarving condition: hence it is, that, in conſequence of ſlothful and diſſolute lives, their numbers are in a very perceptible ſtate of diminution.

From the Detour to the iſland of Michilimakinac, at the confluence of the Lakes Huron and Michigan, in latitude 45. 54. North is about forty-miles. To keep the direct courſe to Lake Superior, the north ſhore from the river Teſſalon ſhould be followed; croſſing to the North-Weſt end of St. Joſeph, and paſſing between it and the adjacent iſlands, which makes a diſtance of fifty miles to the fall of St. Mary, at the foot of which, upon the South ſhore, there is a village, formerly a place of great reſort for the inhabitants of Lake Superior, and conſequently of conſiderable trade: it is now, however, dwindled to nothing, and reduced to about thirty families, of the Algonquin nation, who are one half of the year ſtarving, and the other half intoxicated, and ten or twelve Canadians, who have been in the Indian country from an early period of life, and intermarried with the natives who have brought them families. Their inducement to ſettle there, was the great quantity of white fiſh that are to be taken in and about the falls, with very little trouble, particularly in the autumn, when that fiſh leaves the lakes, and comes to the running and ſhallow waters to ſpawn. Theſe, when ſalt can be procured, are pickled juſt as the froſt ſets in, and prove very good food with potatoes, which they have of late cultivated with ſucceſs. The natives live chiefly on this fiſh, which they hang up by the tails, and preſerve throughout the winter, or at leaſt as long as they laſt; for whatever quantity

quantity they may have taken, it is never known that their œconomy is ſuch as to make them laſt through the winter, which renders their ſituation very diſtreſſing; for if they had activity ſufficient to purſue the labours of the chaſe, the woods are become ſo barren of game as to afford them no great proſpect of relief. In the ſpring of the year they, and the other inhabitants, make a quantity of ſugar from the maple tree, which they exchange with the traders for neceſſary articles, or carry it to Michilimakinac, where they expect a better price. One of theſe traders was agent for the North-Weſt Company, receiving, ſtoring, and forwarding ſuch articles as come by the way of the lakes upon their veſſels: for it is to be obſerved, that a quantity of their goods are ſent by that route from Montreal in boats to Kingſton, at the entrance of Lake Ontario, and from thence in veſſels to Niagara, then over land ten miles to a water communication, by boats, to Lake Erie, where they are again received into veſſels, and carried over that lake up the river Detroit, through the lake and river Sinclair to Lake Huron, and from thence to the Falls of St. Mary's, when they are again landed and carried for a mile above the falls, and ſhipped over Lake Superior to the Grande Portage. This is found to be a leſs expenſive method than by canoes, but attended with more riſk, and requiring more time, than one ſhort ſeaſon of this country will admit; for the goods are always ſent from Montreal the preceding fall; and beſides, the company get the whole of their proviſions from Detroit, as flour and Indian corn; as alſo conſiderable ſupplies from Michilimakinac of maple ſugar, tallow, gum, &c. &c.

For the purpoſe of conveying all theſe things, they have two veſſels upon

upon the Lakes Erie and Huron, and one on Lake Superior, of from fifty to ſeventy tons burthen. This being, therefore, the depot for tranſports, the Montreal canoes, on their arrival, were forwarded over Lake Superior, with only five men in each; the others were ſent to Michilimakinac for additional canoes, which were required to proſecute the trade, and then take a lading there, or at St. Mary's, and follow the others. At length they all arrive at the Grande Portage, which is one hundred and ſixty leagues from St. Mary's, and ſituated on a pleaſant bay on the North ſide of the lake, in latitude 48. North and longitude 90. Weſt from Greenwich, where the compaſs has not above five degrees Eaſt variation.

At the entrance of the bay is an iſland which ſcreens the harbour from every wind except the South. The ſhallowneſs of the water, however, renders it neceſſary for the veſſel to anchor near a mile from the ſhore, where there is not more than fourteen feet water. This lake juſtifies the name that has been given to it: the Falls of St. Mary, which is its Northern extremity, being in latitude 46. 31. North, and in longitude 84 Weſt, where there is no variation of the compaſs whatever, while its Southern extremity, at the River St. Louis, is in latitude 46. 45. North, and longitude 92. 10. Weſt: its greateſt breadth is one hundred and twenty miles, and its circumference, including its various bays, is not leſs than one thouſand two hundred miles. Along its North ſhore is the ſafeſt navigation, as it is a continued mountainous embankment of rock, from three hundred to one thouſand five hundred feet in height. There are numerous coves and ſandy bays to land, which are frequently ſheltered by iſlands from the ſwell of the lake. This is particularly the caſe at the diſtance of one hundred miles to the Eaſtward of the Grande Portage, and is called the Pays Plat.

This

This ſeems to have been cauſed by ſome convulſion of nature, for many of the iſlands diſplay a compoſition of lava, intermixed with round ſtones of the ſize of a pigeon's egg. The ſurrounding rock is generally hard, and of a dark blue-grey, though it frequently has the appearance of iron and copper. The South ſide of the lake, from Point Shagoimigo Eaſt, is almoſt a continual ſtraight line of ſandy beach, interſperſed with rocky precipices of lime-ſtones, ſometimes riſing to an hundred feet in height, without a bay. The embankments from that point Weſtward are, in general, of ſtrong clay, mixed with ſtones, which renders the navigation irkſome and dangerous. On the ſame ſide, at the River Tonnagan, is found a quantity of virgin copper. The Americans, ſoon after they got poſſeſſion of that country, ſent an engineer thither; and I ſhould not be ſurpriſed to hear of their employing people to work the mine. Indeed, it might be well worthy the attention of the Britiſh ſubjects to work the mines on the North coaſt, though they are not ſuppoſed to be ſo rich as thoſe on the South.

Lake Superior is the largeſt and moſt magnificent body of freſh water in the world: it is clear and pellucid, of great depth, and abounding in a great variety of fiſh, which are the moſt excellent of their kind. There are trouts of three kinds, weighing from five to fifty pounds, ſturgeon, pickerel, pike, red and white carp, black baſs, herrings, &c. &c. and the laſt and beſt of all, the Ticamang, or white fiſh, which weighs from four to ſixteen pounds, and is of a ſuperior quality in theſe waters.

This lake may be denominated the grand reſervoir of the River St. Laurence, as no conſiderable rivers diſcharge themſelves into it.

The principal ones are, the St. Louis, the Nipigon, the Pic, and the Michipicoten. Indeed, the extent of country from which any of them flow, or take their courſe, in any direction, cannot admit of it, in conſequence of the ridge of land that ſeparates them from the rivers that empty themſelves into Hudſon's-Bay, the gulph of Mexico, and the waters that fall in Lake Michegan, which afterwards become a part of the St. Laurence.

This vaſt collection of water is often covered with fog, particularly when the wind is from the Eaſt, which, driving againſt the high barren rocks on the North and Weſt ſhore, diſſolves in torrents of rain. It is very generally ſaid, that the ſtorms on this lake are denoted by a ſwell on the preceding day; but this circumſtance did not appear from my obſervation to be a regular phenomenon, as the ſwells more frequently ſubſided without any ſubſequent wind.

Along the ſurrounding rocks of this immenſe lake, evident marks appear of the decreaſe of its water, by the lines obſervable along them. The ſpace, however, between the higheſt and the loweſt, is not ſo great as in the ſmaller lakes, as it does not amount to more than ſix feet, the former being very faint.

The inhabitants that are found along the coaſt of this water, are all of the Algonquin nation, the whole of which do not exceed 150 families.*

* In the year 1668, when the firſt miſſionaries viſited the South of this lake, they found the country full of inhabitants. They relate, that, about this time a band of the Nepiſingues, who were converted, emigrated to the Nipigon country, which is to the North of Lake Superior. Few of their deſcendants are now remaining, and not a trace of the religion communicated to them is to be diſcovered.

Theſe

Theſe people live chiefly on fiſh; indeed, from what has been ſaid of the country, it cannot be expected to abound in animals, as it is totally deſtitute of that ſhelter, which is ſo neceſſary to them. The rocks appear to have been over-run by fire, and the ſtinted timber, which once grew there, is frequently ſeen lying along the ſurface of them: but it is not eaſy to be reconciled, that any thing ſhould grow where there is ſo little appearance of ſoil. Between the fallen trees there are briars, with hurtleberry and gooſeberry buſhes, raſpberries, &c. which invite the bears in greater or leſſer numbers, as they are a favourite food of that animal: beyond theſe rocky banks are found a few mooſe and fallow deer. The waters alone are abundantly inhabited.

A very curious phenomenon was obſerved ſome years ago at the Grande Portage, for which no obvious cauſe could be aſſigned. The water withdrew with great precipitation, leaving the ground dry that had never before been viſible, the fall being equal to four perpendicular feet, and ruſhing back with great velocity above the common mark. It continued thus falling and riſing for ſeveral hours, gradually decreaſing till it ſtopped at its uſual height. There is frequently an irregular influx and deflux, which does not exceed ten inches, and is attributed to the wind.

The bottom of the bay, which forms an amphitheatre, is clear and incloſed; and on the left corner of it, beneath an hill, three or four hundred feet in height, and crowned by others of a ſtill greater altitude,

is the fort, picketed in with cedar palliſadoes, and incloſing houſes built with wood and covered with ſhingles. They are calculated for every convenience of trade, as well as to accommodate the proprietors and clerks during their ſhort reſidence there. The North men live under tents: but the more frugal pork-eater lodges beneath his canoe. The ſoil immediately bordering on the lake has not proved very propitious, as nothing but potatoes have been found to anſwer the trouble of cultivation. This circumſtance is probably owing to the cold damp fogs of the lake, and the moiſture of the ground from the ſprings that iſſue from beneath the hills. There are meadows in the vicinity that yield abundance of hay for the cattle; but, as to agriculture, it has not hitherto been an object of ſerious conſideration.

I ſhall now leave theſe geographical notices, to give ſome further account of the people from Montreal.—When they are arrived at the Grande Portage, which is near nine miles over, each of them has to carry eight packages of ſuch goods and proviſions as are neceſſary for the interior country. This is a labour which cattle cannot conveniently perform in ſummer, as both horſes and oxen were tried by the company without ſucceſs. They are only uſeful for light, bulky articles; or for tranſporting upon ſledges, during the winter, whatever goods may remain there, eſpecially proviſion, of which it is uſual to have a year's ſtock on hand.

Having finiſhed this toilſome part of their duty, if more goods are neceſſary to be tranſported, they are allowed a Spaniſh dollar for each package:

package: and ſo inured are they to this kind of labour, that I have known ſome of them ſet off with two packages of ninety pounds each, and return with two others of the ſame weight, in the courſe of ſix hours, being a diſtance of eighteen miles over hills and mountains. This neceſſary part of the buſineſs being over, if the ſeaſon be early they have ſome reſpite, but this depends upon the time the North men begin to arrive from their winter quarters, which they commonly do early in July. At this period, it is neceſſary to ſelect from the pork-eaters, a number of men, among whom are the recruits, or winterers, ſufficient to man the North canoes neceſſary to carry, to the river of the rainy lake, the goods and proviſion requiſite for the Athabaſca country; as the people of that country, (owing to the ſhortneſs of the ſeaſon and length of the road, can come no further), are equipped there, and exchange ladings with the people of whom we are ſpeaking, and both return from whence they came. This voyage is performed in the courſe of a month, and they are allowed proportionable wages for their ſervices.

The north men being arrived at the Grande Portage, are regaled with bread, pork, butter, liquor, and tobacco, and ſuch as have not entered into agreements during the winter, which is cuſtomary, are contracted with, to return and perform the voyage for one, two, or three years: their accounts are alſo ſettled, and ſuch as chooſe to ſend any of their earnings to Canada, receive drafts to tranſmit to their relations or friends: and as ſoon as they can be got ready, which requires no more than a fortnight, they are again diſpatched to their reſpective departments.

ments. It is, indeed, very creditable to them as ſervants, that though they are ſometimes aſſembled to the number of twelve hundred men, indulging themſelves in the free uſe of liquor, and quarrelling with each other, they always ſhew the greateſt reſpect to their employers, who are comparatively but few in number, and beyond the aid of any legal power to enforce due obedience. In ſhort, a degree of ſubordination can only be maintained by the good opinion theſe men entertain of their employers, which has been uniformly the caſe, ſince the trade has been formed and conducted on a regular ſyſtem.

The people being diſpatched to their reſpective winter quarters, the agents from Montreal, aſſiſted by their clerks, prepare to return there, by getting the furs acroſs the portage, and re-making them into packages of one hundred pounds weight each, to ſend them to Montreal; where they commonly arrive about the month of September.

The mode of living at the Grande Portage, is as follows: The proprietors, clerks, guides, and interpreters, meſs together, to the number of ſometimes an hundred, at ſeveral tables, in one large hall, the proviſion conſiſting of bread, ſalt pork, beef, hams, fiſh, and veniſon, butter, peas, Indian corn, potatoes, tea, ſpirits, wine, &c. and plenty of milk, for which purpoſe ſeveral milch cows are conſtantly kept. The mechanics have rations of ſuch proviſion, but the canoe-men, both from the North and Montreal, have no other allowance here, or in the voyage, than Indian corn and melted fat. The corn for this purpoſe is prepared

pared before it leaves Detroit, by boiling it in a ſtrong alkali, which takes off the outer huſk; it is then well waſhed, and carefully dried upon ſtages, when it is fit for uſe. One quart of this is boiled for two hours, over a moderate fire, in a gallon of water; to which, when it has boiled a ſmall time, are added two ounces of melted ſuet; this cauſes the corn to ſplit, and in the time mentioned makes a pretty thick pudding. If to this is added a little ſalt, (but not before it is boiled, as it would interrupt the operation), it makes an wholeſome, palatable food, and eaſy of digeſtion. This quantity is fully ſufficient for a man's ſubſiſtence during twenty-four hours; though it is not ſufficiently heartening to ſuſtain the ſtrength neceſſary for a ſtate of active labour. The Americans call this diſh hominee*.

The trade from the Grande Portage, is, in ſome particulars, carried on in a different manner with that from Montreal. The canoes uſed in the latter tranſport are now too large for the former, and ſome of about half the ſize are procured from the natives, and are navigated by four, five, or ſix men, according to the diſtance which they have to go. They carry a lading of about thirty-five packages, on an average; of theſe twenty-three are for the purpoſe of trade, and the reſt are employed for proviſions, ſtores, and baggage. In each of theſe canoes are a foreman and ſteerſman; the one to be always on the look out, and direct the paſſage of the veſſel, and the other to attend the helm. They alſo carry her, whenever that office is neceſſary. The foreman has the command,

* Corn is the cheapeſt proviſion that can be procured, though from the expence of tranſport, the buſhel coſts about twenty ſhillings ſterling, at the Grande Portage. A man's daily allowance does not exceed ten-pence.

and

and the middle-men obey both; the latter earn only two-thirds of the wages which are paid the two former. Independent of theſe a conductor or pilot is appointed to every four or ſix of theſe canoes, whom they are all obliged to obey; and is, or at leaſt is intended to be, a perſon of ſuperior experience, for which he is proportionably paid.

In theſe canoes, thus loaded, they embark at the North ſide of the portage, on the river Au Tourt, which is very inconſiderable; and after about two miles of a Weſterly courſe, is obſtructed by the Partridge Portage, ſix hundred paces long. In the ſpring this makes a conſiderable fall, when the water is high, over a perpendicular rock of one hundred and twenty feet. From thence the river continues to be ſhallow, and requires great care to prevent the bottom of the canoe from being injured by ſharp rocks, for a diſtance of three miles and an half to the Priarie, or Meadow, when half the lading is taken out, and carried by part of the crew, while two of them are conducting the canoe among the rocks, with the remainder, to the Carreboeuf Portage, three miles and an half more, when they unload and come back two miles, and embark what was left for the other hands to carry, which they alſo land with the former; all of which is carried ſix hundred and eighty paces, and the canoe led up againſt the rapid. From hence the water is better calculated to carry canoes, and leads by a winding courſe to the North of Weſt three miles to the Outard Portage, over which the canoe, and every thing in her, is carried for two thouſand four hundred paces. At the further end is a very high hill to deſcend, over which hangs a rock upwards of ſeven hundred feet high. Then ſucceeds the Outard Lake, about ſix miles long, lying in a North-Weſt courſe, and about two miles

miles wide in the broadeſt part. After paſſing a very ſmall rivulet, they come to the Elk Portage, over which the canoe and lading are again carried one thouſand one hundred and twenty paces; when they enter the lake of the ſame name, which is an handſome piece of water, running North-Weſt about four miles, and not more than one mile and an half wide*. They then land at the Portage de Ceriſe, over which, and in the face of a conſiderable hill, the canoe and cargo are again tranſported for one thouſand and fifty paces. This is only ſeparated from the ſecond Portage de Ceriſe, by a mud-pond (where there is plenty of water lilies), of a quarter of a mile in length; and this is again ſeparated by a ſimilar pond, from the laſt Portage de Ceriſe, which is four hundred and ten paces. Here the ſame operation is to be performed for three hundred and eighty paces. They next enter on the Mountain Lake, running North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles long, and about two miles in its greateſt breadth. In the centre of this lake, and to the right is the Old Road, by which I never paſſed; but an adequate notion may be formed of it from the road I am going to deſcribe, and which is univerſally preferred. This is firſt, the ſmall new portage over which every thing is carried for ſix hundred and twenty-ſix paces, over hills and gullies; the whole is then embarked on a narrow line of water, that meanders South-Weſt about two miles and an half. It is neceſſary to unload here, for the length of the canoe, and then proceed Weſt half a mile, to the new Grande Portage, which is three thouſand one hundred paces in length, and over very rough ground, which requires the utmoſt exertions of the men, and frequently lames them: from hence they approach the Roſe Lake, the portage of

* Here is a moſt excellent fiſhery for white fiſh, which are exquiſite.

that name being oppoſite to the junction of the road from the Mountain Lake. They then embark on the Roſe Lake, about one mile from the Eaſt end of it, and ſteer Weſt by South, in an oblique courſe, acroſs it two miles; then Weſt-North-Weſt paſſing the Petite Perche to the Marten Portage three miles. In this part of the lake the bottom is mud and ſlime, with about three or four feet of water over it; and here I frequently ſtruck a canoe pole of twelve feet long, without meeting any other obſtruction than if the whole were water: it has, however, a peculiar ſuction or attractive power, ſo that it is difficult to paddle a canoe over it. There is a ſmall ſpace along the South ſhore, where the water is deep, and this effect is not felt. In proportion to the diſtance from this part, the ſuction becomes more powerful: I have, indeed been told that loaded canoes have been in danger of being ſwallowed up, and have only owed their preſervation to other canoes, which were lighter. I have, myſelf, found it very difficult to get away from this attractive power, with ſix men, and great exertion, though they did not appear to be in any danger of ſinking.

Over againſt this is a very high, rocky ridge, on the South ſide, called Marten Portage, which is but twenty paces long, and ſeparated from the Perche Portage, which is four hundred and eighty paces, by a mud-pond, covered with white lillies. From hence the courſe is on the lake of the ſame name, Weſt-South-Weſt three miles to the height of land, where the waters of the Dove or Pigeon River terminate, and which is one of the ſources of the great St. Laurence in this direction. Having carried the canoe and lading over it, ſix hundred and ſeventy-nine paces, they embark

embark on the lake of Hauteur de Terre*, which is in the ſhape of an horſe-ſhoe. It is entered near the curve, and left at the extremity of the Weſtern limb, through a very ſhallow channel, where the canoe paſſes half loaded for thirty paces with the current, which leads through the ſucceeding lakes and rivers, and diſembogues itſelf, by the river Nelſon, into Hudſon's-Bay. The firſt of theſe is Lac de pierres à fuſil, running Weſt-South-Weſt ſeven miles long, and two wide, and, making an angle at North-Weſt one mile more, becomes a river for half a mile, tumbling over a rock, and forming a fall and portage, called the Eſcalier, of fifty-five paces; but from hence it is neither lake or river, but poſſeſſes the character of both, and ends between large rocks, which cauſe a current or rapid, falling into a lake-pond for about two miles and an half, Weſt-North-Weſt, to the portage of the Cheval du Bois. Here the canoe and contents are carried three hundred and eighty paces, between rocks; and within a quarter of a mile is the Portage des Gros Pins, which is ſix hundred and forty paces over an high ridge. The oppoſite ſide of it is waſhed by a ſmall lake three miles round; and the courſe is through the Eaſt end or ſide of it, three quarters of a mile North-Eaſt, where there is a rapid. An irregular, meandering channel, between rocky banks, then ſucceeds, for ſeven miles and an half, to the Maraboeuf Lake, which extends North four miles, and is three quarters of a mile wide, terminating by a rapid and décharge, of one hundred and eighty paces, the rock of Saginaga being in ſight, which cauſes a fall of about ſeven feet, and a portage of fifty-five paces.

* The route which we have been travelling hitherto, leads along the high rocky land or bank of Lake Superior on the left. The face of the country offers a wild ſcene of huge hills and rocks, ſeparated by ſtony vallies, lakes, and ponds. Wherever there is the leaſt ſoil, it is well covered with trees.

Lake Saginaga takes its names from its numerous Iſlands. Its greateſt length from Eaſt to Weſt is about fourteen miles, with very irregular inlets, is no where more than three miles wide, and terminates at the ſmall portage of La Roche, of forty-three paces. From thence is a rocky, ſtony paſſage of one mile, to Priarie Portage, which is very improperly named, as there is no ground about it that anſwers to that deſcription, except a ſmall ſpot at the embarking place at the Weſt end: to the Eaſt is an entire bog; and it is with great difficulty that the lading can be landed upon ſtages, formed by driving piles into the mud, and ſpreading branches of trees over them. The portage riſes on a ſtony ridge, over which the canoe and cargo muſt be carried for ſix hundred and eleven paces. This is ſucceeded by an embarkation on a ſmall bay, where the bottom is the ſame as has been deſcribed in the Weſt end of Roſe Lake, and it is with great difficulty that a laden canoe is worked over it, but it does not comprehend more than a diſtance of two hundred yards. From hence the progreſs continues through irregular channels, bounded by rocks, in a Weſterly courſe for about five miles, to the little Portage des Couteaux, of one hundred and ſixty-five paces, and the Lac des Couteaux, running about South-Weſt by Weſt twelve miles, and from a quarter to two miles wide. A deep bay runs Eaſt three miles from the Weſt end, where it is diſcharged by a rapid river, and after running two miles Weſt, it again becomes ſtill water. In this river are two carrying-places, the one fifteen, and the other one hundred and ninety paces. From this to the Portage des Carpes is one mile North-Weſt, leaving a narrow lake on the Eaſt that runs parallel with the Lake des Couteaux, half its length, where there is a carrying-place, which is uſed when the water in the river laſt mentioned is too low. The

Portage

Portage des Carpes is three hundred and ninety paces, from whence the water ſpreads irregularly between rocks, five miles North-Weſt and South-Eaſt to the portage of Lac Bois Blanc, which is one hundred and eighty paces. Then follows the lake of that name, but I think improperly ſo called, as the natives name it the Lake Paſcau Minac Sagaigan, or Dry Berries.

Before the ſmall pox ravaged this country, and completed, what the Nodowaſis, in their warfare, had gone far to accompliſh, the deſtruction of its inhabitants, the population was very numerous: this was alſo a favourite part, where they made their canoes, &c. the lake abounding in fiſh, the country round it being plentifully ſupplied with various kinds of game, and the rocky ridges, that form the boundaries of the water, covered with a variety of berries.

When the French were in poſſeſſion of this country, they had ſeveral trading eſtabliſhments on the iſlands and banks of this lake. Since that period, the few people remaining, who were of the Algonquin nation, could hardly find ſubſiſtence; game having become ſo ſcarce, that they depended principally for food upon fiſh, and wild rice which grows ſpontaneouſly in theſe parts.

This lake is irregular in its form, and its utmoſt extent from Eaſt to Weſt is fifteen miles; a point of land, called Point au Pin, jutting into it, divides it in two parts: it then makes a ſecond angle at the Weſt end, to the leſſer Portage de Bois Blanc, two hundred paces in length. This channel is not wide, and is intercepted by ſeveral rapids in the courſe of a mile;

mile: it runs Weſt-North-Weſt to the Portage des Pins, over which the canoe and lading is again carried four hundred paces. From hence the channel is alſo intercepted by very dangerous rapids for two miles Weſterly, to the point of Portage du Bois, which is two hundred and eighty paces. Then ſucceeds the portage of Lake Croche one mile more, where the carrying-place is eighty paces, and is followed by an embarkation on that lake, which takes its name from its figure. It extends eighteen miles, in a meandering form, and in a weſterly direction; it is in general very narrow, and at about two-thirds of its length becomes very contracted, with a ſtrong current.

Within three miles of the laſt Portage is a remarkable rock, with a ſmooth face, but ſplit and cracked in different parts, which hang over the water. Into one of its horizontal chaſms a great number of arrows have been ſhot, which is ſaid to have been done by a war party of the Nadowaſis or Sieux, who had done much miſchief in this country, and left theſe weapons as a warning to the Chebois or natives, that, notwithſtanding its lakes, rivers, and rocks, it was not inacceſſible to their enemies.

Lake Croche is terminated by the Portage de Rideau, four hundred paces long, and derives its name from the appearance of the water, falling over a rock of upwards of thirty feet. Several rapids ſucceed, with intervals of ſtill water, for about three miles to the Flacon portage, which is very difficult, is four hundred paces long, and leads to the Lake of La Croix, ſo named from its ſhape. It runs about North-Weſt eighteen miles to the Beaver Dam, and then ſinks into a deep bay nearly Eaſt. The courſe to the

the Portage is Weſt by North for ſixteen miles more from the Beaver Dam, and into the Eaſt bay is a road which was frequented by the French, and followed through lakes and rivers until they came to Lake Superior by the river Caminiſtiquia, thirty miles Eaſt of the Grand Portage.

Portage la Croix is ſix hundred paces long: to the next portage is a quarter of a mile, and its length is forty paces; the river winding four miles to Vermillion Lake, which runs ſix or ſeven miles North-North-Weſt, and by a narrow ſtrait communicates with Lake Namaycan, which takes its name from a particular place at the foot of a fall, where the natives ſpear ſturgeon: Its courſe is about North-North-Weſt and South-South-Eaſt, with a bay running Eaſt, that gives it the form of a triangle: its length is about ſixteen miles to the Nouvelle Portage. The diſcharge of the lake is from a bay on the left, and the portage one hundred and eighty paces, to which ſucceeds a very ſmall river, from whence there is but a ſhort diſtance to the next Nouvelle Portage, three hundred and twenty paces long. It is then neceſſary to embark on a ſwamp, or overflowed country, where wild rice grows in great abundance. There is a channel or ſmall river in the centre of this ſwamp, which is kept with difficulty, and runs South and North one mile and a half, with deepening water. The courſe continues North-North-Weſt one mile to the Chaudiere Portage, which is cauſed by the diſcharge of the waters running on the left of the road from Lake Naymaycan, which uſed to be the common route, but that which I have deſcribed is the ſafeſt as well as ſhorteſt. From hence there is ſome current though the water is wide ſpread, and its courſe about North by Weſt three miles and an half to the

the Lac de la Pluie, which lies nearly Eaſt and Weſt; from thence about fifteen miles is a narrow ſtrait that divides the land into two unequal parts, from whence to its diſcharge is a diſtance of twenty-four miles. There is a deep bay running North-Weſt on the right, that is not included, and is remarkable for furniſhing the natives with a kind of ſoft, red ſtone, of which they make their pipes; it alſo affords an excellent fiſhery both in the ſummer and winter; and from it is an eaſy, ſafe, and ſhort road to the Lake du Bois, (which I ſhall mention preſently) for the Indians to paſs in their ſmall canoes, through a ſmall lake and on a ſmall river, whoſe banks furniſh abundance of wild rice. The diſcharge of this lake is called Lake de la Pluie River, at whoſe entrance there is a rapid, below which is a fine bay, where there had been an extenſive picketted fort and building when poſſeſſed by the French: the ſite of it is at preſent a beautiful meadow, ſurrounded with groves of oaks. From hence there is a ſtrong current for two miles, where the water falls over a rock twenty feet, and, from the conſequent turbulence of the water, the carrying-place, which is three hundred and twenty paces long, derives the name of Chaudiere. Two miles onward is the preſent trading eſtabliſhment, ſituated on an high bank on the North ſide of the river, in 48. 37. North latitude.

Here the people from Montreal come to meet thoſe who arrive from the Athabaſca country, as has been already deſcribed, and exchange lading with them. This is alſo the reſidence of the firſt chief, or Sachem, of all the Algonquin tribes, inhabiting the different parts of this country. He is by diſtinction called Nectam, which implies perſonal pre-eminence. Here alſo the elders meet in council to treat of peace or war.

This

This is one of the fineſt rivers in the North-Weſt, and runs a courſe Weſt and Eaſt one hundred and twenty computed miles; but in taking its courſe and diſtance minutely I make it only eighty. Its banks are covered with a rich ſoil, particularly to the North, which, in many parts, are clothed with fine open groves of oak, with the maple, the pine, and the cedar. The Southern bank is not ſo elevated, and diſplays the maple, the white birch, and the cedar, with the ſpruce, the alder, and various underwood. Its waters abound in fiſh, particularly the ſturgeon, which the natives both ſpear and take with drag-nets. But notwithſtanding the promiſe of this ſoil, the Indians do not attend to its cultivation, though they are not ignorant of the common proceſs, and are fond of the Indian corn, when they can get it from us.

Though the ſoil at the fort is a ſtiff clay, there is a garden, which, unaſſiſted as it is by manure, or any particular attention, is tolerably productive.

We now proceed to mention the Lake du Bois, into which this river diſcharges itſelf in latitude 49. North, and was formerly famous for the richneſs of its banks and waters, which abounded with whatever was neceſſary to a ſavage life. The French had ſeveral ſettlements in and about it; but it might be almoſt concluded, that ſome fatal circumſtance had deſtroyed the game, as war and the ſmall pox had diminiſhed the inhabitants, it having been very unproductive in animals ſince the Britiſh ſubjects have been engaged in travelling through it; though it now appears to be recovering its priſtine ſtate. The few Indians who inhabit

it might live very comfortably, if they were not ſo immoderately fond of ſpirituous liquors.

This lake is alſo rendered remarkable, in conſequence of the Americans having named it as the ſpot, from which a line of boundary, between them and Britiſh America, was to run Weſt, until it ſtruck the Miſſiſſippi; which, however, can never happen, as the North-Weſt part of the Lake du Bois is in latitude 49. 37. North, and longitude 94. 31 Weſt, and the Northernmoſt branch of the ſource of the Miſſiſſippi is in latitude 47. 38. North, and longitude 95. 6. Weſt, aſcertained by Mr. Thomſon, aſtronomer to the North-Weſt Company, who was ſent expreſsly for that purpoſe in the ſpring of 1798. He, in the ſame year, determined the Northern bend of the Miſſiſoury to be in latitude 47. 32. North, and longitude 101. 25. Weſt; and, according to the Indian accounts, it runs to the ſouth of Weſt, ſo that if the Miſſiſoury were even to be conſidered as the Miſſiſſippi, no Weſtern line could ſtrike it.

It does not appear to me to be clearly determined what courſe the Line is to take, or from what part of Lake Superior it ſtrikes through the country to the Lake du Bois: were it to follow the principal waters to their ſource, it ought to keep through Lake Superior to the River St. Louis, and follow that river to its ſource; cloſe to which is the ſource of the waters falling into the river of Lake la Pluie, which is a common route of the Indians to the Lake du Bois: the St. Louis paſſes within a ſhort diſtance of a branch of the Miſſiſſippi, where it becomes navigable for canoes. This will appear more evident from conſulting the

the map; and if the navigation of the Miſſiſſippi is conſidered as of any conſequence, by this country, from that part of the globe, ſuch is the neareſt way to get at it.

But to return to our narrative. The Lake du Bois is, as far as I could learn, nearly round, and the canoe courſe through the centre of it among a cluſter of iſlands, ſome of which are ſo extenſive that they may be taken for the main land. The reduced courſe would be nearly South and North. But following the navigating courſe, I make the diſtance ſeventy-five miles, though in a direct line it would fall very ſhort of that length. At about two-thirds of it there is a ſmall carrying-place, when the water is low. The carrying-place out of the lake is on an iſland, and named Portage du Rat, in latitude 49. 37. North and longitude $94\frac{1}{4}$. Weſt, it is about fifty paces long. The lake diſcharges itſelf at both ends of this iſland, and forms the River Winipic, which is a large body of water, interſperſed with numerous iſlands, cauſing various channels and interruptions of portages and rapids. In ſome parts it has the appearance of lakes, with ſteady currents; I eſtimate its winding courſe to the Dalles eight miles; to the Grand Décharge twenty-five miles and an half, which is a long carrying-place for the goods; from thence to the little Décharge one mile and an half; to the Terre Jaûne Portage two miles and an half; then to its galet ſeventy yards; two miles and three quarters to the Terre Blanche, near which is a fall of from four to five feet; three miles and an half to Portage de L'Iſle, where there is a trading-poſt, and, about eleven miles, on the North ſhore, a trading eſtabliſhment, which is the road, in boats,

to Albany River, and from thence to Hudſon's Bay. There is alſo a communication with Lake Superior, through what is called the Nipigan country, that enters the Lake Winipic about thirty-five leagues Eaſt of the Grande Portage. In ſhort, the country is ſo broken by lakes and rivers, that people may find their way in canoes in any direction they pleaſe. It is now four miles to Portage de L'iſle, which is but ſhort, though ſeveral canoes have been loſt in attempting to run the rapid. From thence it is twenty-ſix miles to Jacob's Falls, which are about fifteen feet high; and ſix miles and an half to the woody point; forty yards from which is another Portage. They both form an high fall, but not perpendicular. From thence to another galet, or rocky Portage, is about two miles, which is one continual rapid and caſcade; and about two miles further is the Chute à l'Eſclave, which is upwards of thirty feet. The Portage is long, through a point covered with wood: it is ſix miles and an half more to the barrier, and ten miles to the Grand Rapid. From thence, on the North ſide, is a ſafe road, when the waters are high, through ſmall rivers and lakes, to the Lake du Bonnet, called the Pinnawas, from the man who diſcovered it: to the White River, ſo called from its being, for a conſiderable length, a ſucceſſion of falls and cataracts, is twelve miles. Here are ſeven portages, in ſo ſhort a ſpace, that the whole of them are diſcernible at the ſame moment. From this to Lake du Bonnet is fifteen miles more, and four miles acroſs it to the rapid. Here the Pinnawas road joins, and from thence it is two miles to the Galet du Lac du Bonnet; from this to the Galet du Bonnet one mile and an half; thence to the Portage of the ſame name is three miles. This Portage is near half a league in length, and derives its name from a cuſtom the Indians have of crowning ſtones, laid in a circle, on the higheſt rock in the portage, with wreaths,

wreaths of herbage and branches. There have been examples of men taking ſeven packages of ninety pounds each, at one end of the portage, and putting them down at the other without ſtopping.

To this, another ſmall portage immediately ſucceeds, over a rock producing a fall. From thence to the fall of Terre Blanche is two miles and an half; to the firſt portage Des Eaux qui Remuent is three miles; to the next, of the ſame name, is but a few yards diſtant; to the third and laſt, which is a Décharge, is three miles and an half; and from this to the laſt Portage of the river one mile and an half; and to the eſtabliſhment, or proviſion houſe, is two miles and an half. Here alſo the French had their principal inland depôt, and got their canoes made.

It is here, that the preſent traders, going to great diſtances, and where proviſion is difficult to procure, receive a ſupply to carry them to the Rainy Lake, or Lake Superior. From the eſtabliſhment to the entrance of Lake Winipic is four miles and an half, latitude 50. 37. North.

The country, ſoil, produce, and climate, from Lake Superior to this place bear a general reſemblance, with a predominance of rock and water: the former is of the granite kind. Where there is any ſoil it is well covered with wood, ſuch as oak, elm, aſh of different kinds, maple of two kinds, pines of various deſcriptions, among which are what I call the cypreſs, with the hickory, iron-wood, liard, poplar, cedar, black and white birch, &c. &c. Vaſt quantities of wild rice are ſeen throughout the country, which the natives collect

collect in the month of Auguſt for their winter ſtores.* To the North of fifty degrees, it is hardly known, or at leaſt does not come to maturity.

Lake Winipic is the great reſervoir of ſeveral large rivers, and diſcharges itſelf by the River Nelſon into Hudſon's Bay. The firſt in rotation, next to that I have juſt deſcribed, is the Aſſiniboin, or Red River, which, at the diſtance of forty miles coaſtwiſe, diſembogues on the South-Weſt ſide of the lake Winipic. It alternately receives thoſe two denominations from its dividing, at the diſtance of about thirty miles from the lake, into two large branches. The Eaſtern branch, called the Red River, runs in a Southern direction to near the head waters of the Miſſiſſippi. On this are two trading eſtabliſhments. The country on either ſide is but partially ſupplied with wood, and conſiſts of plains covered with herds of the buffalo and the elk, eſpecially on the Weſtern ſide. On the Eaſtern ſide are lakes and rivers, and the whole country is well wooded, level, abounding in beaver, bears, mooſe-deer, fallow-deer, &c. &c. The natives, who are of the Algonquin tribe, are not very numerous, and are conſidered as the natives of Lake Superior. This country being near the Miſſiſſippi, is alſo inhabited by the Nadowaſis, who are the natural enemies of the former; the head of the water being the war-line, they are in a continual ſtate of hoſtility; and though the Algonquins are equally brave, the others generally out-number them; it is very probable, therefore, that if the latter continue to venture out of the woods, which form their only protection, they will ſoon

* The fruits are, ſtrawberries, hurtleberries, plumbs, and cherries, hazlenuts, gooſeberries, currants, raſpberries, poires, &c.

be

be extirpated. There is not, perhaps, a finer country in the world for the reſidence of unciviliſed man, than that which occupies the ſpace between this river and Lake Superior. It abounds in every thing neceſſary to the wants and comforts of ſuch a people. Fiſh, veniſon, and fowl, with wild rice, are in great plenty; while, at the ſame time, their ſubſiſtence requires that bodily exerciſe ſo neceſſary to health and vigour.

This great extent of country was formerly very populous, but from the information I received, the aggregate of its inhabitants does not exceed three hundred warriors; and, among the few whom I ſaw, it appeared to me that the widows were more numerous than the men. The rackoon is a native of this country, but is ſeldom found to the Northward of it.

The other branch is called after the tribe of the Nadawaſis, who here go by the name of Aſſiniboins, and are the principal inhabitants of it. It runs from off the North-North-Weſt, and, in the latitude of $51\frac{1}{4}$. Weſt, and longitude $103\frac{1}{3}$. riſing in the ſame mountains as the river Dauphin, of which I ſhall ſpeak in due order. They muſt have ſeparated from their nation at a time beyond our knowledge, and live in peace with the Algonquins and Kniſteneaux.

The country between this and the Red River, is almoſt a continual plain to the Miſſiſoury. The ſoil is ſand and gravel, with a ſlight intermixture of earth, and produces a ſhort graſs. Trees are very rare; nor are there on the banks of the river ſufficient, except in particular ſpots, to build houſes and ſupply fire-wood for the trading

eſtabliſhments

eſtabliſhments, of which there are four principal ones. Both theſe rivers are navigable for canoes to their ſource, without a fall; though in ſome parts there are rapids, cauſed by occaſional beds of lime-ſtone, and gravel; but in general they a ſandy bottom.

The Aſſiniboins, and ſome of the Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, are the principal inhabitants of this country, and border on the river, occupying the centre part of it; that next Lake Winipic, and about its ſource, being the ſtation of the Algonquins and Kniſteneaux, who have choſen it in preference to their own country. They do not exceed five hundred families. They are not beaver hunters, which accounts for their allowing the diviſion juſt mentioned, as the lower and upper parts of this river have thoſe animals, which are not found in the intermediate diſtrict. They confine themſelves to hunting the buffalo, and trapping wolves, which cover the country. What they do not want of the former for raiment and food, they ſometimes make into pemmican, or pounded meat, while they melt the fat, and prepare the ſkins in their hair, for winter. The wolves they never eat, but produce a tallow from their fat, and prepare their ſkins; all which they bring to exchange for arms and ammunition, rum, tobacco, knives, and various baubles, with thoſe who go to traffic in their country.

The Algonquins, and the Kniſteneaux, on the contrary, attend to the fur-hunting, ſo that they acquire the additional articles of cloth, blankets, &c. but their paſſion for rum often puts it out of their power to ſupply themſelves with real neceſſaries.

The

The next river of magnitude is the river Dauphin, which empties itſelf at the head of St. Martin's Bay, on the Weſt ſide of the Lake Winipic, latitude nearly 52. 15. North, taking its ſource in the ſame mountains as the laſt-mentioned river, as well as the Swan and Red-Deer River, the latter paſſing through the lake of the ſame name, as well as the former, and both continuing their courſe through the Manitoba Lake, which, from thence, runs parallel with Lake Winipic, to within nine miles of the Red River, and by what is called the river Dauphin, diſembogues its waters, as already deſcribed, into that lake. Theſe rivers are very rapid, and interrupted by falls, &c. the bed being generally rocky. All this country, to the South branch of the Saſkatchiwine, abounds in beaver, mooſe-deer, fallow-deer, elks, bears, buffalos, &c. The ſoil is good, and wherever any attempts have been made to raiſe the eſculent plants, &c. it has been found productive.

On theſe waters are three principal forts for trade. Fort Dauphin, which was eſtabliſhed by the French before the conqueſt. Red-Deer-River, and Swan-River Forts, with occaſional detached poſts from theſe. The inhabitants are the Kniſteneaux, from the North of Lake Winipic; and Algonquins from the country between the Red River and Lake Superior; and ſome from the Rainy Lake: but as they are not fixed inhabitants, their number cannot be determined: they do not, however, at any time exceed two hundred warriors. In general they are good hunters. There is no other conſiderable river except the Saſkatchiwine, which I ſhall mention preſently, that empties itſelf into the Lake Winipic.

Thoſe on the North ſide are inconſiderable, owing to the comparative vicinity of the high land that ſeparates the waters coming this way, from thoſe diſcharging into Hudſon's bay, The courſe of the lake is about Weſt-North-Weſt, and South-South-Eaſt, and the Eaſt end of it is in 50. 37. North. It contracts at about a quarter of its length to a ſtrait, in latitude 51. 45. and is no more than two miles broad, where the South ſhore is gained through iſlands, and croſſing various bays to the diſcharge of the Saſkatchiwine, in latitude 53. 15. This lake, in common with thoſe of this country, is bounded on the North with banks of black and grey rock, and on the South by a low, level country, occaſionally interrupted with a ridge or bank of lime-ſtones, lying in ſtratas, and riſing to the perpendicular height of from twenty to forty feet; theſe are covered with a ſmall quantity of earth, forming a level ſurface, which bears timber, but of a moderate growth, and declines to a ſwamp. Where the banks are low, it is evident in many places that the waters are withdrawn, and never riſe to thoſe heights which were formerly waſhed by them.

The inhabitants who are found along this lake, are of the Kniſteneaux and Algonquin tribes, and but few in number, though game is not ſcarce, and there is fiſh in great abundance. The black baſs is found there, and no further Weſt; and beyond it no maple trees are ſeen, either hard or ſoft.

On entering the Saſkatchiwine, in the courſe of a few miles, the great rapid interrupts the paſſage. It is about three miles long. Through the greateſt part of it the canoe is towed, half or full laden, according to the

the ſtate of the waters: the canoe and its contents are then carried one thouſand one hundred paces. The channel here is near a mile wide, the waters tumbling over ridges of rocks that traverſe the river. The ſouth bank is very high, riſing upwards of fifty feet, of the ſame rock as ſeen on the South ſide of the Lake Winipic, and the North is not more than a third of that height. There is an excellent ſturgeon-fiſhery at the foot of this caſcade, and vaſt numbers of pelicans, cormorants, &c. frequent it, where they watch to ſeize the fiſh that may be killed or diſabled by the force of the waters.

About two miles from this Portage the navigation is again interrupted by the Portage of the Roché Rouge, which is an hundred yards long; and a mile and an half from thence the river is barred by a range of iſlands, forming rapids between them; and through theſe it is the ſame diſtance to the rapid of Lake Travers, which is four miles right acroſs, and eight miles in length. Then ſucceeds the Grande Décharge, and ſeveral rapids, for four miles to the Cedar Lake, which is entered through a ſmall channel on the left, formed by an iſland, as going round it would occaſion loſs of time. In this diſtance banks of rocks (ſuch as have already been deſcribed), appear at intervals on either ſide; the reſt of the country is low. This is the caſe along the South bank of the lake and the iſlands, while the North ſide, which is very uncommon, is level throughout. This lake runs firſt Weſt four miles, then as much more Weſt-South-Weſt, acroſs a deep bay on the right, then ſix miles to the Point de Lievre, and acroſs another bay again on the right; then North-Weſt eight miles, acroſs a ſtill deeper bay on the right; and ſeven miles parallel with the North coaſt, North-North-Weſt

through iſlands, five miles more to Fort Bourbon*, ſituated on a ſmall iſland, dividing this from Mud-Lake.

The Cedar Lake is from four to twelve miles wide, excluſive of the bays. Its banks are covered with wood, and abound in game, and its waters produce plenty of fiſh, particularly the ſturgeon. The Mud-Lake, and the neighbourhood of the Fort Bourbon, abound with geeſe, ducks, ſwans, &c. and was formerly remarkable for a vaſt number of martens, of which it cannot now boaſt but a very ſmall proportion.

The Mud-Lake muſt have formerly been a part of the Cedar Lake, but the immenſe quantity of earth and ſand, brought down by the Saſkatchiwine, has filled up this part of it for a circumference whoſe diameter is at leaſt fifteen or twenty miles: part of which ſpace is ſtill covered with a few feet of water, but the greateſt proportion is ſhaded with large trees, ſuch as the liard, the ſwamp-aſh, and the willow. This land conſiſts of many iſlands, which conſequently form various channels, ſeveral of which are occaſionally dry, and bearing young wood. It is, indeed, more than probable that this river will, in the courſe of time, convert the whole of the Cedar Lake into a foreſt. To the North-Weſt the cedar is not to be found.

From this lake the Saſkatchiwine may be conſidered as navigable to near its ſources in the rocky mountains, for canoes, and without a carrying-place, making a great bend to Cumberland Houſe, on Sturgeon Lake. From the confluence of its North and South branches its courſe

* This was alſo a principal poſt of the French, who gave it its name.

is

is Weſterly; ſpreading itſelf, it receives ſeveral tributary ſtreams, and encompaſſes a large track of country, which is level, particularly along the South branch, but is little known. Beaver, and other animals, whoſe furs are valuable, are amongſt the inhabitants of the North-Weſt branch, and the plains are covered with buffalos, wolves, and ſmall foxes; particularly about the South branch, which, however, has of late claimed ſome attention, as it is now underſtood, that where the plains terminate towards the rocky mountain, there is a ſpace of hilly country clothed with wood, and inhabited alſo by animals of the fur kind. This has been actually determined to be the caſe towards the head of the North branch, where the trade has been carried to about the latitude 54 North, and longitude 114½. Weſt. The bed and banks of the latter, in ſome few places, diſcover a ſtratum of free-ſtone; but, in general, they are compoſed of earth and ſand. The plains are ſand and gravel, covered with fine graſs, and mixed with a ſmall quanty of vegetable earth. This is particularly obſervable along the North branch, the Weſt ſide of which is covered with wood.

There are on this river five principal factories for the convenience of trade with the natives. Nepawi Houſe, South-branch Houſe, Fort-George Houſe, Fort-Auguſtus Houſe, and Upper Eſtabliſhment. There have been many others, which, from various cauſes, have been changed for theſe, while there are occaſionally others depending on each of them.

The inhabitants, from the information I could obtain, are as follow:

At

At Nepawi, and South-Branch Houſe, about thirty tents of Kniſteneaux, or ninety warriors; and ſixty tents of Stone-Indians, or Aſſiniboins, who are their neighbours, and are equal to two hundred men: their hunting ground extends upwards to about the Eagle Hills. Next to them are thoſe who trade at Forts George and Auguſtus, and are about eighty tents or upwards of Kniſteneaux: on either ſide of the river, their number may be two hundred. In the ſame country are one hundred and forty tents of Stone-Indians; not quite half of them inhabit the Weſt woody country; the others never leave the plains, and their numbers cannot be leſs than four hundred and fifty men. At the Southern Head-waters of the North branch dwells a tribe called Sarſees, conſiſting of about thirty-five tents, or one hundred and twenty men. Oppoſite to thoſe Eaſtward, on the head-waters of the South Branch, are the Picaneaux, to the number of from twelve to fifteen hundred men. Next to them, on the ſame water, are the Blood-Indians, of the ſame nation as the laſt, to the number of about fifty tents, or two hundred and fifty men. From them downwards extend the Black-Feet Indians, of the ſame nation as the two laſt tribes: their number may be eight hundred men. Next to them, and who extend to the confluence of the South and North branch, are the Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, who may amount to about ſix hundred warriors.

Of all theſe different tribes, thoſe who inhabit the broken country on the North-Weſt ſide, and the ſource of the North branch, are beaver-hunters; the others deal in proviſions, wolf, buffalo, and fox ſkins; and many people on the South branch do not trouble themſelves to come near the

the trading eſtabliſhments. Thoſe who do, chooſe ſuch eſtabliſhments as are next to their country. The Stone-Indians here, are the ſame people as the Stone-Indians, or Aſſiniboins, who inhabit the river of that name already deſcribed, and both are detached tribes from the Nadawaſis, who inhabit the Weſtern ſide of the Miſſiſſippi, and lower part of the Miſſiſoury. The Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, are from the South-Eaſtward alſo, and of a people who inhabit the plains from the North bend of the laſt mentioned river, latitude 47. 32. North, longitude 101. 25. Weſt, to the South bend of the Aſſiniboin River, to the number of ſeven hundred men. Some of them occaſionally come to the latter river to exchange dreſſed buffalo robes, and bad wolf-ſkins for articles of no great value.

The Picaneaux, Black-Feet, and Blood-Indians, are a diſtinct people, ſpeak a language of their own, and, I have reaſon to think, are travelling North-Weſtward, as well as the others juſt mentioned: nor have I heard of any Indians with whoſe language, that which they ſpeak has any affinity. They are the people who deal in horſes and take them upon the war-parties towards Mexico; from which, it is evident, that the country to the South-Eaſt of them, conſiſts of plains, as thoſe animals could not well be conducted through an hilly and woody country, interſected by waters.

The Sarſees, who are but few in number, appear from their language, to come on the contrary from the North-Weſtward, and are of the ſame people as the Rocky-Mountain Indians deſcribed in my

ſecond

ſecond journal, who are a tribe of the Chepewyans; and, as for the Kniſteneaux, there is no queſtion of their having been, and continuing to be, invaders of this country, from the Eaſtward. Formerly, they ſtruck terror into all the other tribes whom they met; but now they have loſt the reſpect that was paid them; as thoſe whom they formerly conſidered as barbarians, are now their allies, and conſequently become better acquainted with them, and have acquired the uſe of fire-arms. The former are ſtill proud without power, and affect to conſider the others as their inferiors: thoſe conſequently are extremely jealous of them, and, depending upon their own ſuperiority in numbers, will not ſubmit tamely to their inſults; ſo that the conſequences often prove fatal, and the Kniſteneaux are thereby decreaſing both in power and number: ſpirituous liquors alſo tend to their diminution, as they are inſtigated thereby to engage in quarrels which frequently have the moſt diſaſtrous termination among themſelves.

The Stone-Indians muſt not be conſidered in the ſame point of view reſpecting the Kniſteneaux, for they have been generally obliged, from various cauſes, to court their alliance. They, however, are not without their diſagreements, and it is ſometimes very difficult to compoſe their differences. Theſe quarrels occaſionally take place with the traders, and ſometimes have a tragical concluſion. They generally originate in conſequence of ſtealing women and horſes: they have great numbers of the latter throughout their plains, which are brought, as has been obſerved, from the Spaniſh ſettlements in Mexico; and many of them have been ſeen even in the back parts of this country, branded with the initials of their original owners names.

Thoſe

Thoſe horſes are diſtinctly employed as beaſts of burden, and to chaſe the buffalo. The former are not conſidered as being of much value, as they may be purchaſed for a gun, which coſts no more than twenty-one pounds in Great-Britain. Many of the hunters cannot be purchaſed with ten, the comparative value, which exceeds the property of any native.

Of theſe uſeful animals no care whatever is taken, as when they are no longer employed, they are turned looſe winter and ſummer to provide for themſelves. Here, it is to be obſerved, that the country, in general, on the Weſt and North ſide of this great river, is broken by the lakes and rivers with ſmall intervening plains, where the ſoil is good, and the graſs grows to ſome length. To theſe the male buffalos reſort for the winter, and if it be very ſevere, the females alſo are obliged to leave the plains.

But to return to the route by which the progreſs Weſt and North is made through this continent.

We leave the Saſkatchiwine * by entering the river which forms the diſcharge of the Sturgeon Lake, on whoſe Eaſt bank is ſituated Cumberland houſe, in latitude 53. 56. North, longitude 102. 15. The diſtance between the entrance of the lake and Cumberland houſe is eſtimated at twenty miles. It is very evident that the mud which is carried down by

* It may be proper to obſerve, that the French had two ſettlements upon the Saſkatchiwine, long before, and at the conqueſt of Canada; the firſt at the Paſquia, near Carrot River, and the other at Nipawi, where they had agricultural inſtruments and wheel carriages, marks of both being found about thoſe eſtabliſhments, where the ſoil is excellent.

the Saſkatchiwine River, has formed the land that lies between it and the lake, for the diſtance of upwards of twenty miles in the line of the river, which is inundated during one half of the ſummer, though covered with wood. This lake forms an irregular horſe-ſhoe, one ſide of which runs to the North-Weſt, and bears the name of Pine-Iſland Lake, and the other known by the name already mentioned, runs to the Eaſt of North, and is the largeſt: its length is about twenty-ſeven miles, and its greateſt breadth about ſix miles. The North ſide of the latter is the ſame kind of rock as that deſcribed in Lake Winipic, on the Weſt ſhore. In latitude 54. 16. North, the Sturgeon-Weir River diſcharges itſelf into this lake, and its bed appears to be of the ſame kind of rock, and is almoſt a continual rapid. Its direct courſe is about Weſt by North, and with its windings, is about thirty miles. It takes its waters into the Beaver Lake, the South-Weſt ſide of which conſiſts of the ſame rock lying in thin ſtratas: the route then proceeds from iſland to iſland for about twelve miles, and along the North ſhore, for four miles more, the whole being a North-Weſt courſe to the entrance of a river, in latitude 54. 32. North. The lake, for this diſtance, is about four or five miles wide, and abounds with fiſh common to the country. The part of it upon the right of that which has been deſcribed, appears more conſiderable. The iſlands are rocky, and the lake itſelf ſurrounded by rocks. The communication from hence to the Bouleau Lake, alternately narrows into rivers and ſpreads into ſmall lakes. The interruptions are, the Pente Portage, which is ſucceeded by the Grand Rapid, where there is a Décharge, the Carp Portage, the Bouleau Portage in latitude 54. 50. North, including a diſtance, together with the windings, of thirty-four miles, in a Weſterly direction. The Lake de Bouleau then follows. This

lake

lake might with greater propriety, be denominated a canal, as it is not more than a mile in breadth. Its courſe is rather to the Eaſt of North for twelve miles to Portage de L'Iſle. From thence there is ſtill water to Portage d'Epinettes, except an adjoining rapid. The diſtance is not more than four miles Weſterly. After croſſing this Portage, it is not more than two miles to Lake Miron, which is in latitude 55. 7. North. Its length is about twelve miles, and its breadth irregular, from two to ten miles. It is only ſeparated from Lake du Chitique, or Pelican Lake, by a ſhort, narrow, and ſmall ſtrait. That lake is not more than ſeven miles long, and its courſe about North-Weſt. The Lake des Bois then ſucceeds, the paſſage to which is through ſmall lakes, ſeparated by falls and rapids. The firſt is a Décharge: then follow the three galets, in immediate ſucceſſion. From hence Lake des Bois runs about twenty-one miles. Its courſe is South-South-Eaſt, and North-North-Weſt, and is full of iſlands. The paſſage continues through an intricate, narrow, winding, and ſhallow channel for eight miles. The interruptions in this diſtance are frequent, but depend much on the ſtate of the waters. Having paſſed them, it is neceſſary to croſs the Portage de Traité, or, as it is called by the Indians, Athiquiſipichigan Ouinigam, or the Portage of the Stretched Frog-Skin, to the Miſſinipi. The waters already deſcribed diſcharge themſelves into Lake Winipic, and augment thoſe of the river Nelſon. Theſe which we are now entering are called the Miſſinipi, or great Churchill River.

All the country to the South and Eaſt of this, within the line of the progreſs that has been deſcribed, is interſperſed by lakes, hills, and rivers, and is full of animals, of the fur-kind, as well as the mooſe-deer.

Its inhabitants are the Knifteneaux Indians, who are called by the ſervants of the Hudſon's-Bay Company, at York, their home-guards.

The traders from Canada ſucceeded for ſeveral years in getting the largeſt proportion of their furs, till the year 1793, when the ſervants of that company thought proper to ſend people amongſt them, (and why they did not do it before is beſt known to themſelves), for the purpoſe of trade, and ſecuring their credits, which the Indians were apt to forget. From the ſhort diſtance they had to come, and the quantity of goods they ſupplied, the trade has, in a great meaſure, reverted to them, as the merchants from Canada could not meet them upon equal terms. What added to the loſs of the latter, was the murder of one of their traders, by the Indians, about this period. Of theſe people not above eighty men have been known to the traders from Canada, but they conſiſt of a much greater number.

The Portage de Traite, as has been already hinted, received its name from Mr. Joſeph Frobiſher, who penetrated into this part of the country from Canada, as early as the years 1774 and 1775, where he met with the Indians in the ſpring, on their way to Churchill, according to annual cuſtom, with their canoes full of valuable furs. They traded with him for as many of them as his canoes could carry, and in conſequence of this tranſaction, the Portage received and has ſince retained its preſent appellation. He alſo denominated theſe waters the Engliſh River. The Miſſinipi, is the name which it received from the Knifteneaux, when they firſt came to this country, and either deſtroyed or drove back the natives, whom they held in great contempt, on many accounts, but particularly for their ignorance in hunting

the

the beaver, as well as in preparing, ſtretching, and drying the ſkins of thoſe animals. And as a ſign of their deriſion, they ſtretched the ſkin of a frog, and hung it up at the Portage. This was, at that time, the utmoſt extent of their conqueſt or warfaring-progreſs Weſt, and is in latitude 55. 25. North, and longitude 103½ Weſt. The river here, which bears the appearance of a lake, takes its name from the Portage, and is full of iſlands. It runs from Eaſt to Weſt about ſixteen miles, and is from four to five miles broad. Then ſucceed falls and caſcades which form what is called the grand rapid. From thence there is a ſucceſſion of ſmall lakes and rivers, interrupted by rapids and falls, viz. the Portage de Bareel, the Portage de L'Iſle, and that of the Rapid River. The courſe is twenty miles from Eaſt-South-Eaſt to North-North-Weſt. The Rapid-River Lake then runs Weſt five miles, and is of an oval form. The rapid river is the diſcharge of Lake la Ronge, where there has been an eſtabliſhment for trade from the year 1782. Since the ſmall pox ravaged theſe parts, there have been but few inhabitants; theſe are of the Kniſteneaux tribe, and do not exceed thirty men. The direct navigation continues to be through rivers and canals, interrupted by rapids; and the diſtance to the firſt Décharge is four miles, in a Weſterly direction. Then follows Lake de la Montagne, which runs South-South-Weſt three miles and an half, then North ſix miles, through narrow channels, formed by iſlands, and continues North-North-Weſt five miles, to the portage of the ſame name, which is no ſooner croſſed, than another appears in ſight, leading to the Otter Lake, from whence it is nine miles Weſterly to the Otter Portage, in latitude 55. 39. Between this and the Portage du Diable, are ſeveral rapids, and the diſtance three miles and an half. Then ſucceeds the lake of the ſame name, running from South-Eaſt to North-Weſt,

Weſt, five miles, and Weſt four miles and an half. There is then a ſucceſſion of ſmall lakes, rapids, and falls, producing the Portage des Ecors, Portage du Galet, and Portage des Morts, the whole comprehending a diſtance of ſix miles, to the lake of the latter name. On the left ſide is a point covered with human bones, the relics of the ſmall pox; which circumſtance gave the Portage and the lake this melancholy denomination. Its courſe is South-Weſt fifteen miles, while its breadth does not exceed three miles. From thence a rapid river leads to Portage de Hallier, which is followed by Lake de L'Iſle d'Ours; it is, however, improperly called a lake, as it contains frequent impediments amongſt its iſlands, from rapids. There is a very dangerous one about the centre of it, which is named the Rapid qui ne parle point, or that never ſpeaks, from its ſilent whirlpool-motion. In ſome of the whirlpools the ſuction is ſo powerful, that they are carefully avoided. At ſome diſtance from the ſilent rapid, is a narrow ſtrait, where the Indians have painted red figures on the face of a rock, and where it was their cuſtom formerly to make an offering of ſome of the articles which they had with them, in their way to and from Churchill. The courſe in this lake, which is very meandering, may be eſtimated at thirty-eight miles, and is terminated by the Portage du Canot Tourner, from the danger to which thoſe are ſubject who venture to run this rapid. From thence a river of one mile and an half North-Weſt courſe leads to the Portage de Bouleau, and in about half a mile to Portage des Epingles, ſo called from the ſharpneſs of its ſtones. Then follows the Lake des Souris, the direction acroſs which is amongſt iſlands, North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles. In this traverſe is an iſland, which is remarkable for a very large ſtone, in the form of a bear, on which the natives have painted the head and

ſnout

ſnout of that animal; and here they alſo were formerly accuſtomed to offer ſacrifices. This lake is ſeparated only by a narrow ſtrait from the Lake du Serpent, which runs North-North-Weſt ſeven miles, to a narrow channel, that connects it with another lake, bearing the ſame name, and running the ſame courſe for eleven miles, when the rapid of the ſame denomination is entered on the Weſt ſide of the lake. It is to be remarked here, that for about three or four miles on the North-Weſt ſide of this lake, there is an high bank of clay and ſand, clothed with cypreſs trees, a circumſtance which is not obſervable on any lakes hitherto mentioned, as they are bounded, particularly on the North, by black and grey rocks. It may alſo be conſidered as a moſt extraordinary circumſtance, that the Chepewyans, go North-Weſt from hence to the barren grounds, which are their own country, without the aſſiſtance of canoes; as it is well known that in every other part which has been deſcribed, from Cumberland Houſe, the country is broken on either ſide of the direction to a great extent: ſo that a traveller could not go at right angles with any of the waters already mentioned, without meeting with others in every eight or ten miles. This will alſo be found to be very much the caſe in proceeding to Portage la Loche.

The laſt mentioned rapid is upwards of three miles long, North-Weſt by Weſt; there is, however, no carrying, as the line and poles are ſufficient to drag and ſet the canoe againſt the current. Lake Croche is then croſſed in a Weſterly direction of ſix miles, though its whole length may be twice that diſtance; after which it contracts to a river that runs Weſterly for ten miles, when it forms a bend, which is left to the South

South, and entering a portion of its waters called the Graſs River, whoſe meandering courſe is about ſix miles, but in a direct line not more than half that length, where it receives its waters from the great river, which then runs Weſterly eleven miles before it forms the Knee Lake, whoſe direction is to the North of Weſt. It is full of iſlands for eighteen miles, and its greateſt apparent breadth is not more than five miles. The portage of the ſame name is ſeveral hundred yards long, and over large ſtones. Its latitude is 55. 50. and longitude 106. 30. Two miles further North is the commencement of the Croche Rapid, which is a ſucceſſion of caſcades for about three miles, making a bend due South to the Lake du Primeau, whoſe courſe is various, and through iſlands, to the diſtance of about fifteen miles. The banks of this lake are low, ſtony, and marſhy, whoſe graſs and ruſhes, afford ſhelter and food to great numbers of wild fowl. At its Weſtern extremity is Portage la Puiſe, from whence the river takes a meandering courſe, widening and contracting at intervals, and is much interrupted by rapids. After a Weſterly courſe of twenty miles, it reaches Portage Pellet. From hence, in the courſe of ſeven miles, are three rapids, to which ſucceeds the Shagoina Lake, which may be eighteen miles in circumference. Then Shagoina ſtrait and rapid lead into the Lake of Iſle a la Croiſé, in which the courſe is South twenty miles, and South-South-Weſt fourteen miles, to the Point au Sable; oppoſite to which is the diſcharge of the Beaver-River, bearing South ſix miles: the lake in the diſtance run, does not exceed twelve miles in its greateſt breadth. It now turns Weſt-South-Weſt, the iſle a la Croiſé being on the South, and the main land on the North; and it clears the one and the other in the diſtance of three miles, the water preſenting an open horizon to right and left: that on the left formed by a deep narrow bay, about ten leagues

in

in depth; and that to the right by what is called la Riviere Creuſe, or Deep River, being a canal of ſtill water, which is here four miles wide. On following the laſt courſe, Iſle a la Croſſe Fort appears on a low iſthmus, at the diſtance of five miles, and is in latitude 55. 25. North, and longitude 107. 48. Weſt.

This lake and fort take their names from the iſland juſt mentioned, which, as has been already obſerved, received it denomination from the game of the croſs, which forms a principal amuſement among the natives.

The ſituation of this lake, the abundance of the fineſt fiſh in the world to be found in its waters, the richneſs of its ſurrounding banks and foreſts, in mooſe and fallow deer, with the vaſt numbers of the ſmaller tribes of animals, whoſe ſkins are precious, and the numerous flocks of wild fowl that frequent it in the ſpring and fall, make it a moſt deſirable ſpot for the conſtant reſidence of ſome, and the occaſional rendezvous of others of the inhabitants of the country, particularly of the Knifteneaux.

Who the original people were that were driven from it, when conquered by the Knifteneaux is not now known, as not a ſingle veſtige remains of them. The latter, and the Chepewyans, are the only people that have been known here; and it is evident that the laſt-mentioned conſider themſelves as ſtrangers, and ſeldom remain longer than three or four years, without viſiting their relations and friends in the barren grounds, which they term their native country. They were for ſometime treated by

the Kniſteneaux as enemies; who now allow them to hunt to the North of the track which has been deſcribed, from Fort du Traite upwards, but when they occaſionally meet them, they inſiſt on contributions, and frequently puniſh reſiſtance with their arms. This is ſometimes done at the forts, or places of trade, but then it appears to be a voluntary gift. A treat of rum is expected on the occaſion, which the Chepewyans on no other account ever purchaſe; and thoſe only who have had frequent intercourſe with the Kniſteneaux have any inclination to drink it.

When the Europeans firſt penetrated into this country, in 1777, the people of both tribes were numerous, but the ſmall pox was fatal to them all, ſo that there does not exiſt of the one, at preſent, more than forty reſident families; and the other has been from about thirty to two hundred families. Theſe numbers are applicable to the conſtant and leſs ambitious inhabitants, who are ſatisfied with the quiet poſſeſſion of a country affording, without riſk or much trouble, every thing neceſſary to their comfort; for ſince traders have ſpread themſelves over it, it is no more the rendezvous of the errant Kniſteneaux, part of whom uſed annually to return thither from the country of the Beaver River, which they had explored to its ſource in their war and hunting excurſions and as far as the Saſkatchiwine, where they ſometimes met people of their own nation, who had proſecuted ſimilar conqueſts up that river. In that country they found abundance of fiſh and animals, ſuch as have been already deſcribed, with the addition of the buffalos, who range in the partial patches of meadow ſcattered along the rivers and lakes. From thence they returned in the ſpring to the friends whom they had left; and, at the ſame time

time met with others who had penetrated, with the ſame deſigns, into the Athabaſca country, which will be deſcribed hereafter.

The ſpring was the period of this joyful meeting, when their time was occupied in feaſting, dancing, and other paſtimes, which were occaſionally ſuſpended for ſacrifice, and religious ſolemnity: while the narratives of their travels, and the hiſtory of their wars, amuſed and animated the feſtival. The time of rejoicing was but ſhort, and was ſoon interrupted by the neceſſary preparations for their annual journey to Churchill, to exchange their furs for ſuch European articles as were now become neceſſary to them. The ſhortneſs of the ſeaſons, and the great length of their way requiring the utmoſt diſpatch, the moſt active men of the tribe, with their youngeſt women, and a few of their children undertook the voyage, under the direction of ſome of their chiefs, following the waters already deſcribed, to their diſcharge at Churchill Factory, which are called, as has already been obſerved, the Miſſinipi, or Great Waters. There they remained no longer than was ſufficient to barter their commodities, with a ſupernumerary, and a day or two to gratify themſelves with the indulgence of ſpirituous liquors. At the ſame time the inconſiderable quantity they could purchaſe to carry away with them, for a regale with their friends, was held ſacred, and reſerved to heighten the enjoyment of their return home, when the amuſements, feſtivity, and religious ſolemnities of the ſpring were repeated. The uſual time appropriated to theſe convivialities being completed, they ſeparated, to purſue their different objects; and if they were determined to go to war, they made the neceſſary arrangements for their future operations.

But we muſt now renew the progreſs of the route. It is not more than two miles from Iſle a la Croſſe Fort, to a point of land which forms a cheek of that part of the lake called the Riviere Creuſe, which preſerves the breadth already mentioned for upwards of twenty miles; then contracts to about two, for the diſtance of ten miles more, when it opens to Lake Clear, which is very wide, and commands an open horizon, keeping the Weſt ſhore for ſix miles. The whole of the diſtance mentioned is about North-Weſt, when, by a narrow, crooked channel, turning to the South of Weſt, the entry is made into Lake du Boeuf, which is contracted near the middle, by a projecting ſandy point; independent of which it may be deſcribed as from ſix to twelve miles in breadth, thirty-ſix miles long, and in a North-Weſt direction. At the North-Weſt end, in latitude 56. 8. it receives the waters of the river la Loche, which, in the fall of the year, is very ſhallow, and navigated with difficulty even by half-laden canoes. Its water is not ſufficient to form ſtrong rapids, though from its rocky bottom the canoes are frequently in conſiderable danger. Including its meanders, the courſe of this river may be computed at twenty-four miles, and receives its firſt waters from the lake of the ſame name, which is about twenty miles long, and ſix wide; into which a ſmall river flows, ſufficient to bear loaded canoes, for about a mile and an half, where the navigation ceaſes; and the canoes, with their lading, are carried over the Portage la Loche for thirteen miles.

This portage is the ridge that divides the waters which diſcharge themſelves into Hudſon's Bay, from thoſe that flow into the Northern ocean, and is in the latitude 56. 20. and longitude 109. 15. Weſt. It runs South

Weſt

Weſt until it loſes its local height between the Saſkatchiwine and Elk Rivers; cloſe on the bank of the former, in latitude 53. 36. North, and longitude 113. 45. Weſt, it may be traced in an Eaſterly direction toward latitude 58. 12. North, and longitude 103½. Weſt, when it appears to take its courſe due North, and may probably reach the Frozen Seas.

From Lake le Souris, the banks of the rivers and lakes diſplay a ſmaller portion of ſolid rock. The land is low and ſtony, intermixed with a light, ſandy ſoil, and clothed with wood. That of the Beaver River is of a more productive quality: but no part of it has ever been cultivated by the natives or Europeans, except a ſmall garden at the Iſle a la Croſſe, which well repaid the labour beſtowed upon it.

The Portage la Loche is of a level ſurface, in ſome parts abounding with ſtones, but in general it is an entire ſand, and covered with the cypreſs, the pine, the ſpruce fir, and other trees natural to its ſoil. Within three miles of the North-Weſt termination, there is a ſmall round lake, whoſe diameter does not exceed a mile, and which affords a trifling reſpite to the labour of carrying. Within a mile of the termination of the Portage is a very ſteep precipice, whoſe aſcent and deſcent appears to be equally impracticable in any way, as it conſiſts of a ſucceſſion of eight hills, ſome of which are almoſt perpendicular; nevertheleſs, the Canadians contrive to ſurmount all theſe difficulties, even with their canoes and lading.

This precipice, which riſes upwards of a thouſand feet above the plain beneath it, commands a moſt extenſive, romantic, and raviſhing proſpect.

From

From thence the eye looks down on the courſe of the little river, by ſome called the Swan river, and by others, the Clear-Water and Pelican river, beautifully meandering for upwards of thirty miles. The valley, which is at once refreſhed and adorned by it, is about three miles in breadth, and is confined by two lofty ridges of equal height, diſplaying a moſt delightful intermixture of wood and lawn, and ſtretching on till the blue miſt obſcures the proſpect. Some parts of the inclining heights are covered with ſtately foreſts, relieved by promontories of the fineſt verdure, where the elk and buffalo find paſture. Theſe are contraſted by ſpots where fire has deſtroyed the woods, and left a dreary void behind it. Nor, when I beheld this wonderful diſplay of uncultivated nature, was the moving ſcenery of human occupation wanting to complete the picture. From this elevated ſituation, I beheld my people, diminiſhed, as it were, to half their ſize, employed in pitching their tents in a charming meadow, and among the canoes, which, being turned upon their ſides, preſented their reddened bottoms in contraſt with the ſurrounding verdure. At the ſame time, the proceſs of gumming them produced numerous ſmall ſpires of ſmoke, which, as they roſe, enlivened the ſcene, and at length blended with the larger columns that aſcended from the fires where the ſuppers were preparing. It was in the month of September when I enjoyed a ſcene, of which I do not preſume to give an adequate deſcription; and as it was the rutting ſeaſon of the elk, the whiſtling of that animal was heard in all the variety which the echoes could afford it.

This river, which waters and reflects ſuch enchanting ſcenery, runs, including its windings, upwards of eighty miles, when it diſcharges itſelf in the Elk River, according to the denomination of the natives, but commonly

commonly called by the white people, the Athabaſca River, in latitude 56. 42. North.

At a ſmall diſtance from Portage la Loche, ſeveral carrying-places interrupt the navigation of the river; about the middle of which are ſome mineral ſprings, whoſe margins are covered with ſulphureous incruſtations. At the junction or fork, the Elk River is about three quarters of a mile in breadth, and runs in a ſteady current, ſometimes contracting, but never increaſing its channel, till, after receiving ſeveral ſmall ſtreams, it diſcharges itſelf into the Lake of the Hills, in latitude 58. 36. North. At about twenty-four miles from the Fork, are ſome bitumenous fountains, into which a pole of twenty feet long may be inſerted without the leaſt reſiſtance. The bitumen is in a fluid ſtate, and when mixed with gum, or the reſinous ſubſtance collected from the ſpruce fir, ſerves to gum the canoes. In its heated ſtate it emits a ſmell like that of ſea-coal. The banks of the river, which are there very elevated, diſcover veins of the ſame bitumenous quality. At a ſmall diſtance from the Fork, houſes have been erected for the convenience of trading with a party of the Kniſteneaux, who viſit the adjacent country for the purpoſe of hunting.

At the diſtance of about forty miles from the lake, is the Old Eſtabliſhment, which has been already mentioned, as formed by Mr. Pond in the year 1778-9, and which was the only one in this part of the world, till the year 1785. In the year 1788, it was transferred to the Lake of the Hills, and formed on a point on its Southern ſide, at about eight miles from the diſcharge of the river. It was named Fort Chepewyan, and is in latitude 58. 38. North, longitude 110. 26. Weſt, and much better

better ſituated for trade and fiſhing, as the people here have recourſe to water for their ſupport.

This being the place which I made my head-quarters for eight years, and from whence I took my departure, on both my expeditions, I ſhall give ſome account of it, with the manner of carrying on the trade there, and other circumſtances connected with it.

The laden canoes which leave Lake la Pluie about the firſt of Auguſt, do not arrive here till the latter end of September, or the beginning of October, when a neceſſary proportion of them is diſpatched up the Peace River to trade with the Beaver and Rocky-Mountain Indians. Others are ſent to the Slave River and Lake, or beyond them, and traffic with the inhabitants of that country. A ſmall part of them, if not left at the Fork of the Elk River, return thither for the Kniſteneaux, while the reſt of the people and merchandiſe remain here to carry on trade with the Chepewyans.

Here have I arrived with ninety or an hundred men without any proviſion for their ſuſtenance; for whatever quantity might have been obtained from the natives during the ſummer, it could not be more than ſufficient for the people diſpatched to their different poſts; and even if there were a caſual ſuperfluity, it was abſolutely neceſſary to preſerve it untouched, for the demands of the ſpring. The whole dependance, therefore, of thoſe who remained, was on the lake, and fiſhing implements for the means of our ſupport. The nets are ſixty fathom in length, when ſet, and contain fifteen meſhes of five inches in depth. The manner of uſing them is as follows: A ſmall ſtone and wooden

buoy

buoy are faſtened to the ſide-line oppoſite to each other, at about the diſtance of two fathoms: when the net is carefully thrown into the water, the ſtone ſinks it to the bottom, while the buoy keeps it at its full extent, and it is ſecured in its ſituation by a ſtone at either end. The nets are viſited every day, and taken out every other day to be cleaned and dried. This is a very ready operation when the waters are not frozen, but when the froſt has ſet in, and the ice has acquired its greateſt thickneſs, which is ſometimes as much as five feet, holes are cut in it at the diſtance of thirty feet from each other, to the full length of the net; one of them is larger than the reſt, being generally about four feet ſquare, and is called the baſon: by means of them, and poles of a proportionable length, the nets are placed in and drawn out of the water. The ſetting of hooks and lines is ſo ſimple an employment as to render a deſcription unneceſſary. The white fiſh are the principal object of purſuit: they ſpawn in the fall of the year, and, at about the ſetting in of the hard froſt, crowd in ſhoals to the ſhallow water, when as many as poſſible are taken, in order that a portion of them may be laid by in the froſt to provide againſt the ſcarcity of winter; as, during that ſeaſon, the fiſh of every deſcription decreaſe in the lakes, if they do not altogether diſappear. Some have ſuppoſed that during this period they are ſtationary, or aſſume an inactive ſtate. If there ſhould be any intervals of warm weather during the fall, it is neceſſary to ſuſpend the fiſh by the tail, though they are not ſo good as thoſe which are altogether preſerved by the froſt. In this ſtate they remain to the beginning of April, when they have been found as ſweet as when they were caught.*

* This fiſhery requires the moſt unremitting attention, as the voyaging Canadians are equally indolent, extravagant, and improvident, when left to themſelves, and rival the ſavages in a neglect of the morrow.

Thus do theſe voyagers live, year after year, entirely upon fiſh, without even the quickening flavour of ſalt, or the variety of any farinaceous root or vegetable. Salt, however, if their habits had not rendered it unneceſſary, might be obtained in this country to the Weſtward of the Peace River, where it loſes its name in that of the Slave River, from the numerous ſalt-ponds and ſprings to be found there, which will ſupply in any quantity, in a ſtate of concretion, and perfectly white and clean. When the Indians paſs that way they bring a ſmall quantity to the fort, with other articles of traffic.

During a ſhort period of the ſpring and fall, great numbers of wild fowl frequent this country, which prove a very gratifying food after ſuch a long privation of fleſh-meat. It is remarkable, however, that the Canadians who frequent the Peace, Saſkatchiwine, and Aſſiniboin rivers, and live altogether on veniſon, have a leſs healthy appearance than thoſe whoſe ſuſtenance is obtained from the waters. At the ſame time the ſcurvy is wholly unknown among them.

In the fall of the year the natives meet the traders at the forts, where they barter the furs or proviſions which they may have procured: they then obtain credit, and proceed to hunt the beavers, and do not return till the beginning of the year; when they are again fitted out in the ſame manner and come back the latter end of March, or the beginning of April. They are now unwilling to repair to the beaver hunt until the waters are clear of ice, that they may kill them with fire-arms, which the Chepewyans are averſe to employ. The major part of the latter return to the barren grounds, and live during the ſummer with their relations

relations and friends in the enjoyment of that plenty which is derived from numerous herds of deer. But thoſe of that tribe who are moſt partial to theſe deſarts, cannot remain there in winter, and they are obliged, with the deer, to take ſhelter in the woods during that rigorous ſeaſon, when they contrive to kill a few beavers, and ſend them by young men, to exchange for iron utenſils and ammunition.

Till the year 1782, the people of Athabaſca ſent or carried their furs regularly to Fort Churchill, Hudſon's Bay; and ſome of them have, ſince that time, repaired thither, notwithſtanding they could have provided themſelves with all the neceſſaries which they required. The difference of the price ſet on goods here and at that factory, made it an object with the Chepewyans, to undertake a journey of five or ſix months, in the courſe of which they were reduced to the moſt painful extremities, and often loſt their lives from hunger and fatigue. At preſent, however, this traffic is in a great meaſure diſcontinued, as they were obliged to expend in the courſe of their journey, that very ammunition which was its moſt alluring object.

Some Account of the Knisteneaux Indians.

THESE people are ſpread over a vaſt extent of country. Their language is the ſame as that of the people who inhabit the coaſt of

Britiſh America on the Atlantic, with the exception of the Eſquimaux*, and continues along the Coaſt of Labrador, and the gulph and banks of St. Laurence to Montreal. The line then follows the Utawas river to its ſource; and continues from thence nearly Weſt along the high lands which divide the waters that fall into Lake Superior and Hudſon's Bay. It then proceeds till it ſtrikes the middle part of the river Winipic, following that water through the Lake Winipic, to the diſcharge of the Saſkatchiwine into it; from thence it accompanies the latter to Fort George, when the line, ſtriking by the head of the Beaver River to the Elk River, runs along its banks to its diſcharge in the Lake of the Hills; from which it may be carried back Eaſt, to the Iſle á la Croſſe, and ſo on to Churchill by the Miſſinipi. The whole of the tract between this line and Hudſon's Bay and Straits, (except that of the Eſquimaux in the latter), may be ſaid to be excluſively the country of the Kniſteneaux. Some of them, indeed, have penetrated further Weſt and South to the Red River, to the South of Lake Winipic, and the South branch of the Saſkatchiwine.

They are of a moderate ſtature, well proportioned, and of great activity. Examples of deformity are ſeldom to be ſeen among them. Their complexion is of a copper colour, and their hair black, which is common to all the natives of North America. It is cut in various forms, according to the fancy of the ſeveral tribes, and by ſome is

* The ſimilarity between their language, and that of the Algonquins, is an unequivocal proof that they are the ſame people. Specimens of their reſpective tongues will be hereafter given.

left

left in the long, lank, flow of nature. They very generally extract their beards, and both ſexes manifeſt a diſpoſition to pluck the hair from every part of the body and limbs. Their eyes are black, keen, and penetrating; their countenance open and agreeable, and it is a principal object of their vanity to give every poſſible decoration to their perſons. A material article in their toilettes is vermilion, which they contraſt with their native blue, white, and brown earths, to which charcoal is frequently added.

Their dreſs is at once ſimple and commodious. It conſiſts of tight leggins, reaching near the hip: a ſtrip of cloth or leather, called aſſian, about a foot wide, and five feet long, whoſe ends are drawn inwards and hang behind and before, over a belt tied round the waiſt for that purpoſe: a cloſe veſt or ſhirt reaching down to the former garment, and cinctured with a broad ſtrip of parchment faſtened with thongs behind; and a cap for the head, conſiſting of a piece of fur, or ſmall ſkin, with the bruſh of the animal as a ſuſpended ornament: a kind of robe is thrown occaſionally over the whole of the dreſs, and ſerves both night and day. Theſe articles, with the addition of ſhoes and mittens, conſtitute the variety of their apparel. The materials vary according to the ſeaſon, and conſiſt of dreſſed mooſe-ſkin, beaver prepared with the fur, or European woollens. The leather is neatly painted, and fancifully worked in ſome parts with porcupine quills, and mooſe-deer hair: the ſhirts and leggins are alſo adorned with fringe and taſſels; nor are the ſhoes and mittens without ſomewhat of appropriate decoration, and worked with a conſiderable degree of ſkill and taſte. Theſe habiliments are put on, however,

ever, as fancy or convenience ſuggeſts; and they will ſometimes proceed to the chaſe in the ſevereſt froſt, covered only with the ſlighteſt of them. Their head-dreſſes are compoſed of the feathers of the ſwan, the eagle, and other birds. The teeth, horns, and claws of different animals, are alſo the occaſional ornaments of the head and neck. Their hair, however arranged, is always beſmeared with greaſe. The making of every article of dreſs is a female occupation; and the women, though by no means inattentive to the decoration of their own perſons, appear to have a ſtill greater degree of pride in attending to the appearance of the men, whoſe faces are painted with more care than thoſe of the women.

The female dreſs is formed of the ſame materials as thoſe of the other ſex, but of a different make and arrangement. Their ſhoes are commonly plain, and their leggins gartered beneath the knee. The coat, or body covering, falls down to the middle of the leg, and is faſtened over the ſhoulders with cords, a flap or cape turning down about eight inches, both before and behind, and agreeably ornamented with quill-work and fringe; the bottom is alſo fringed, and fancifully painted as high as the knee. As it is very looſe, it is encloſed round the waiſt with a ſtiff belt, decorated with taſſels, and faſtened behind. The arms are covered to the wriſt, with detached ſleeves, which are ſewed as far as the bend of the arm; from thence they are drawn up to the neck, and the corners of them fall down behind, as low as the waiſt. The cap, when they wear one, conſiſts of a certain quantity of leather or cloth, ſewed at one end, by which means it is kept on the head, and, hanging down the

the back, is faſtened to the belt, as well as under the chin. The upper garment is a robe like that worn by the men. Their hair is divided on the crown, and tied behind, or ſometimes faſtened in large knots over the ears. They are fond of European articles, and prefer them to their own native commodities. Their ornaments conſiſt in common with all ſavages, in bracelets, rings, and ſimilar baubles. Some of the women tatoo three perpendicular lines, which are ſometimes double: one from the centre of the chin to that of the under lip, and one parallel on either ſide to the corner of the mouth.

Of all the nations which I have ſeen on this continent, the Kniſteneaux women are the moſt comely. Their figure is generally well proportioned, and the regularity of their features would be acknowledged by the more civilized people of Europe. Their complexion has leſs of that dark tinge which is common to thoſe ſavages who have leſs cleanly habits.

Theſe people are, in general, ſubject to few diſorders. The lues venerea, however, is a common complaint, but cured by the application of ſimples, with whoſe virtues they appear to be well acquainted. They are alſo ſubject to fluxes, and pains in the breaſt, which ſome have attributed to the very cold and keen air which they inhale; but I ſhould imagine that theſe complaints muſt frequently proceed from their immoderate indulgence in fat meat at their feaſts, particularly when they have been preceded by long faſting.

They are naturally mild and affable, as well as juſt in their dealings,

ings; not only among themſelves, but with ſtrangers*. They are alſo generous and hoſpitable, and good-natured in the extreme, except when their nature is perverted by the inflammatory influence of ſpirituous liquors. To their children they are indulgent to a fault. The father, though he aſſumes no command over them, is ever anxious to inſtruct them in all the preparatory qualifications for war and hunting; while the mother is equally attentive to her daughters in teaching them every thing that is conſidered as neceſſary to their character and ſituation. It does not appear that the huſband makes any diſtinction between the children of his wife, though they may be the offspring of different fathers. Illegitimacy is only attached to thoſe who are born before their mothers have cohabited with any man by the title of huſband.

It does not appear, that chaſtity is conſidered by them as a virtue; or that fidelity is believed to be eſſential to the happineſs of wedded life. Though it ſometimes happens that the infidelity of a wife is puniſhed by the huſband with the loſs of her hair, noſe, and perhaps life; ſuch ſeverity proceeds from its having been practiſed without his permiſſion: for a temporary interchange of wives is not uncommon; and the offer of their perſons is conſidered as a neceſſary part of the hoſpitality due to ſtrangers.

When a man loſes his wife, it is conſidered as a duty to marry her

* They have been called thieves, but when that vice can with juſtice be attributed to them, it may be traced to their connection with the civilized people who come into their country to traffic.

ſiſter,

ſiſter, if ſhe has one; or he may, if he pleaſes, have them both at the ſame time.

It will appear from the fatal conſequences I have repeatedly imputed to the uſe of ſpirituous liquors, that I more particularly conſider theſe people as having been, morally ſpeaking, great ſufferers from their communication with the ſubjects of civilized nations. At the ſame time they were not, in a ſtate of nature, without their vices, and ſome of them of a kind which is the moſt abhorrent to cultivated and reflecting man. I ſhall only obſerve that inceſt and beſtiality are among them.

When a young man marries, he immediately goes to live with the father and mother of his wife, who treat him, nevertheleſs, as a perfect ſtranger, till after the birth of his firſt child: he then attaches himſelf more to them than his own parents; and his wife no longer gives him any other denomination than that of the father of her child.

The profeſſion of the men is war and hunting, and the more active ſcene of their duty is the field of battle, and the chaſe in the woods. They alſo ſpear fiſh, but the management of the nets is left to the women. The females of this nation are in the ſame ſubordinate ſtate with thoſe of all other ſavage tribes; but the ſeverity of their labour is much diminiſhed by their ſituation on the banks of lakes and rivers, where they employ canoes. In the winter, when the waters are frozen, they make their journies, which are never of any great length, with ſledges drawn by dogs.

They are, at the ſame time ſubject to every kind of domeſtic drudgery: they dreſs the leather, make the clothes and ſhoes, weave the nets, collect wood, erect the tents, fetch water, and perform every culinary ſervice; ſo that when the duties of maternal care are added, it will appear that the life of theſe women is an uninterrupted ſucceſſion of toil and pain. This, indeed, is the ſenſe they entertain of their own ſituation; and, under the influence of that ſentiment, they are ſometimes known to deſtroy their female children, to ſave them from the miſeries which they themſelves have ſuffered. They alſo have a ready way, by the uſe of certain ſimples, of procuring abortions, which they ſometimes practiſe, from their hatred of the father, or to ſave themſelves the trouble which children occaſion: and, as I have been credibly informed, this unnatural act is repeated without any injury to the health of the women who perpetrate it.

The funeral rites begin, like all other ſolemn ceremonials, with ſmoking, and are concluded by a feaſt. The body is dreſſed in the beſt habiliments poſſeſſed by the deceaſed, or his relations, and is then depoſited in a grave, lined with branches: ſome domeſtic utenſils are placed on it, and a kind of canopy erected over it. During this ceremony, great lamentations are made, and if the departed perſon is very much regretted the near relations cut off their hair, pierce the fleſhy part of their thighs and arms with arrows, knives, &c. and blacken their faces with charcoal. If they have diſtinguiſhed themſelves in war, they are ſometimes laid on a kind of ſcaffolding; and I have been informed that women, as in the Eaſt, have been known to ſacrifice themſelves to the manes of their huſbands. The whole of the property belonging to the departed perſon

is

is deſtroyed, and the relations take in exchange for the wearing apparel, any rags that will cover their nakedneſs. The feaſt beſtowed on the occaſion, which is, or at leaſt uſed to be, repeated annually, is accompanied with eulogiums on the deceaſed, and without any acts of ferocity. On the tomb are carved or painted the ſymbols of his tribe, which are taken from the different animals of the country.

Many and various are the motives which induce a ſavage to engage in war. To prove his courage, or to revenge the death of his relations, or ſome of his tribe, by the maſſacre of an enemy. If the tribe feel themſelves called upon to go to war, the elders convene the people, in order to know the general opinion. If it be for war, the chief publiſhes his intention to ſmoke in the ſacred ſtem at a certain period, to which ſolemnity, meditation and faſting are required as preparatory ceremonials. When the people are thus aſſembled, and the meeting ſanctified by the cuſtom of ſmoking, the chief enlarges on the cauſes which have called them together, and the neceſſity of the meaſures propoſed on the occaſion. He then invites thoſe who are willing to follow him, to ſmoke out of the ſacred ſtem, which is conſidered as the token of enrolment; and if it ſhould be the general opinion, that aſſiſtance is neceſſary, others are invited, with great formality, to join them. Every individual who attends theſe meetings brings ſomething with him as a token of his warlike intention, or as an object of ſacrifice, which, when the aſſembly diſſolves, is ſuſpended from poles near the place of council.

They have frequent feaſts, and particular circumſtances never fail to

produce them; ſuch as a tedious illneſs, long faſting, &c. On theſe occaſions it is uſual for the perſon who means to give the entertainment, to announce his deſign, on a certain day, of opening the medicine bag and ſmoking out of his ſacred ſtem. This declaration is conſidered as a ſacred vow that cannot be broken. There are alſo ſtated periods, ſuch as the ſpring and autumn, when they engage in very long and ſolemn ceremonies. On theſe occaſions dogs are offered as ſacrifices, and thoſe which are very fat, and milk-white, are preferred. They alſo make large offerings of their property, whatever it may be. The ſcene of theſe ceremonies is in an open incloſure on the bank of a river or lake, and in the moſt conſpicuous ſituation, in order that ſuch as are paſſing along or travelling, may be induced to make their offerings. There is alſo a particular cuſtom among them, that, on theſe occaſions, if any of the tribe, or even a ſtranger, ſhould be paſſing by, and be in real want of any thing that is diſplayed as an offering, he has a right to take it, ſo that he replaces it with ſome article he can ſpare, though it be of far inferior value: but to take or touch any thing wantonly is conſidered as a ſacrilegious act, and highly inſulting to the great Maſter of Life, to uſe their own expreſſion, who is the ſacred object of their devotion.

The ſcene of private ſacrifice is the lodge of the perſon who performs it, which is prepared for that purpoſe by removing every thing out of it, and ſpreading green branches in every part. The fire and aſhes are alſo taken away. A new hearth is made of freſh earth, and another fire is lighted. The owner of the dwelling remains alone in it; and he begins the ceremony by ſpreading a piece of new cloth, or a well-dreſſed mooſe-ſkin neatly painted, on which he opens his medicine-bag and expoſes

expoſes its contents, conſiſting of various articles. The principal of them is a kind of houſehold god, which is a ſmall carved image about eight inches long. Its firſt covering is of down, over which a piece of beech bark is cloſely tied, and the whole is enveloped in ſeveral folds of red and blue cloth. This little figure is an object of the moſt pious regard. The next article is his war-cap, which is decorated with the feathers and plumes of ſcarce birds, beavers, and eagle's claws, &c. There is alſo ſuſpended from it a quill or feather for every enemy whom the owner of it has ſlain in battle. The remaining contents of the bag are, a piece of Brazil tobacco, ſeveral roots and ſimples, which are in great eſtimation for their medicinal qualities, and a pipe. Theſe articles being all expoſed, and the ſtem reſting upon two forks, as it muſt not touch the ground, the maſter of the lodge ſends for the perſon he moſt eſteems, who ſits down oppoſite to him; the pipe is then filled and fixed to the ſtem. A pair of wooden pincers is provided to put the fire in the pipe, and a double-pointed pin, to empty it of the remnant of tobacco which is not conſumed. This arrangement being made, the men aſſemble, and ſometimes the women are allowed to be humble ſpectators, while the moſt religious awe and ſolemnity pervades the whole. The Michiniwais, or Aſſiſtant, takes up the pipe, lights it, and preſents it to the officiating perſon, who receives it ſtanding and holds it between both his hands. He then turns himſelf to the Eaſt, and draws a few whiffs, which he blows to that point. The ſame ceremony he obſerves to the other three quarters, with his eyes directed upwards during the whole of it. He holds the ſtem about the middle between the three firſt fingers of both hands, and raiſing them upon a line with his forehead, he ſwings it three times round from the Eaſt, with the ſun, when, after pointing and balancing it

in

in various directions, he repoſes it on the forks: he then makes a ſpeech to explain the deſign of their being called together, which concludes with an acknowledgment of paſt mercies, and a prayer for the continuance of them, from the Maſter of Life. He then ſits down, and the whole company declare their approbation and thanks by uttering the word *ho!* with an emphatic prolongation of the laſt letter. The Michiniwais then takes up the pipe and holds it to the mouth of the officiating perſon, who, after ſmoking three whiffs out of it, utters a ſhort prayer, and then goes round with it, taking his courſe from Eaſt to Weſt, to every perſon preſent, who individually ſays ſomething to him on the occaſion: and thus the pipe is generally ſmoked out; when, after turning it three or four times round his head, he drops it downwards, and replaces it in its original ſituation. He then returns the company thanks for their attendance, and wiſhes them, as well as the whole tribe, health and long life.

Theſe ſmoking rites precede every matter of great importance, with more or leſs ceremony, but always with equal ſolemnity. The utility of them will appear from the following relation.

If a chief is anxious to know the diſpoſition of his people towards him, or if he wiſhes to ſettle any difference between them, he announces his intention of opening his medicine-bag and ſmoking in his ſacred ſtem; and no man who entertains a grudge againſt any of the party thus aſſembled can ſmoke with the ſacred ſtem; as that ceremony diſſipates all differences, and is never violated.

No

No one can avoid attending on theſe occaſions; but a perſon may attend and be excuſed from aſſiſting at the ceremonies, by acknowledging that he has not undergone the neceſſary purification. The having cohabited with his wife, or any other woman, within twenty-four hours preceding the ceremony, renders him unclean, and, conſequently, diſqualifies him from performing any part of it. If a contract is entered into and ſolemniſed by the ceremony of ſmoking, it never fails of being faithfully fulfilled. If a perſon, previous to his going a journey, leaves the ſacred ſtem as a pledge of his return, no conſideration whatever will prevent him from executing his engagement.*

The chief, when he propoſes to make a feaſt, ſends quills, or ſmall pieces of wood, as tokens of invitation to ſuch as he wiſhes to partake of it. At the appointed time the gueſts arrive, each bringing a diſh or platter, and a knife, and take their ſeats on each ſide of the chief, who receives them ſitting, according to their reſpective ages. The pipe is then lighted, and he makes an equal diviſion of every thing that is provided. While the company are enjoying their meal, the chief ſings, and accompanies his ſong with the tambourin, or ſhiſhiquoi, or rattle. The gueſt who has firſt eaten his portion is conſidered as the moſt diſtinguiſhed perſon. If there ſhould be any who cannot finiſh the whole of their meſs, they endeavour to prevail on ſome of their friends to eat it for them, who are rewarded for their aſſiſtance with ammunition and tobacco. It is proper alſo to remark, that at

* It is however to be lamented, that of late there is a relaxation of the duties originally attached to theſe feſtivals.

theſe feaſts a ſmall quantity of meat or drink is ſacrificed, before they begin to eat, by throwing it into the fire, or on the earth.

Theſe feaſts differ according to circumſtances; ſometimes each man's allowance is no more than he can diſpatch in a couple of hours. At other times the quantity is ſufficient to ſupply each of them with food for a week, though it muſt be devoured in a day. On theſe occaſions it is very difficult to procure ſubſtitutes, and the whole muſt be eaten whatever time it may require. At ſome of theſe entertainments there is a more rational arrangement, when the gueſts are allowed to carry home with them the ſuperfluous part of their portions. Great care is always taken that the bones may be burned, as it would be conſidered a profanation were the dogs permitted to touch them.

The public feaſts are conducted in the ſame manner, but with ſome additional ceremony. Several chiefs officiate at them, and procure the neceſſary proviſions, as well as prepare a proper place of reception for the numerous company. Here the gueſts diſcourſe upon public topics, repeat the heroic deeds of their forefathers, and excite the riſing generation to follow their example. The entertainments on theſe occaſions conſiſt of dried meats, as it would not be practicable to dreſs a ſufficient quantity of freſh meat for ſuch a large aſſembly; though the women and children are excluded.

Similar feaſts uſed to be made at funerals, and annually, in honour of the dead; but they have been, for ſome time, growing into diſuſe, and I never had an opportunity of being preſent at any of them.

The

The women, who are forbidden to enter the places ſacred to theſe feſtivals, dance and ſing around them, and ſometimes beat time to the muſic within them; which forms an agreeable contraſt.

With reſpect to their diviſions of time, they compute the length of their journies by the number of nights paſſed in performing them; and they divide the year by the ſucceſſion of moons. In this calculation, however, they are not altogether correct, as they cannot account for the odd days.

The names which they give to the moons are deſcriptive of the ſeveral ſeaſons.

May - -	Atheiky o Piſhim - -	Frog-Moon.
June - -	Oppinu o Piſhim - -	The Moon in which birds begin to lay their eggs.
July - -	Aupaſcen o Piſhim - -	The Moon when birds caſt their feathers.
Auguſt -	Aupahou o Piſhim - -	The Moon when the young birds begin to fly.
September	Waſkiſcon o Piſhim - -	The Moon when the mooſe-deer caſt their horns.
October -	Wiſac o Piſhim - -	The Rutting-Moon.
November	Thithigon Pewai o Piſhim -	Hoar-Froſt-Moon.
	Kuſkatinayoui o Piſhim -	Ice-Moon.
December	Pawatchicananaſis o Piſhim -	Whirlwind-Moon.
January -	Kuſhapawaſticanum o Piſhim	Extreme cold Moon.

February -	Kichil Piſhim - - -	Big Moon; ſome ſay, Old Moon.
March -	Mickyſue Piſhim - -	Eagle Moon.
April -	Niſcaw o Piſhim - -	Gooſe-Moon.

Theſe people know the medicinal virtues of many herbs and ſimples, and apply the roots of plants and the bark of trees with ſucceſs. But the conjurers, who monopolize the medical ſcience, find it neceſſary to blend myſtery with their art, and do not communicate their knowledge. Their materia medica they adminiſter in the form of purges and clyſters; but the remedies and ſurgical operations are ſuppoſed to derive much of their effect from magic and incantation. When a bliſter riſes in the foot from the froſt, the chaffing of the ſhoe, &c. they immediately open it, and apply the heated blade of a knife to the part, which, painful as it may be, is found to be efficacious. A ſharp flint ſerves them as a lancet for letting blood, as well as for ſcarification in bruiſes and ſwellings. For ſprains, the dung of an animal juſt killed is conſidered as the beſt remedy. They are very fond of European medicines, though they are ignorant of their application: and thoſe articles form a conſiderable part of the European traffic with them.

Among their various ſuperſtitions, they believe that the vapour which is ſeen to hover over moiſt and ſwampy places, is the ſpirit of ſome perſon lately dead. They alſo fancy another ſpirit which appears, in the ſhape of a man, upon the trees near the lodge of a perſon deceaſed, whoſe property has not been interred with them. He is repreſented as bearing a gun in his hand, and it is believed that he does not return to his reſt, till the property that has been withheld from the grave has been ſacrificed to it.

Examples

Examples of the Kniſteneaux and Algonquin Tongues.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Good Spirit	Ki jai Manitou	Ki jai Manitou.
Evil Spirit	Matchi manitou	Matchi manitou.
Man	Ethini	Inini.
Woman	Eſquois	Ich-quois.
Male	Nap hew	Aquoiſi.
Female	Non-genſe	Non-genſe
Infant	A' waſh iſh	Abi nont-chen.
Head	Us ti quoin	O'chiti-goine.
Forehead	Es caa tick	O catick.
Hair	Wes ty-ky	Wineſſis.
Eyes	Es kis och	Oſkingick.
Noſe	Oſkiwin	O'chengewane.
Noſtrils	Oo tith ee go mow	Ni-de-ni-guom.
Mouth	O toune	O tonne.
My teeth	Wip pit tah	Nibit.
Tongue	Otaithani	O-tai-na-ni.
Beard	Michitoune	Omichitonn.
Brain	With i tip	Aba-e winikan.
Ears	O tow ee gie	O-ta wagane.
Neck	O qui ow	O'quoi gan.
Throat	O koot tas gy	Nigon dagane.
Arms	O niſk	O nic.
Fingers	Che chee	Ni nid gines.
Nails	Wos kos ſia	Os-kenge.
Side	O's ſpig gy	Opikegan.
My back	No pis quan	Ni-pi quoini.
My belly	Nattay	Ni my ſat.
Thighs	O povam	Obouame
My knees	No che quoin nah	Ni gui tick.
Legs	Noſk	Ni gatte.
Heart	O thea	Othai.
My father	Noo ta wie	Noſſai.
My mother	Nigah wei	Nigah.
My boy (ſon)	Negouſis	Nigouiſſés
My girl (daughter)	Netanis	Nidaniſs.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
My brother, elder	Ni ſteſs	Nis-a-yen.
My ſiſter, elder	Ne miſs	Nimiſain.
My grandfather	Ne moo ſhum	Ni-mi-chomiſs.
My grandmother	N' o kum	No-co-miſs.
My uncle	N' o'ka miſs	Ni ni michomen.
My nephew	Ne too ſim	Ne do jim.
My niece	Ne too ſim efquois	Ni-do-jim equois.
My mother in law	Niſigouſe	Ni ſigouſiſs.
My brother in law	Niſtah	Nitah.
My companion	Ne wechi wagan	Ni-wit-chi-wagan.
My huſband	Ni nap pem	Ni na bem.
Blood	Mith coo	Miſquoi.
Old Man	Shi nap	Aki win ſe.
I am angry	Ne kis ſi waſh en	Niſ katiſſiwine.
I fear	Ne goos tow	Niſeſt guſe.
Joy	Ne hea tha tom	Mamoud gikiſi.
Hearing	Pethom	Oda wagan.
Track	Mis conna	Pemi ka wois.
Chief, great ruler	Haukimah	Kitchi onodis.
Thief	Kiſmoutheſk	Ke moutiſké.
Excrement	Meyee	Moui.
Buffalo	Mouſtouche	Pichike.
Ferret	Sigous	Shingouſs.
Polecat	Shicak	Shi-kâk.
Elk	Mouſtouche	Michai woi.
Rein deer	Attick	Atick.
Fallow deer	Attick	Wa waſqueſh.
Beaver	Amiſk	Amic.
Woolverine	Qui qua katch	Quin quoagki.
Squirrel	Ennequachas	Otchi ta mou.
Minx	Sá quaſue	Shaugouch.
Otter	Nekick	Ni guick.
Wolf	Mayegan	Maygan.
Hare	Wapouce	Wapouce.
Marten	Wappiſtan	Wabichinſe.
Mooſe	Mouſwah	Monſe
Bear	Maſquâ	Macqua.
Fiſher	Wijaſk	Od-jiſck.

Lynx

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Lynx	Picheu	Pechou.
Porcupine	Cau quah	Kack.
Fox	Ma kiſew	Wagouche.
Muſk Rat	Wajaſk	Wa-jack.
Mouſe	Abicuſhiſs	Wai wa be gou noge.
Cow Buffalo	Noſhi Mouſtouche	Nochena pichik.
Meat-fleſh	Wias	Wi-aſs.
Dog	Atim	Ani-mouſe.
Eagle	Makuſue	Me-guiſſis.
Duck	Sy Sip	Shi-ſip.
Crow, Corbeau	Ca Cawkeu	Ka-Kak.
Swan	Wapiſeu	Wa-pe-ſy.
Turkey	Mes ſei thew	Miſſiſſay.
Pheaſants	Okes kew	Ajack.
Bird	Pethefew	Pi-na-ſy.
Outard	Niſcag	Nic kack.
White Gooſe	Wey Wois	Woi wois.
Grey Gooſe	Peſtaſiſh	Pos ta kiſk.
Partridge	Pithew	Pen ainſe.
Water Hen	Chiquibiſh	Che qui bis.
Dove	Omi Mee.	O mi-mis.
Eggs	Wa Wah	Wa Weni.
Pike or Jack	Kenonge	Kenongé.
Carp	Na may bin	Na me bine.
Sturgeon	Na May	Na Maiu.
White Fiſh	Aticaming	Aticaming.
Pikrel	Oc-chaw	Oh-ga.
Fiſh (in general)	Kenongé	Ki-cons.
Spawn	Waquon	Wa quock.
Fins	Chi chi kan	O nidj-igan.
Trout	Nay gouſe	Na Men Gouſe.
Craw Fiſh	A ſhag gee	A cha kens chacque.
Frog	Athick	O ma ka ki.
Waſp	Ah moo	A mon.
Turtle	Mikinack	Mi-ki-nack.
Snake	Kinibick	Ki nai bick.
Awl	Oſcajick	Ma-goſe.

Needle

	Knifteneaux.	Algonquin.
Needle	Saboinigan	Sha-bo nigan.
Fire Steel	Appet	Scoutecgan.
Fire wood	Mich-tah	Miſſane.
Cradle	Teckinigan	Tickina-gan.
Dagger	Ta comagau	Na-ba-ke-gou-man.
Arrow	Auguſk or Atouche	Mettic ka nouins.
Fiſh Hook	Quoſquipichican	Maneton Miquiſcane.
Ax	Shegaygan	Wagagvette.
Ear-bob	Chi-kiſebiſoun	Na be chi be ſoun.
Comb	Sicahoun	Pin ack wan.
Net	Athabe	Aſſap.
Tree	Miſtick	Miti-coum.
Wood	Miſtick	Mitic.
Paddle	Aboi	Aboui.
Canoe	Chiman	S-chiman.
Birch Rind	Waſquoi	Wig naſs.
Bark	Waſquoi	On-na-guege.
Touch Wood	Pouſagan	Sa-ga-tagan.
Leaf	Nepeſhah	Ni-biche.
Graſs	Maſquoſi	Maſquoſi.
Raſpberries	Miſqui-meinac	Miſqui meinac.
Strawberries	O'-tai-e minac	O'-tai-e minac.
Aſhes	Pecouch	Pengoui.
Fire	Scou tay	Scou tay.
Grapes	Shomenac	Shomenac.
Fog	Pakiſhihow	A Winni.
Mud	Aſus ki	A Shiſki.
Currant	Kiſijiwin	Ki ſi chi woin.
Road	Meſcanah	Mickanan.
Winter	Pipoun	Pipone.
Iſland	Miniſtick	Miniſs.
Lake	Sagayigan	Sagayigan.
Sun	Piſim	Kijis.
Moon	Tibiſca peſim (the night Sun	Dibic kijiſs.
Day	Kigigah	Kigi gatte.
Night	Tibiſca	Dibic kawte.
Snow	Counah	So qui po.

Rain

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Rain	Kimiwoin	Ki mi woini.
Drift	Pewan	Pi-woine.
Hail	Shes eagan	Me qua menſan.
Ice	Meſquaming	Me quam.
Froſt	Aquatin	Gas-ga-tin.
Miſt	Picafyow	An-quo-et.
Water	Nepec	Ni-pei.
World	Meſſe aſky (all the earth)	Miſſi achki.
Mountain	Wachee	Watchive.
Sea	Kitchi kitchi ga ming	Kitchi-kitchi ga ming.
Morning	Kequiſhepe	Ki-ki-jep.
Mid-day	Abetah quiſheik	Na ock quoi.
Portage	Unygam	Ouni-gam.
Spring	Menouſcaming	Mino ka ming.
River	Sipee	Sipi.
Rapid	Bawaſtick	Ba wetick.
Rivulet	Sepeeſis	Sipi wes chin.
Sand	Thocaw	Ne gawe.
Earth	Aſkee	Ach ki.
Star	Attack	Anang.
Thunder	Pithuſeu	Ni mi ki.
Wind	Thoutin	No tine
Calm	Athawoſtin	A-no-a-tine.
Heat	Quiſhipoi	Aboycé.
Evening	Ta kaſhiké	O'n-a-guche.
North	Kywoitin	Ke woitinak.
South	Sawena woon	Sha-wa-na-wang.
Eaſt	Coſhawcaſtak	Wa-ba-no-notine.
Weſt	Paquiſimow	Panguis-chi-mo.
To-morrow	Wabank	Wa-bang.
Bone	Oſkann	Oc-kann.
Broth	Michim waboi	Thaboub.
Feaſt	Ma qua ſee	Wi con qui wine.
Greaſe or oil	Pimis	Pimi-tais.
Marrow fat	Oſcan pimis	Oſka-pimitais.
Sinew	Aſtis	Attifs.
Lodge	Wig-waum	Wi-gui-wam.
Bed	Ne pa win	Ne pai wine.

Within

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Within	Pendog ké	Pendig.
Door	Squandam	Scouandam.
Diſh	Othagan	O' na gann.
Fort	Waſgaigan	Wa-kuigan.
Sledge	Tabanaſk	Otabanac.
Cincture	Poquoatehoun	Ketche piſou.
Cap	Aſtotin	Pe matinang.
Socks	Aſhican	A chi-gan.
Shirt	Papackeweyan	Pa pa ki weyan.
Coat	Papiſe-co-wagan	Papiſe-co-wagan.
Blanket	Wape weyang	Wape weyan.
Cloth	Maneto weguin	Maneto weguin.
Thread	Aſſabab	Aſſabab.
Garters	Chi ki-biſoon	Ni gaſke-taſe beſoun.
Mittens	Aſtiſſack	Medjicawine.
Shoes	Maſkiſin	Makiſin.
Smoking bag	Kuſquepetagan	Kaſquepetagan.
Portage ſling	Apiſan	Apican.
Strait on	Goi aſk	Goi-ack.
Medicine	Mas ki kee	Macki-ki.
Red	Mes coh	Mes-cowa.
Blue	Kaſqutch (ſame as black)	O-jawes-cowa.
White	Wabiſca	Wabiſca.
Yellow	Saw waw	O-jawa.
Green	Chibatiquare	O'jawes-cowa.
Brown		O'jawes-cowa.
Grey, &c.		O'jawes-cowa.
Ugly	Mache na gouſeu	Mous-counu-gouſe.
Handſome	Catawaſſiſeu	Nam biſſa.
Beautiful	Kiſſi Sawenogan	Quoi Natch.
Deaf	Nima petom	Ka ki be chai.
Good-natured	Mithiwaſhin	Onichiſhin.
Pregnant	Paawie	And'jioko.
Fat	Outhineu	Oui-ni-noe.
Big	Muſhikitee	Meſsha.
Small or little	Abiſaſheu	Agu-chin.
Short	Chemaſiſh	Tackoſi.

Skin

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Skin	Wian	Wian.
Long	Kinwain	Kiniwa.
Strong	Maſcawa	Mache-cawa. / Mas cawiſe.
Coward	Sagatahaw	Cha-goutai-ye.
Weak	Nitha miſſew	Cha-gouſi.
Lean	Mahta waw	Ka wa ca-toſa.
Brave	Nima Guſtaw	Son qui taigé.
Young man	Oſquineguiſh	Oſkinigui.
Cold	Kiſſin	Kiſſinan.
Hot	Kichatai	Kicha tai.
Spring	Minouſcaming	Minokaming.
Summer	Nibin	Nibiqui.
Fall	Tagowagonk	Tagowag.
One	Peyac	Pecheik.
Two	Niſheu	Nige.
Three	Niſhtou	Nis-wois.
Four	Neway	Ne-au.
Five	Ni-annan	Na-nan.
Six	Negoutawoeſic	Ni gouta waswois.
Seven	Niſh woiſic	Nigi-was-wois.
Eight	Jannanew	She was wois.
Nine	Shack	Shang was wois.
Ten	Mitatat	Mit-aſſwois.
Eleven	Peyac oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, pecheik.
Twelve	Niſheu oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, nige.
Thirteen	Nichtou oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, niſwois.
Fourteen	Neway oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, ne-au.
Fifteen	Niannan oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, nanan.
Sixteen	Nigoutawoeſic oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, negoutawaſwois.
Seventeen	Niſh woeſic oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, nigi waſwois.
Eighteen	Jannanew oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, ſhiwaſwois.
Nineteen	Shack oſap	Mitaſſwois, hachi, ſhang as wois.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Twenty - -	Niſheu mitenah -	Nigeta-nan.
Twenty-one -	Niſhew mitenah peyac oſap - -	Nigeta nan, hachi, pechic.
Twenty-two, &c.	Niſheu mitenah niſhew oſap - -	
Thirty - -	Niſhtou mitenah -	Niſwois mitanan.
Forty - -	Neway mitenah -	Neau mitanan.
Fifty - -	Niannan mitenah -	Nanan mitanan.
Sixty - -	Negoutawoiſic mitenah	Nigouta was wois mitanan.
Seventy - -	Niſhwoiſic mitenah -	Nigi was wois mitanan.
Eighty - -	Jannaeu mitenah -	She was wois mitanan.
Ninety - -	Shack mitenah -	Shang was wois mitanan.
Hundred -	Mitana mitinah -	Ningoutwack.
Two Hundred -	Neſhew mitena a mitenah -	Nige wack.
One thouſand -	Mitenah mitena mitenah -	Kitchi-wack.
Firſt - -	Nican - -	Nitam.
Laſt - -	Squayatch - -	Shaquoiyanque.
More - -	Minah - -	Awa chi min.
Better - -	Athiwack mithawaſhin	Awachimin o nichi ſhen.
Beſt - -	Athiwack mithawaſhin	Kitchi o nichi ſhin.
I, or me - -	Nitha - -	Nin.
You, or thou -	Kitha - -	Kin.
They, or them -	Withawaw - -	Win na wa.
We - -	Nithawaw - -	Nina wa.
My, or mine -	Nitayan - -	Nida yam.
Your's - -	Kitayan - -	Kitayam.
Who - -	- - -	Auoni.
Whom - -	Awoiné - -	Kegoi nin.
What - -	- - -	Wa.
His, or her's -	Otayan - -	Otayim mis.
All - -	Kakithau - -	Kakenan.
Some, or ſome few	Pey peyac - -	Pe-pichic.
The ſame - -	Tabeſcoutch - -	Mi ta yoche.
All the world -	Miſſi acki wanque -	Miſhiwai aſky.
All the men -	Kakithaw Ethi nyock -	Miſſi Inini wock.

More

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
More	Mina	Mina wa.
Now and then		Nannigoutengue.
Sometimes	I as-cow-puco	
Seldom		Wica-ac-ko.
Arrive	Ta couchin	Ta-gouchin.
Beat	Otamaha	Packit-ais.
To burn	Miſtaſcaſoo	Icha-quiſo.
To ſing	Nagamoun	Nagam.
To cut	Kiſquiſhan	Qui qui jan.
To hide	Catann	Caſo tawe.
To cover	Acquahoun	A co na oune.
To believe	Taboitam	Tai boitam.
To ſleep	Nepan	Ni pann.
To diſpute	Ke ko mi towock	Ki quaidiwine.
To dance	Nemaytow	Nimic.
To give	Mith	Mih.
To do	Ogitann	O-gitoune.
To eat	Wiſſinee	Wiſſiniwin.
To die	Nepew	Ni po wen.
To forget	Wimekiſkiſew	Woi ni mi kaw.
To ſpeak	Athimetakcouſé	Aninntagouſſé.
To cry (tears)	Mantow	Ma wi.
To laugh	Papew	Pa-pe.
To ſet down	Nematappe	Na matape win.
To walk	Pimoutais	Pemouſſai.
To fall	Packiſin	Panguiſhin.
To work	Ah tus kew	Anokeh.
To kill	Nipahaw	Niſhi-woes.
To ſell	Attawoin	Ata wois.
To live	Pimatiſe	Pematis.
To ſee	Wabam	Wab.
To come	Aſtamoteh	Pitta-ſi-mouſs.
Enough	Egothigog	Mi mi nic.
Cry (tears)	Manteau	Ambai ma wita.
It hails	Shiſiagan	Sai ſaigaun.
There is There is ſome	Aya wa	Aya wan.

	Kniſtencaux.	Algonquin.
It rains	Quimiwoin	Qui mi woin.
After to-morrow	Awis wabank	Awes wabang.
To-day	Anoutch	Non gum.
Thereaway	Netoi	Awoité.
Much	Michett	Ni bi wa.
Preſently	Pichiſqua	Pitchinac.
Make, heart	Quithipeh	Wai we be.
This morning	Shebas	Shai bas.
This night	Tibiſcag	De bi cong.
Above	Eſpiming	O kitchiai.
Below	Tabaſſiſh	Ana mai.
Truly	Taboiy	Ne da wache.
Already	Saſhay	Sha ſhaye.
Yet, more	Minah	Mina wa.
Yeſterday	Tacouſhick	Pitchinago.
Far	Wathow	Waſſa.
Near	Quiſhiwoac	Paiſhou.
Never	Nima wecatch	Ka wi ka.
No	Nima	Ka wine.
Yes	Ah	In.
By-and-bye	Pa-nima	Pa-nima.
Always	Ka-ki-kee	Ka qui nick.
Make haſte	Quethepeh	Niguim.
Its long ſince	Mewaiſha	Mon wiſha.

Some Account of the Chepewyan Indians.

THEY are a numerous people, who conſider the country between the parallels of latitude 60. and 65. North, and longitude 100. to 110. Weſt, as their lands or home. They ſpeak a copious language, which is very difficult to be attained, and furniſhes dialects to the various emigrant tribes which inhabit the following immenſe track of country, whoſe boundary

boundary I ſhall deſcribe*. It begins at Churchill, and runs along the line of ſeparation between them and the Kniſteneaux, up the Miſſinipi to the Iſle à la Croſſe, paſſing on through the Buffalo Lake, River Lake, and Portage la Loche: from thence it proceeds by the Elk River to the Lake of the Hills, and goes directly Weſt to the Peace River; and up that river to its ſource and tributary waters; from whence it proceeds to the waters of the river Columbia; and follows that river to latitude 52. 24. North, and longitude 122. 54. Weſt, where the Chepewyans have the Atnah or Chin Nation for their neighbours. It then takes a line due Weſt to the ſea-coaſt, within which, the country is poſſeſſed by a people who ſpeak their language†, and are conſequently deſcended from them: there can be no doubt, therefore, of their progreſs being to the Eaſtward. A tribe of them is even known at the upper eſtabliſhments on the Saſkatchiwine; and I do not pretend to aſcertain how far they may follow the Rocky Mountains to the Eaſt.

It is not poſſible to form any juſt eſtimate of their numbers, but it is apparent, nevertheleſs, that they are by no means proportionate to the vaſt extent of their territories, which may, in ſome degree, be attributed to the ravages of the ſmall pox, which are, more or leſs, evident thoughout this part of the continent.

The notion which theſe people entertain of the creation, is of a very

* Thoſe of them who come to trade with us, do not exceed eight hundred men, and have a ſmattering of the Kniſteneaux tongue, in which they carry on their dealings with us.

† The coaſt is inhabited on the North-Weſt by the Eſkimaux, and on the Pacific Ocean by a people different from both.

ſingular

ſingular nature. They believe that, at the firſt, the globe was one vaſt and entire ocean, inhabited by no living creature, except a mighty bird, whoſe eyes were fire, whoſe glances were lightning, and the clapping of whoſe wings were thunder. On his deſcent to the ocean, and touching it, the earth inſtantly aroſe, and remained on the ſurface of the waters. This omnipotent bird then called forth all the variety of animals from the earth, except the Chepewyans, who were produced from a dog; and this circumſtance occaſions their averſion to the fleſh of that animal, as well as the people who eat it. This extraordinary tradition proceeds to relate, that the great bird, having finiſhed his work, made an arrow, which was to be preſerved with great care, and to remain untouched; but that the Chepewyans were ſo devoid of underſtanding, as to carry it away; and the ſacrilege ſo enraged the great bird, that he has never ſince appeared.

They have alſo a tradition amongſt them, that they originally came from another country, inhabited by very wicked people, and had traverſed a great lake, which was narrow, ſhallow, and full of iſlands, where they had ſuffered great miſery, it being always winter, with ice and deep ſnow. At the Copper-Mine River, where they made the firſt land, the ground was covered with copper, over which a body of earth had ſince been collected, to the depth of a man's height. They believe, alſo, that in ancient times their anceſtors lived till their feet were worn out with walking, and their throats with eating. They deſcribe a deluge, when the waters ſpread over the whole earth, except the higheſt mountains, on the tops of which they preſerved themſelves.

They

They believe, that immediately after their death, they paſs into another world, where they arrive at a large river, on which they embark in a ſtone canoe, and that a gentle current bears them on to an extenſive lake, in the centre of which is a moſt beautiful iſland; and that, in the view of this delightful abode, they receive that judgment for their conduct during life, which terminates their final ſtate and unalterable allotment. If their good actions are declared to predominate, they are landed upon the iſland, where there is to be no end to their happineſs; which, however, according to their notions, conſiſts in an eternal enjoyment of ſenſual pleaſure, and carnal gratification. But if their bad actions weigh down the balance, the ſtone canoe ſinks at once, and leaves them up to their chins in the water, to behold and regret the reward enjoyed by the good, and eternally ſtruggling, but with unavailing endeavours, to reach the bliſsful iſland, from which they are excluded for ever.

They have ſome faint notions of the tranſmigration of the ſoul; ſo that if a child be born with teeth, they inſtantly imagine, from its premature appearance, that it bears a reſemblance to ſome perſon who had lived to an advanced period, and that he has aſſumed a renovated life, with theſe extraordinary tokens of maturity.

The Chepewyans are ſober, timorous, and vagrant, with a ſelfiſh diſpoſition which has ſometimes created ſuſpicions of their integrity. Their ſtature has nothing remarkable in it; but though they are ſeldom corpulent, they are ſometimes robuſt. Their complexion is ſwarthy; their features coarſe, and their hair lank, but not always of a dingy black; nor have they univerſally the piercing eye, which generally animates the Indian countenance.

countenance. The women have a more agreeable aſpect than the men, but their gait is awkward, which proceeds from their being accuſtomed, nine months in the year, to travel on ſnow-ſhoes and drag ſledges of a weight from two to four hundred pounds. They are very ſubmiſſive to their huſbands, who have, however, their fits of jealouſy; and, for very trifling cauſes, treat them with ſuch cruelty as ſometimes to occaſion their death. They are frequently objects of traffic; and the father poſſeſſes the right of diſpoſing of his daughter*. The men in general extract their beards, though ſome of them are ſeen to prefer a buſhy, black beard, to a ſmooth chin. They cut their hair in various forms, or leave it in a long, natural flow, according as their caprice or fancy ſuggeſts. The women always wear it in great length, and ſome of them are very attentive to its arrangement. If they at any time appear deſpoiled of their treſſes, it is to be eſteemed a proof of the huſband's jealouſy, and is conſidered as a ſeverer puniſhment than manual correction. Both ſexes have blue or black bars, or from one to four ſtraight lines on their cheeks or forehead, to diſtinguiſh the tribe to which they belong. Theſe marks are either tatooed, or made by drawing a thread, dipped in the neceſſary colour, beneath the ſkin.

There are no people more attentive to the comforts of their dreſs, or leſs anxious reſpecting its exterior appearance. In the winter it is compoſed of the ſkins of deer, and their fawns, and dreſſed as fine as any chamois leather, in the hair. In the ſummer their apparel is the ſame, except that it is prepared without the hair. Their ſhoes and leggins

* They do not, however, ſell them as ſlaves, but as companions to thoſe who are ſuppoſed to live more comfortably than themſelves.

are

are ſewn together, the latter reaching upwards to the middle, and being ſupported by a belt, under which a ſmall piece of leather is drawn to cover the private parts, the ends of which fall down both before and behind. In the ſhoes they put the hair of the mooſe or rein-deer with additional pieces of leather as ſocks. The ſhirt or coat, when girted round the waiſt, reaches to the middle of the thigh, and the mittens are ſewed to the ſleeves, or are ſuſpended by ſtrings from the ſhoulders, A ruff or tippet ſurrounds the neck, and the ſkin of the head of the deer forms a curious kind of cap. A robe, made of ſeveral deer or fawn ſkins ſewed together, covers the whole. This dreſs is worn ſingle or double, but always in the winter, with the hair within and without. Thus arrayed, a Chepewyan will lay himſelf down on the ice in the middle of a lake, and repoſe in comfort; though he will ſometimes find a difficulty in the morning to diſencumber himſelf from the ſnow drifted on him during the night. If in his paſſage he ſhould be in want of proviſion, he cuts an hole in the ice, when he ſeldom fails of taking ſome trout or pike, whoſe eyes he inſtantly ſcoops out, and eats as a great delicacy; but if they ſhould not be ſufficient to ſatisfy his appetite, he will, in this neceſſity make his meal of the fiſh in its raw ſtate; but, thoſe whom I ſaw, preferred to dreſs their victuals when circumſtances admitted the neceſſary preparation. When they are in that part of their country which does not produce a ſufficient quantity of wood for fuel, they are reduced to the ſame exigency, though they generally dry their meat in the ſun.*

The

* The proviſion called Pemican, on which the Chepewyans, as well as the other ſavages of this country, chiefly ſubſiſt in their journies, is prepared in the following manner. The lean parts of the fleſh of the larger animals are cut in thin ſlices, and are placed on a wooden grate over a ſlow fire, or expoſed

The dreſs of the women differs from that of the men. Their leggins are tied below the knee; and their coat or ſhift is wide, hanging down to the ancle, and is tucked up at pleaſure by means of a belt, which is faſtened round the waiſt. Thoſe who have children have theſe garments made very full about the ſhoulders, as when they are travelling they carry their infants upon their backs, next their ſkin, in which ſituation they are perfectly comfortable and in a poſition convenient to be ſuckled. Nor do they diſcontinue to give their milk to them till they have another child. Child-birth is not the object of that tender care and ſerious attention among the ſavages as it is among civiliſed people. At this period no part of their uſual occupation is omitted, and this continual and regular exerciſe muſt contribute to the welfare of the mother, both in the progreſs of parturition and in the moment of delivery. The women have a ſingular cuſtom of cutting off a ſmall piece of the navel ſtring of the new-born children, and hang it about their necks: they are alſo curious in the covering they make for it, which they decorate with porcupine's quills and beads.

Though the women are as much in the power of the men, as any other articles of their property, they are always conſulted, and poſſeſs a

expoſed to the ſun, and ſometimes to the froſt. Theſe operations dry it, and in that ſtate it is pounded between two ſtones: it will then keep with care for ſeveral years. If, however, it is kept in large quantities, it is diſpoſed to ferment in the ſpring of the year, when it muſt be expoſed to the air, or it will ſoon decay. The inſide fat, and that of the rump, which is much thicker in theſe wild than our domeſtic animals, is melted down and mixed, in a boiling ſtate, with the pounded meat, in equal proportions: it is then put in baſkets or bags for the convenience of carrying it. Thus it becomes a nutritious food, and is eaten, without any further preparation, or the addition of ſpice, ſalt, or any vegetable or farinaceous ſubſtance. A little time reconciles it to the palate. There is another ſort made with the addition of marrow and dried berries, which is of a ſuperior quality.

very

very conſiderable influence in the traffic with Europeans, and other important concerns.

Plurality of wives is common among them, and the ceremony of marriage is of a very ſimple nature. The girls are betrothed at a very early period to thoſe whom the parents think the beſt able to ſupport them: nor is the inclination of the woman conſidered. Whenever a ſeparation takes place, which ſometimes happens, it depends entirely on the will and pleaſure of the huſband. In common with the other Indians of this country, they have a cuſtom reſpecting the periodical ſtate of a woman, which is rigorouſly obſerved: at that time ſhe muſt ſeclude herſelf from ſociety. They are not even allowed in that ſituation to keep the ſame path as the men, when travelling: and it is conſidered a great breach of decency for a woman ſo circumſtanced to touch any utenſils of manly occupation. Such a circumſtance is ſuppoſed to defile them, ſo that their ſubſequent uſe would be followed by certain miſchief or misfortune. There are particular ſkins which the women never touch, as of the bear and wolf; and thoſe animals the men are ſeldom known to kill.

They are not remarkable for their activity as hunters, which is owing to the eaſe with which they ſnare deer and ſpear fiſh: and theſe occupations are not beyond the ſtrength of their old men, women, and boys: ſo that they participate in thoſe laborious occupations, which among their neighbours, are confined to the women. They make war on the Eſquimaux, who cannot reſiſt their ſuperior numbers, and put them to death, as it is a principle with them never to make priſoners. At the ſame

time they tamely ſubmit to the Kniſteneaux, who are not ſo numerous as themſelves, when they treat them as enemies.

They do not affect that cold reſerve at meeting, either among themſelves or ſtrangers, which is common with the Kniſteneaux, but communicate mutually, and at once, all the information of which they are poſſeſſed. Nor are they rouſed like them from an apparent torpor to a ſtate of great activity. They are conſequently more uniform in this reſpect, though they are of a very perſevering diſpoſition when their intereſt is concerned.

As theſe people are not addicted to ſpirituous liquors, they have a regular and uninterrupted uſe of their underſtanding, which is always directed to the advancement of their own intereſt; and this diſpoſition, as may be readily imagined, ſometimes occaſions them to be charged with fraudulent habits. They will ſubmit with patience to the ſevereſt treatment, when they are conſcious that they deſerve it, but will never forget or forgive any wanton or unneceſſary rigour. A moderate conduct I never found to fail, nor do I heſitate to repreſent them, altogether, as the moſt peaceable tribe of Indians known in North America.

There are conjurers and high-prieſts, but I was not preſent at any of their ceremonies; though they certainly operate in an extraordinary manner on the imaginations of the people in the cure of diſorders. Their principal maladies are, rheumatic pains, the flux and conſumption. The venereal complaint is very common; but though its progreſs is

flow,

ſlow, it gradually undermines the conſtitution, and brings on premature decay. They have recourſe to ſuperſtition for their cure, and charms are their only remedies, except the bark of the willow, which being burned and reduced to powder, is ſtrewed upon green wounds and ulcers, and places contrived for promoting perſpiration. Of the uſe of ſimples and plants they have no knowledge; nor can it be expected, as their country does not produce them.

Though they have enjoyed ſo long an intercourſe with Europeans, their country is ſo barren, as not to be capable of producing the ordinary neceſſaries naturally introduced by ſuch a communication; and they continue, in a great meaſure, their own inconvenient and awkward modes of taking their game and preparing it when taken. Sometimes they drive the deer into the ſmall lakes, where they ſpear them, or force them into incloſures, where the bow and arrow are employed againſt them. Theſe animals are alſo taken in ſnares made of ſkin. In the former inſtance the game is divided among thoſe who have been engaged in the purſuit of it. In the latter it is conſidered as private property; nevertheleſs, any unſucceſsful hunter paſſing by, may take a deer ſo caught, leaving the head, ſkin, and ſaddle for the owner. Thus, though they have no regular government, as every man is lord in his own family, they are influenced, more or leſs, by certain principles which conduce to their general benefit.

In their quarrels with each other, they very rarely proceed to a greater degree of violence than is occaſioned by blows, wreſtling, and pulling of the

the hair, while their abuſive language conſiſts in applying the name of the moſt offenſive animal to the object of their diſpleaſure, and adding the term ugly, and chiay, or ſtill-born.*

Their arms and domeſtic apparatus, in addition to the articles procured from Europeans, are ſpears, bows, and arrows, fiſhing-nets, and lines made of green deer-ſkin thongs. They have alſo nets for taking the beaver as he endeavours to eſcape from his lodge when it is broken open. It is ſet in a particular manner for the purpoſe, and a man is employed to watch the moment when he enters the ſnare, or he would ſoon cut his way through it. He is then thrown upon the ice, where he remains as if he had no life in him.

The ſnow-ſhoes are of very ſuperior workmanſhip. The inner part of their frame is ſtraight, the outer one is curved, and it is pointed at both ends, with that in front turned up. They are alſo laced with great neatneſs with thongs made of deer-ſkin. The ſledges are formed of thin ſlips of board turned up alſo in front, and are highly poliſhed with crooked knives, in order to ſlide along with facility. Cloſe-grained wood is, on that account, the beſt; but theirs are made of the red or ſwamp ſpruce-fir tree.

The country, which theſe people claim as their land, has a very ſmall quantity of earth, and produces little or no wood or herbage.

* This name is alſo applicable to the fœtus of an animal, when killed, which is conſidered as one of the greateſt delicacies.

Its

Its chief vegetable ſubſtance is the moſs, on which the deer feed; and a kind of rock moſs, which, in times of ſcarcity, preſerves the lives of the natives. When boiled in water, it diſſolves into a clammy, glutinous, ſubſtance, that affords a very ſufficient nouriſhment. But, notwithſtanding the barren ſtate of their country, with proper care and economy, theſe people might live in great comfort, for the lakes abound with fiſh, and the hills are covered with deer. Though, of all the Indian people of this continent they are conſidered as the moſt provident, they ſuffer ſeverely at certain ſeaſons, and particularly in the dead of winter, when they are under the neceſſity of retiring to their ſcanty, ſtinted woods. To the Weſtward of them the muſk-ox may be found, but they have no dependence on it as an article of ſuſtenance. There are alſo large hares, a few white wolves, peculiar to their country, and ſeveral kinds of foxes, with white and grey partridges, &c. The beaver and mooſe-deer they do not find till they come within 60 degrees North latitude; and the buffalo is ſtill further South. That animal is known to frequent an higher latitude to the Weſtward of their country. Theſe people bring pieces of beautiful variegated marble, which are found on the ſurface of the earth. It is eaſily worked, bears a fine poliſh, and hardens with time; it endures heat, and is manufactured into pipes or calumets, as they are very fond of ſmoking tobacco; a luxury which the Europeans communicated to them.

Their amuſements or recreations are but few. Their muſic is ſo inharmonious, and their dancing ſo awkward, that they might be ſuppoſed to be aſhamed of both, as they very ſeldom practiſe either. They alſo ſhoot at marks, and play at the games common among them; but

but in fact they prefer ſleeping to either; and the greater part of their time is paſſed in procuring food, and reſting from the toil neceſſary to obtain it.

They are alſo of a querulous diſpoſition, and are continually making complaints; which they expreſs by a conſtant repetition of the word eduiy, "it is hard," in a whining and plaintive tone of voice.

They are ſuperſtitious in the extreme, and almoſt every action of their lives, however trivial, is more or leſs influenced by ſome whimſical notion. I never obſerved that they had any particular form of religious worſhip; but as they believe in a good and evil ſpirit, and a ſtate of future rewards and puniſhments, they cannot be devoid of religious impreſſions. At the ſame time they manifeſt a decided unwillingneſs to make any communications on the ſubject.

The Chepewyans have been accuſed of abandoning their aged and infirm people to periſh, and of not burying their dead; but theſe are melancholy neceſſities, which proceed from their wandering way of life. They are by no means univerſal, for it is within my knowledge, that a man, rendered helpleſs by the palſy, was carried about for many years, with the greateſt tenderneſs and attention, till he died a natural death. That they ſhould not bury their dead in their own country cannot be imputed to them as a cuſtom ariſing from a ſavage inſenſibility, as they inhabit ſuch high latitudes that the ground never thaws; but it is well known, that when they are in the woods, they cover their dead with trees. Beſides, they manifeſt no common reſpect to the memory

memory of their departed friends, by a long period of mourning, cutting off their hair, and never making uſe of the property of the deceaſed. Nay, they frequently deſtroy or ſacrifice their own, as a token of regret and ſorrow.

If there be any people who, from the barren ſtate of their country, might be ſuppoſed to be cannibals by nature, theſe people, from the difficulty they, at times, experience in procuring food, might be liable to that imputation. But, in all my knowledge of them, I never was acquainted with one inſtance of that diſpoſition; nor among all the natives which I met with in a route of five thouſand miles, did I ſee or hear of an example of cannibaliſm, but ſuch as aroſe from that irreſiſtible neceſſity, which has been known to impel even the moſt civiliſed people to eat each other.

Example of the Chepewyan Tongue.

Man	Dinnie.
Woman	Chequois.
Young man	Quelaquis.
Young woman	Quelaquis chequoi.
My ſon	Zi azay.
My daughter	Zi lengai.
My huſband	Zi dinnie.
My wife	Zi zayunai.
My brother	Zi raing.
My father	Zi tah.
My mother	Zi nah.
My grandfather	Zi unai.
Me or my	See.
I	Ne.
You	Nun.
They	Be.
Head	Edthie.

Hand - - -	Law.
Leg - - -	Edthen.
Foot - - -	Cuh.
Eyes - - -	Nackhay.
Teeth - - -	Goo.
Side - - -	Kac-hey.
Belly - - -	Bitt.
Tongue - - -	Edthu.
Hair - - -	Thiegah.
Back - - -	Loſſeh.
Blood - - -	Dell.
The Knee - -	Cha-gutt.
Clothes or Blanket -	Etlunay.
Coat - - -	Eeh.
Leggin - - -	Thell.
Shoes - - -	Kinchee.
Robe or Blanket - -	Thuth.
Sleeves - - -	Bah.
Mittens - - -	Geeſe.
Cap - - -	Sah.
Swan - - -	Kagouce.
Duck - - -	Keth.
Gooſe - - -	Gah.
White partridge - -	Caſs bah.
Grey partridge - -	Deyee.
Buffalo - - -	Giddy.
Mooſe deer - -	Dinyai.
Rein-deer - -	Edthun.
Beaver - - -	Zah.
Bear - - -	Zaſs.
Otter - - -	Naby-ai.
Martin - - -	Thah.
Wolvereen - -	Naguiyai.
Wolf - - -	Yeſs (Nouneay.)
Fox - - -	Naguethey.
Hare - - -	Cah.
Dog - - -	Sliengh.
Beaver-ſkin - -	Zah thith.
Otter-ſkin - -	Naby-ai thith.
Mooſe-ſkin - -	Deny-ai thith.
Fat - - -	Icah.
Greaſe - - -	Thleſs.

Meat	Bid.
Pike	Uldiah.
White-fiſh	Slouey.
Trout	Slouyzinai.
Pickerel	O'Gah.
Fiſhhook	Ge-eth.
Fiſhline	Clulez.
One	Slachy.
Two	Naghur.
Three	Tagh-y.
Four	Dengk-y.
Five	Saſoulachee.
Six	Alki tar-hy-y.
Seven	
Eight	Alki deing-hy
Nine	Cakina hanoth-na.
Ten	Ca noth na.
Twenty	Na ghur cha noth na.
Fire	Counn.
Water	Toue.
Wood	Dethkin.
Ice	Thun.
Snow	Yath.
Rain	Thinnelſee.
Lake	Touey.
River	Teſſe.
Mountain	Zeth.
Stone	Thaih.
Berries	Gui-eh.
Hot	Edowh.
Cold	Edzah.
Iſland	Nouey.
Gun	Telkithy.
Powder	Telkithy counna.
Knife	Beſs.
Axe	Thynle.
Sun Moon	Sah.
Red	Deli couſe.
Black	Dell zin.
Trade, or barter	Na-houn-ny.
Good	Leyzong.

Not

Not good - -	Leyzong houlley.
Stinking -	Geddey.
Bad, ugly - -	Slieney.
Long ſince - -	Galladinna.
Now, to-day - -	Ganneh.
To-morrow - -	Gambeh.
By-and-bye, or preſently -	Carahoulleh.
Houſe, or lodge - -	Cooen.
Canoe - - -	Shaluzee.
Door - - -	The o ball.
Leather-lodge - -	N'abalay.
Chief - - -	Buchahudry.
Mine - - -	Zidzy.
His - - -	Bedzy.
Yours' - -	Nuntzy.
Large - - -	Unſhaw.
Small, or little - -	Chautah.
I love you - -	Ba ehoinichdinh.
I hate you - -	Bucnoinichadinh hillay.
I am to be pitied -	Eſt-chouneſt-hinay.
My relation - -	Sy lod, innay.
Give me water - -	Too hanniltu.
Give me meat - -	Beds-hanniltu.
Give me fiſh - -	Sloeeh anneltu.
Give me meat to eat -	Bid Barheether,
Give me water to drink -	To Barhithen.
Is it far off - -	Netha uzany.
Is it near - -	Nilduay uzany.
It is not far - -	Nitha-hillai.
It is near - - -	Nilduay.
How many - -	Etlaneldey.
What call you him, or that	Etla houllia.
Come here - -	Yeu deſſay.
Pain, or ſuffering -	I-yah.
It's hard - -	Eduyah.
You lie - -	Untzee.
What then - -	Edlaw-gueh.

JOURNAL

OF A

VOYAGE, &c.

CHAPTER I.

Embarked at Fort Chepewyan, on the Lake of the Hills, in company with M. Le Roux. Account of the party, provisions, &c. Direction of the course. Enter one of the branches of the Lake. Arrive in the Peace River. Appearance of the land. Navigation of the river. Arrive at the mouth of the Dog River. Successive description of several carrying places. A canoe lost in one of the Falls. Encamp on Point de Roche. Course continued. Set the nets, &c. Arrive at the Slave Lake. The weather extremely cold. Banks of the river described, with its trees, soil, &c. Account of the animal productions, and the fishery of the Lake. Obliged to wait till the moving of the ice. Three families of Indians arrive from Athabasca. Beavers, geese, and swans killed. The nets endangered by ice. Re-imbark and land on a small island. Course continued along the shores, and across the bays of the Lake. Various successes of the hunters. Steer for an island where there was plenty of cranberries and small onions. Kill several rein deer. Land on an island named Isle à la Cache. Clouds of musquitoes.

1789. June. Wednes. 3.

WE embarked at nine o'clock in the morning, at Fort Chepewyan, on the South side of the Lake of the Hills, in latitude 58. 40. North, and longitude 110. 30. West from Greenwich, and compass has sixteen

131 133 132 131 130 129 128 127 126 125 124 123 122 121 120 119 118 117 116 115 114 113 112 111 110 109 108 107 106 105 104

69 68 67 66 65 64

Whale Island

THE QUARRELLERS

I. Manitou

HARE INDIANS

Mac Kenzies River

NATH ANA INDIANS

Great Bear River

Current Slack

MOUNTAIN INDIANS

Great Bear Lake

Current very Strong

INLAND INDIANS

A Map of *Mackenzie's Track* from FORT CHIPEWYAN to the *NORTH SEA*, in 1789.

INLAND INDIANS

Mac Kenzies River

BEAVER INDIANS

STRONG BOW INDIANS

Current very strong

Horn Mountains

River of the Mountains

Martin Lake

GREAT SLAVE LAKE

Ha Gichet

Rein Deer or Isle Caribou

Big I.

Slave River

Elk Island

Slave River

Fort des Noyes

Pelican Mountain

Fort à Embarras

Fort

Dog R.

Rapid

Salt Springs

Lake of the Hills

Big I

Chipewyan

Clear Lake

Athabasca Lake

Elk River

Peace River

Carieboef Mountains

Peace River

Longitude 126 West from the Greenwich

London Published 25 Oct 1801 by Alexander Mac Kenzie N°38 Norfolk Street Strand.

1789. June. degrees variation Eaſt, in a canoe made of birch bark. The crew conſiſted of four Canadians, two of whom were attended by their wives, and a German; we were accompanied alſo by an Indian, who had acquired the title of Engliſh Chief, and his two wives, in a ſmall canoe, with two young Indians; his followers in another ſmall canoe. Theſe men were engaged to ſerve us in the twofold capacity of interpreters and hunters. This Indian was one of the followers of the chief who conducted Mr. Hearne to the copper-mine river, and has ſince been a principal leader of his countrymen who were in the habit of carrying furs to Churchill Factory, Hudſon's Bay, and till of late very much attached to the intereſt of that company. Theſe circumſtances procured him the appellation of the Engliſh Chief.

We were alſo accompanied by a canoe that I had equipped for the purpoſe of trade, and given the charge of it to M. Le Roux, one of the Company's clerks. In this I was obliged to ſhip part of our proviſion; which, with the clothing neceſſary for us on the voyage, a proper aſſortment of the articles of merchandize as preſents, to enſure us a friendly reception among the Indians, and the ammunition and arms requiſite for defence, as well as a ſupply for our hunters, were more than our own canoe could carry, but by the time we ſhould part company, there was every reaſon to ſuppoſe that our expenditure would make ſufficient room for the whole.

We proceeded twenty-one miles to the Weſt, and then took a courſe of nine miles to North-North-Weſt, when we entered the river, or one of the branches of the lake, of which there are ſeveral. We then ſteered North five miles, when our courſe changed for two miles to North-North

North-East, and here at ſeven in the evening we landed and pitched our tents. One of the hunters killed a gooſe, and a couple of ducks; at the ſame time the canoe was taken out of the water, to be gummed, which neceſſary buſineſs was effectually performed. 1789. June.

We embarked at four this morning, and proceeded North-North-Eaſt half a mile, North one mile and a half, Weſt two miles, North-Weſt two miles, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile and a half, North-North-Weſt half a mile, and Weſt-North-Weſt two miles, when this branch loſes itſelf in the Peace River. It is remarkable, that the currents of theſe various branches of the lake, when the Peace River is high, as in May and Auguſt, run into the lake, which in the other months of the year returns its waters to them; whence to this place, the branch is not more than two hundred yards wide, nor leſs than an hundred and twenty. The banks are rather low, except in one place, where an huge rock riſes above them. The low land is covered with wood, ſuch as white birch, pines of different kinds, with the poplar, three kinds of willow, and the liard. Thurſday 4.

The Peace River is upwards of a mile broad at this ſpot, and its current is ſtronger than that of the channel which communicates with the lake. It here, indeed, aſſumes the name of the *Slave* River.* The courſe of this day was as follows:—North-Weſt two miles, North-North-Weſt, through iſlands, ſix miles, North four miles and a half, North by Eaſt two miles, Weſt by North ſix miles, North one

* The Slave Indians having been driven from their original country, by their enemies the Kniſteneaux, along the borders of this part of the river, it received that title, though it by no means involves the idea of ſervitude, but was given to theſe fugitives as a term of reproach, that denoted more than common ſavageneſs.

1789. June. mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles, North one mile. We now deſcended a rapid, and proceeded North-Weſt ſeven miles and a half, North-Weſt nine miles, North by Weſt ſix miles, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a half, North-Weſt by North half a mile, North-North-Weſt ſix miles, North one mile, North-Weſt by Weſt four miles, North-North-Eaſt one mile. Here we arrived at the mouth of the Dog River, where we landed, and unloaded our canoes, at half paſt ſeven in the evening, on the Eaſt ſide, and cloſe by the rapids. At this ſtation the river is near two leagues in breadth.

Friday 5. At three o'clock in the morning we embarked, but unloaded our canoes at the firſt rapid. When we had reloaded, we entered a ſmall channel, which is formed by the iſlands, and, in about half an hour, we came to the carrying place. It is three hundred and eighty paces in length, and very commodious, except at the further end of it. We found ſome difficulty in reloading at this ſpot, from the large quantity of ice which had not yet thawed. From hence to the next carrying place, called the *Portage d'Embarras*, is about ſix miles, and is occaſioned by the drift wood filling up the ſmall channel, which is one thouſand and twenty paces in length; from hence to the next is one mile and a half, while the diſtance to that which ſucceeds, does not exceed one hundred and fifty yards. It is about the ſame length as the laſt; and from hence to the carrying place called the Mountain, is about four miles further; when we entered the great river. The ſmaller one, or the channel, affords by far the beſt paſſage, as it is without hazard of any kind, though I believe a ſhorter courſe would be found on the outſide of the iſlands, and without ſo many carrying places. That called the Mountain is three hundred and thirty-five paces in length; from thence to the next, named the Peli-

can,

can, there is about a mile of dangerous rapids. The landing is very ſteep, and cloſe to the fall. The length of this carrying-place is eight hundred and twenty paces. 1789. June.

The whole of the party were now employed in taking the baggage and the canoe up the hill. One of the Indian canoes went down the fall, and was daſhed to pieces. The woman who had the management of it, by quitting it in time, preſerved her life, though ſhe loſt the little property it contained.

The courſe from the place we quitted in the morning is about North-Weſt, and comprehends a diſtance of fifteen miles. From hence to the next and laſt carrying place, is about nine miles; in which diſtance there are three rapids: courſe North-Weſt by Weſt. The carrying path is very bad, and five hundred and thirty-five paces in length. Our canoes being lightened, paſſed on the outſide of the oppoſite iſland, which rendered the carrying of the baggage very ſhort indeed, being not more than the length of a canoe. In the year 1786, five men were drowned, and two canoes and ſome packages loſt, in the rapids on the other ſide of the river, which occaſioned this place to be called the *Portage des Noyés*. They were proceeding to the Slave Lake, in the fall of that year, under the direction of Mr. Cuthbert Grant. We proceeded from hence ſix miles, and encamped on Point de Roche, at half paſt five in the afternoon. The men and Indians were very much fatigued; but the hunters had provided ſeven geeſe, a beaver, and four ducks.

We embarked at half paſt two in the morning, and ſteered North-Weſt by North twenty-one miles, North-Weſt by Weſt five miles, Weſt-North- Saturday 6.

1789. June. North-Weſt four miles, Weſt ſix miles, doubled a point North-North-Eaſt one mile, Eaſt five miles, North two miles, North-Weſt by North one mile and a half, Weſt-North-Weſt three miles, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles, doubled a point one mile and a half, Weſt by North nine miles, North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles, North-North-Weſt five miles; here we landed at ſix o'clock in the evening, unloaded, and encamped. Nets were alſo ſet in a ſmall adjacent river. We had an head wind during the greater part of the day, and the weather was become ſo cold that the Indians were obliged to make uſe of their mittens. In this day's progreſs we killed ſeven geeſe and ſix ducks.

Sunday 7. At half paſt three we renewed our voyage, and proceeded Weſt-North-Weſt one mile, round an iſland one mile, North-Weſt two miles and a half, South by Weſt three miles, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile, South-Weſt by South half a mile, North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt three miles and a half, North ſeven miles and a half, North-Weſt by North four miles, North two miles and a half, North-Weſt by North two miles. The rain, which had prevailed for ſome time, now came on with ſuch violence, that we were obliged to land and unload, to prevent the goods and baggage from getting wet; the weather, however, ſoon cleared up, ſo that we reloaded the canoe, and got under way. We now continued our courſe North ten miles, Weſt one mile and a half, and North one mile and a half, when the rain came on again, and rendered it abſolutely neceſſary for us to get on ſhore for the night, at about half paſt three. We had a ſtrong North-North-Eaſt wind throughout the day, which greatly impeded us; M. Le Roux, however, with his party, paſſed on in ſearch of a landing place more agreeable to them. The Indians killed a couple of geeſe, and as many ducks. The rain continued through the remaining part of the day.

The

The night was very boiſterous, and the rain did not ceaſe till two in the afternoon of this day; but as the wind did not abate of its violence, we were prevented from proceeding till the morrow. 1789. June, Monday 8.

We embarked at half paſt two in the morning, the weather being calm and foggy. Soon after our two young men joined us, whom we had not ſeen for two days; but during their abſence they had killed four beavers and ten geeſe. After a courſe of one mile North-Weſt by North, we obſerved an opening on the right, which we took for a fork of the river, but it proved to be a lake. We returned and ſteered South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a half, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile and a half, Weſt one mile, when we entered a very ſmall branch of the river on the Eaſt bank; at the mouth of which I was informed there had been a carrying place, owing to the quantity of drift wood, which then filled up the paſſage, but has ſince been carried away. The courſe of this river is meandering, and tends to the North, and in about ten miles falls into the Slave Lake, where we arrived at nine in the morning, when we found a great change in the weather, as it was become extremely cold. The lake was entirely covered with ice, and did not ſeem in any degree to have given way, but near the ſhore. The gnats and muſkitoes which were very troubleſome during our paſſage along the river, did not venture to accompany us to this colder region. Tueſday 9.

The banks of the river both above and below the rapids, were on both ſides covered with the various kinds of wood common to this country; particularly the Weſtern ſide; the land being lower and conſiſting of a rich black ſoil. This artificial ground is carried down by the ſtream,

1789. June. ſtream, and reſts upon drift wood, ſo as to be eight or ten feet deep. The eaſtern banks are more elevated, and the ſoil a yellow clay mixed with gravel; ſo that the trees are neither ſo large or numerous as on the oppoſite ſhore. The ground was not thawed above fourteen inches in depth; notwithſtanding the leaf was at its full growth; while along the lake there was ſcarcely any appearance of verdure.

The Indians informed me, that, at a very ſmall diſtance from either bank of the river, are very extenſive plains, frequented by large herds of buffaloes; while the mooſe and rein-deer keep in the woods that border on it. The beavers, which are in great numbers, build their habitations in the ſmall lakes and rivers, as, in the larger ſtreams, the ice carries every thing along with it, during the ſpring. The mud banks in the river are covered with wild fowl; and we this morning killed two ſwans, ten geeſe, and one beaver, without ſuffering the delay of an hour; ſo that we might have ſoon filled the canoe with them, if that had been our object.

From the ſmall river we ſteered Eaſt, along the inſide of a long ſand-bank, covered with drift wood and enlivened by a few willows, which ſtretches on as far as the houſes erected by Meſſrs. Grant and Le Roux, in 1785. We often ran aground, as for five ſucceſſive miles the depth of the water no where exceeded three feet. There we found our people, who had arrived early in the morning, and whom we had not ſeen ſince the preceding Sunday. We now unloaded the canoe, and pitched our tents, as there was every appearance that we ſhould be obliged to remain here for ſome time. I then ordered the nets to be ſet, as it was abſo-

lutely

lutely neceſſary that the ſtores provided for our future voyage ſhould remain untouched. The fiſh we now caught were carp, poiſſon inconnu, white fiſh, and trout. 1789. June.

It rained during the greateſt part of the preceding night, and the weather did not clear up till the afternoon of this day. This circumſtance had very much weakened the ice, and I ſent two of the Indians on an hunting party to a lake at the diſtance of nine miles, which, they informed me, was frequented by animals of various kinds. Our fiſhery this day was not ſo abundant as it had been on the preceding afternoon. Wedneſ. 10.

The weather was fine and clear with a ſtrong weſterly wind. The women were employed in gathering berries of different ſorts, of which there are a great plenty; and I accompanied one of my people to a ſmall adjacent iſland, where we picked up ſome dozens of ſwan, geeſe, and duck-eggs; we alſo killed a couple of ducks and a gooſe. Thurſday 11.

In the evening the Indians returned, without having ſeen any of the larger animals. A ſwan and a grey crane were the only fruits of their expedition. We caught no other fiſh but a ſmall quantity of pike, which is too common to be a favourite food with the people of the country. The ice moved a little to the eaſtward.

The weather continued the ſame as yeſterday, and the muſquitoes began to viſit us in great numbers. The ice moved again in the ſame direction, and I aſcended an hill, but could not perceive that it was broken in the middle of the lake. The hunters killed a gooſe and three ducks. Friday 12.

1789. June. Saturday 13. The weather was cloudy, and the wind changeable till about ſun-ſet, when it ſettled in the north. It drove back the ice which was now very much broken along the ſhore, and covered our nets. One of the hunters who had been at the Slave River the preceding evening, returned with three beavers and fourteen geeſe. He was accompanied by three families of Indians, who left Athabaſca the ſame day as myſelf: they did not bring me any fowl; and they pleaded in excuſe, that they had travelled with ſo much expedition, as to prevent them from procuring ſufficient proviſions for themſelves. By a meridian line, I found the variation of the compaſs to be about twenty degrees eaſt.

Sunday 14. The weather was clear and the wind remained in the ſame quarter. The ice was much broken, and driven to the ſide of the lake, ſo that we were apprehenſive for the loſs of our nets, as they could not, at preſent, be extricated. At ſun-ſet there was an appearance of a violent guſt of wind from the ſouthward, as the ſky became on a ſudden, in that quarter, of a very duſky blue colour, and the lightning was very frequent. But inſtead of wind there came on a very heavy rain, which promiſed to diminiſh the quantity of broken ice.

Monday 15. In the morning, the bay ſtill continued to be ſo full of ice, that we could not get at our nets. About noon, the wind veered to the Weſtward, and not only uncovered the nets, but cleared a paſſage to the oppoſite iſlands. When we raiſed the nets we found them very much ſhattered, and but few fiſh taken. We now ſtruck our tents, and embarked at ſun-ſet, when we made the traverſe, which was about eight miles North-Eaſt by North in about two hours. At half paſt eleven P. M. we landed on a ſmall

ſmall iſland and proceeded to gum the canoe. At this time the atmoſphere was ſufficiently clear to admit of reading or writing without the aid of artificial light. We had not ſeen a ſtar ſince the ſecond day after we left Athabaſca. About twelve o'clock, the moon made its appearance above the tops of the trees, the lower horn being in a ſtate of eclipſe, which continued for about ſix minutes, in a cloudleſs ſky. 1789. June.

I took ſoundings three times in the courſe of the traverſe, when I found ſix fathoms water, with a muddy bottom.

We were prevented from embarking this morning by a very ſtrong wind from the North, and the vaſt quantity of floating ice. Some trout were caught with the hook and line, but the net was not ſo ſucceſsful. I had an obſervation which gave 61. 28. North latitude. Tueſday 16.

The wind becoming moderate, we embarked about one, taking a North-Weſt courſe, through iſlands of ten miles, in which we took in a conſiderable quantity of water. After making ſeveral traverſes, we landed at five P. M. and having pitched our tents, the hooks, lines, and nets, were immediately ſet. During the courſe of the day there was occaſional thunder.

We proceeded, and taking up our nets as we paſſed, we found no more than ſeventeen fiſh, and were ſtopped within a mile by the ice. The Indians, however, brought us back to a point where our fiſhery was very ſucceſsful. They proceeded alſo on an hunting party, as well as to diſcover a paſſage among the iſlands; but at three in the after- Wedneſ. 17.

1789. June. noon they returned without having ſucceeded in either object. We were, however, in expectation, that, as the wind blew very ſtrong, it would force a paſſage. About ſun-ſet, the weather became overcaſt, with thunder, lightning, and rain.

Thurſday 18. The nets were taken up at four this morning with abundance of fiſh, and we ſteered North-Weſt four miles, where the ice again prevented our progreſs. A South-Eaſt wind drove it among the iſlands, in ſuch a manner as to impede our paſſage, and we could perceive at ſome diſtance a-head, that it was but little broken. We now ſet our nets in four fathom water. Two of our hunters had killed a rein-deer and its fawn. They had met with two Indian families, and in the evening, a man belonging to one of them, paid us a viſit: he informed me, that the ice had not ſtirred on the ſide of the iſland oppoſite to us. Theſe people live entirely on fiſh, and were waiting to croſs the lake as ſoon as it ſhould be clear of ice.

Friday 19. This morning our nets were unproductive, as they yielded us no more than ſix fiſh, which were of a very bad kind. In the forenoon, the Indians proceeded to the large iſland oppoſite to us, in ſearch of game. The weather was cloudy, and the wind changeable: at the ſame time, we were peſtered by muſquitoes, though, in a great meaſure, ſurrounded with ice.

Saturday 20. We took up our nets, but without any fiſh. It rained very hard during the night and this morning: nevertheleſs, M. Le Roux and his people went back to the point which we had quitted on the 18th, but

I did

I did not think it prudent to move. As I was watching for a paſſage through the ice, I promiſed to ſend for them when I could obtain it. It rained at intervals till about five o'clock; when we loaded our canoe, and ſteered for the large iſland, Weſt ſix miles. When we came to the point of it, we found a great quantity of ice; we, however, ſet our nets, and ſoon caught plenty of fiſh. In our way thither we met our hunters, but they had taken nothing. I took ſoundings at an hundred yards from the iſland, when we were in twenty-one fathom water. Here we found abundance of cranberries and ſmall ſpring onions. I now diſpatched two men for M. Le Roux, and his people. 1789. June.

A Southerly wind blew through the night, and drove the ice to the Northward. The two men whom I had ſent to M. Le Roux, returned at eight this morning; they parted with him at a ſmall diſtance from us, but the wind blew ſo hard, that he was obliged to put to ſhore. Having a glimpſe of the ſun, when it was twelve by my watch, I found the latitude 61. 34. North latitude. At two in the afternoon, M. Le Roux, and his people arrived. At five, the ice being almoſt all driven paſt to the Northward, we accordingly embarked, and ſteered Weſt fifteen miles, through much broken ice, and on the outſide of the iſlands, though it appeared to be very ſolid to the North-Eaſt. I ſounded three times in this diſtance, and found it ſeventy-five, forty-four, and ſixty fathom water. We pitched our tents on one of a cluſter of ſmall iſlands that were within three miles of the main land, which we could not reach in conſequence of the ice. Sunday 21.

We ſaw ſome rein-deer on one of the iſlands, and our hunters went in

1789. June. in purſuit of them, when they killed five large and two ſmall ones, which was eaſily accompliſhed, as the animals had no ſhelter to which they could run for protection. They had, without doubt, croſſed the ice to this ſpot, and the thaw coming on had detained them there, and made them an eaſy prey to the purſuer. This iſland was accordingly named Iſle de Carrebœuf.

I ſat up the whole of this night to obſerve the ſetting and riſing of the ſun. That orb was beneath the horizon four hours twenty-two minutes, and roſe North 20 Eaſt by compaſs. It, however, froze ſo hard, that during the ſun's diſappearance the water was covered with ice half a quarter of an inch thick.

Monday 22. We embarked at half paſt three in the morning, and rounding the outſide of the iſlands, ſteered North-Weſt thirteen miles along the ice, edging in for the main land, the wind Weſt, then Weſt two miles; but it blew ſo hard as to oblige us to land on an iſland at half paſt nine, from whence we could juſt diſtinguiſh land to the South-Eaſt, at the diſtance of about twelve leagues; though we could not determine, whether it was a continuation of the iſlands, or the ſhores of the lake.* I took an obſervation at noon, which gave me 61. 53. North, the variation of the compaſs being, at the ſame time, about two points. M. Le Roux's people having provided two bags of *pemican*† to be left in the iſland againſt their return; it was called *Iſle à la Cache.*

* Sometimes the land looms, ſo that there may be a great deception as to the diſtance: and I think this was the caſe at preſent.

† Fiſh dried in the ſun, and afterwards pounded for the convenience of carriage.

The

The wind being moderated, we proceeded again at half paſt two in the afternoon, and ſteering Weſt by North among the iſlands, made a courſe of eighteen miles. We encamped at eight o'clock on a ſmall iſland, and ſince eight in the morning had not paſſed any ice. Though the weather was far from being warm, we were tormented, and our reſt interrupted, by the hoſt of muſquitoes that accompanied us. 1789. June.

CHAP.

CHAPTER II.

Landed at ſome lodges of Red-Knife Indians: procure one of them to aſſiſt in navigating the bays. Conference with the Indians. Take leave of M. Le Roux, and continue the voyage. Different appearances of the land; its vegetable produce. Viſit an iſland where the wood had been felled. Further deſcription of the Coaſt. Plenty of rein and mooſe-deer, and white partridges. Enter a very deep bay. Interrupted by ice. Very blowing weather. Continue to coaſt the bay. Arrive at the mouth of a river. Great numbers of fiſh and wild-fowl. Deſcription of the land on either ſide. Curious appearance of woods that had been burned. Came in ſight of the Horn Mountain. Continue to kill geeſe and ſwans, &c. Violent ſtorm.

1789. June. Tueſday 23. TOWARDS morning, the Indians who had not been able to keep up with us the preceding day, now joined us, and brought two ſwans and a gooſe. At half paſt three we re-embarked, and ſteering Weſt by North a mile and an half, with a Northerly wind, we came to the foot of a traverſe acroſs a deep bay, Weſt five miles, which receives a conſiderable river at the bottom of it; the diſtance about twelve miles. The North-Weſt ſide of the bay was covered with many ſmall iſlands that were ſurrounded with ice; but the wind driving it a little off the land, we had a clear paſſage on the inſide of them. We ſteered South-Weſt nine miles under ſail,

ſail, then North-Weſt nearly, through the iſlands, forming a courſe of ſixteen miles. We landed on the main land at half paſt two in the afternoon at three lodges of Red-Knife Indians, ſo called from their copper knives. They informed us, that there were many more lodges of their friends at no great diſtance; and one of the Indians ſet off to fetch them: they alſo ſaid, that we ſhould ſee no more of them at preſent; as the Slave and Beaver Indians, as well as others of the tribe, would not be here till the time that the ſwans caſt their feathers. In the afternoon it rained a torrent. 1789. June.

M. Le Roux purchaſed of theſe Indians upwards of eight packs of good beaver and marten ſkins; and there were not above twelve of them qualified to kill beaver. The Engliſh chief got upwards of an hundred ſkins on the ſcore of debts due to him, of which he had many outſtanding in this country. Forty of them he gave on account of debts due by him ſince the winters of 1786 and 1787, at the Slave Lake; the reſt he exchanged for rum and other neceſſary articles; and I added a ſmall quantity of that liquor as an encouraging preſent to him and his young men. I had ſeveral conſultations with theſe Copper Indian people, but could obtain no information that was material to our expedition; nor were they acquainted with any part of the river, which was the object of my reſearch, but the mouth of it. In order to ſave as much time as poſſible in circumnavigating the bays, I engaged one of the Indians to conduct us; and I accordingly equipped him with various articles of clothing, &c. I alſo purchaſed a large new canoe, that he might embark with the two young Indians in my ſervice. Wedneſ. 24.

This day, at noon, I took an obſervation, which gave me 62. 24. North

1789. June. latitude; the variation of the compaſs being about twenty-ſix or twenty-ſeven degrees to the Eaſt.

In the afternoon I aſſembled the Indians, in order to inform them that I ſhould take my departure on the following day; but that people would remain on the ſpot till their countrymen, whom they had mentioned, ſhould arrive; and that, if they brought a ſufficient quantity of ſkins to make it anſwer, the Frenchmen would return for more goods, with a view to winter here, and build a fort,* which would be continued as long as they ſhould be found to deſerve it. They aſſured me, that it would be a great encouragement to them to have a ſettlement of ours in their country; and that they ſhould exert themſelves to the utmoſt to kill beaver, as they would then be certain of getting an adequate value for them. Hitherto, they ſaid, the Chepewyans always pillaged them; or, at moſt, gave little or nothing for the fruits of their labour, which had greatly diſcouraged them; and that, in conſequence of this treatment, they had no motive to purſue the beaver, but to obtain a ſufficient quantity of food and raiment.

I now wrote to Meſſrs. Macleod and Mackenzie, and addreſſed my papers to the former, at Athabaſca.

Thurſday 25. We left this place at three this morning, our canoe being deeply laden, as we had embarked ſome packages that had come in the canoes of M. Le Roux. We were ſaluted on our departure with ſome vollies of ſmall arms, which we returned, and ſteered South by Weſt ſtraight

* Fort, is the name given to any eſtabliſhment in this country.

acroſs

acroſs the bay, which is here no more than two miles and a half broad, but, from the accounts of the natives, it is fifteen leagues in depth, with a much greater breadth in ſeveral parts, and full of iſlands. I ſounded in the courſe of the traverſe and found ſix fathoms with a ſandy bottom. Here, the land has a very different appearance from that on which we have been ſince we entered the lake. Till we arrived here there was one continued view of high hills and iſlands of ſolid rock, whoſe ſurface was occaſionally enlivened with moſs, ſhrubs, and a few ſcattered trees, of a very ſtinted growth from an inſufficiency of ſoil to nouriſh them. But, notwithſtanding their barren appearance, almoſt every part of them produces berries of various kinds, ſuch as cranberries, juniper-berries, raſpberries, partridge berries, gooſeberries, and the pathagomenan, which is ſomething like a raſpberry; it grows on a ſmall ſtalk about a foot and a half high, in wet, moſſy ſpots. Theſe fruits are in great abundance, though they are not to be found in the ſame places, but in ſituations and aſpects ſuited to their peculiar natures. 1789. June.

The land which borders the lake in this part is looſe and ſandy, but is well covered with wood, compoſed of trees of a larger growth: it gradually riſes from the ſhore, and at ſome diſtance forms a ridge of high land running along the coaſt, thick with wood and a rocky ſummit riſing above it.

We ſteered South-South-Eaſt nine miles, when we were very much interrupted by drifting ice, and with ſome difficulty reached an iſland, where we landed at ſeven. I immediately proceeded to

1789. June. the further part of it, in order to diſcover if there was any probability of our being able to get from thence in the courſe of the day. It is about five miles in circumference, and I was very much ſurprized to find that the greater part of the wood with which it was formerly covered, had been cut down within twelve or fifteen years, and that the remaining ſtumps were become altogether rotten. On making inquiry concerning the cauſe of this extraordinary circumſtance, the Engliſh chief informed me, that ſeveral winters ago, many of the Slave Indians inhabited the iſlands that were ſcattered over the bay, as the ſurrounding waters abound with fiſh throughout the year, but that they had been driven away by the Kniſtenaux, who continually made war upon them. If an eſtabliſhment is to be made in this country, it muſt be in the neighbourhood of this place on account of the wood and the fiſhery.

At eleven we ventured to re-embark, as the wind had driven the greateſt part of the ice paſt the iſland, though we ſtill had to encounter ſome broken pieces of it, which threatened to damage our canoe. We ſteered South-Eaſt from point to point acroſs five bays, twenty-one miles. We took ſoundings ſeveral times, and found from ſix to ten fathom water. I obſerved that the country gradually deſcended inland, and was ſtill better covered with wood than in the higher parts. Wherever we approached the land, we perceived deſerted lodges. The hunters killed two ſwans and a beaver; and at length we landed at eight o'clock in the evening, when we unloaded and gummed our canoe.

Friday 26. We continued our route at five o'clock, ſteering South-Eaſt for ten miles acroſs two deep bays: then South-South-Eaſt, with iſlands in ſight

to

to the Eaſtward. We then traverſed another bay in a courſe of three miles, then South one mile to a point which we named the Detour, and South-South-Weſt four miles and an half, when there was an heavy ſwell off the lake. Here I took an obſervation, when we were in 61. 40. North latitude. We then proceeded South-Weſt four miles, and Weſt-South-Weſt among iſlands: on one of which our Indians killed two rein-deer, but we loſt three hours aſt wind in going for them: this courſe was nine miles. About ſeven in the evening we were obliged to land for the night, as the wind became too ſtrong from the South-Eaſt. We thought we could obſerve land in this direction when the wind was coming on from ſome diſtance. On the other ſide of the Detour, the land is low, and the ſhore is flat and dangerous, there being no ſafe place to land in bad weather, except in the iſlands which we had juſt paſſed. There ſeemed to be plenty of mooſe and rein-deer in this country, as we ſaw their tracks wherever we landed. There were alſo great numbers of white partridges, which are at this ſeaſon of a grey colour, like that of the moor-fowl. There was ſome floating ice in the lake, and the Indians killed a couple of ſwans. 1789. June.

At three this morning we were in the canoe, after having paſſed a very reſtleſs night from the perſecution of the muſquitoes. The weather was fine and calm, and our courſe Weſt-South-Weſt nine miles, when we came to the foot of a traverſe, the oppoſite point in ſight bearing South-Weſt, diſtance twelve miles. The bay is at leaſt eight miles deep, and this courſe two miles more, in all ten miles. It now became very foggy, and as the bays were ſo numerous, we landed for two hours, when the weather cleared up; and we took the advantage of ſteering South thirteen miles, Saturday 27.

and

1789. June. and paſſed ſeveral ſmall bays, when we came to the point of a very deep one, whoſe extremity was not diſcernible; the land bearing South from us, at the diſtance of about ten miles. Our guide not having been here for eight winters, was at a loſs what courſe to take, though as well as he could recollect, this bay appeared to be the entrance of the river. Accordingly, we ſteered down it, about Weſt-South-Weſt, till we were involved in a field of broken ice. We ſtill could not diſcover the bottom of the bay, and a fog coming on, made it very difficult for us to get to an iſland to the South-Weſt, and it was nearly dark when we effected a landing.

Sunday 28. At a quarter paſt three we were again on the water, and as we could perceive no current ſetting into this bay, we made the beſt of our way to the point that bore South from us yeſterday afternoon. We continued our courſe South three miles more, South by Weſt ſeven miles, Weſt fifteen miles, when by obſervation we were in 61 degrees North latitude; we then proceeded Weſt-North-Weſt two miles. Here we came to the foot of a traverſe, the oppoſite land bearing South-Weſt, diſtance fourteen miles, when we ſteered into a deep bay, about a Weſterly courſe; and though we had no land a head in ſight, we indulged the hope of finding a paſſage, which, according to the Indian, would conduct us to the entrance of the river.

Having a ſtrong wind aft, we loſt ſight of the Indians, nor could we put on ſhore to wait for them, without riſking material damage to the canoe, till we ran to the bottom of the bay, and were forced among the ruſhes; when we diſcovered that there was no paſſage there. In about two or three hours they joined us, but would not approach our fire,

fire, as there was no good ground for an encampment: they emptied their canoe of the water which it had taken in, and continued their route, but did not encamp till ſun-ſet. The Engliſh chief was very much irritated againſt the Red-Knife Indian, and even threatened to murder him, for having undertaken to guide us in a courſe of which he was ignorant; nor had we any reaſon to be ſatisfied with him, though he ſtill continued to encourage us, by declaring that he recollected having paſſed from the river, through the woods, to the place where he had landed. In the blowing weather to-day, we were obliged to make uſe of our large kettle, to keep our canoe from filling, although we did not carry above three feet ſail. The Indians very narrowly eſcaped. 1789. June.

We embarked at four this evening, and ſteered along the South-Weſt ſide of the bay. At half paſt five we reached the extremity of the point, which we doubled, and found it to be the branch or paſſage that was the object of our ſearch, and occaſioned by a very long iſland, which ſeparates it from the main channel of the river. It is about half a mile acroſs, and not more than ſix feet in depth; the water appeared to abound in fiſh, and was covered with fowl, ſuch as ſwans, geeſe, and ſeveral kinds of ducks, particularly black ducks, that were very numerous, but we could not get within gun ſhot of them. Monday 29.

The current, though not very ſtrong, ſet us South-Weſt by Weſt, and we followed this courſe fourteen miles, till we paſſed the point of the long iſland, where the Slave Lake diſcharges itſelf, and is ten miles in breadth. There is not more than from five to two fathom water, ſo that when the lake is low, it may be preſumed the greateſt part of this

1789. June. this channel muſt be dry. The river now turns to the weſtward, becoming gradually narrower for twenty-four miles, till it is not more than half a mile wide; the current, however, is then much ſtronger, and the ſoundings were three fathom and a half. The land on the North ſhore from the lake is low, and covered with trees; that to the South is much higher, and has alſo an abundance of wood. The current is very ſtrong, and the banks are of an equal height on both ſides, conſiſting of a yellow clay, mixed with ſmall ſtones; they are covered with large quantities of burned wood, lying on the ground, and young poplar trees, that have ſprung up ſince the fire that deſtroyed the larger wood. It is a very curious and extraordinary circumſtance, that land covered with ſpruce pine, and white birch, when laid waſte by fire, ſhould ſubſequently produce nothing but poplars, where none of that ſpecies of tree were previouſly to be found.

A ſtiff breeze from the Eaſtward drove us on at a great rate under ſail, in the ſame courſe, though obliged to wind among iſlands. We kept the North channel for about ten miles, whoſe current is much ſtronger than that of the South; ſo that the latter is conſequently the better road to come up. Here the river widened, and the wind dying away, we had recourſe to our paddles. We kept our courſe to the North-Weſt, on the North ſide of the river, which is here much wider, and aſſumes the form of a ſmall lake; we could not, however, diſcover an opening in any direction, ſo that we were at a loſs what courſe to take, as our Red-Knife Indian had never explored beyond our preſent ſituation. He at the ſame time informed us that a river falls in from the North, which takes its riſe in the Horn Mountain, now in ſight, which is the country of the Beaver Indians; and

and that he and his relations frequently meet on that river. He alſo added, that there are very extenſive plains on both ſides of it, which abound in buffaloes and mooſe deer. 1789. June.

By keeping this courſe, we got into ſhallows, ſo that we were forced to ſteer to the left, till we recovered deep water, which we followed, till the channel of the river opened on us to the ſouthward. we now made for the ſhore, and encamped ſoon after ſunſet. Our courſe ought to have been Weſt fifteen miles, ſince we took to the paddle, the Horn Mountains bearing from us North-Weſt, and running North-North-Eaſt and South-South-Weſt. Our ſoundings, which were frequent during the courſe of the day, were from three to ſix fathoms water. The hunters killed two geeſe and a ſwan: it appeared, indeed, that great numbers of fowls breed in the iſlands which we had paſſed.

At four this morning we got under way, the weather being fine and calm. Our courſe was South-Weſt by South thirty-ſix miles. On the South ſide of the river is a ridge of low mountains, running Eaſt and Weſt by compaſs. The Indians picked up a white gooſe, which appeared to have been lately ſhot with an arrow, and was quite freſh. We proceeded South-Weſt by South ſix miles, and then came to a bay on our left, which is full of ſmall iſlands, and appeared to be the entrance of a river from the South. Here the ridge of mountains terminates. This courſe was fifteen miles. Tueſday 30.

At ſix in the afternoon there was an appearance of bad weather; we landed, therefore, for the night: but before we could pitch our tents, a

1789. June. violent tempeſt came on, with thunder, lightning, and rain, which, however, ſoon ceaſed, but not before we had ſuffered the inconvenience of being drenched by it. The Indians were very much fatigued, having been employed in running after wild fowl, which had lately caſt their feathers; they, however, caught five ſwans, and the ſame number of geeſe. I ſounded ſeveral times in the courſe of the day, and found from four to ſix fathoms water

CHAP.

CHAPTER III.

Continue our courſe. The river narrows. Loſt the lead. Paſſed a ſmall river. Violent rain. Land on a ſmall iſland. Expect to arrive at the rapids. Conceal two bags of pemican in an iſland. A view of mountains. Paſs ſeveral encampments of the natives. Arrive among the iſlands. Aſcend an high hill. Violence of the current. Ice ſeen along the banks of the river. Land at a village of the natives. Their conduct and appearance, Their fabulous ſtories. The Engliſh Chief and Indians diſcontented. Obtain a new guide. Singular cuſtoms of the natives. An account of their dances. Deſcription of their perſons, dreſs, ornaments, buildings, army for war and hunting, canoes, &c. Paſſed on among iſlands. Encamped beneath an hill, and prevented from aſcending by the muſquitoes. Landed at an encampment. Conduct of the inhabitants. They abound in fabulous accounts of dangers. Land at other encampments. Procure plenty of hares and partridges. Our guide anxious to return. Land and alarm the natives, called the Hare Indians, &c. Exchange our guide. State of the weather.

1789. July. Wedneſ. 1.

AT half paſt four in the morning we continued our voyage, and in a ſhort time found the river narrowed to about half a mile. Our courſe was Weſterly among iſlands, with a ſtrong current. Though the land is high on both ſides, the banks are not perpendicular. This

1789. July. courſe was twenty-one miles; and on ſounding we found nine fathoms water. We then proceeded Weſt-North-Weſt nine miles, and paſſed a river upon the South-Eaſt ſide; we ſounded, and found twelve fathoms; and then we went North-Weſt by Weſt three miles. Here I loſt my lead, which had faſtened at the bottom, with part of the line, the current running ſo ſtrong that we could not clear it with eight paddles, and the ſtrength of the line, which was equal to four paddles. Continued North by Weſt five miles, and ſaw an high mountain, bearing South from us; we then proceeded North-Weſt by North four miles. We now paſſed a ſmall river on the North ſide, then doubled a point to Weſt-South-Weſt. At one o'clock there came on lightning and thunder, with wind and rain, which ceaſed in about half an hour, and left us almoſt deluged with wet, as we did not land. There were great quantities of ice along the banks of the river.

We landed upon a ſmall iſland, where there were the poles of four lodges ſtanding, which we concluded to have belonged to the Kniſtineaux, on their war excurſions, ſix or ſeven years ago. This courſe was fifteen miles Weſt, to where the river of the Mountain falls in from the Southward. It appears to be a very large river, whoſe mouth is half a mile broad. About ſix miles further a ſmall river flows in the ſame direction; and our whole courſe was twenty-four miles. We landed oppoſite to an iſland, the mountains to the Southward being in ſight. As our canoe was deeply laden, and being alſo in daily expectation of coming to the rapids or fall, which we had been taught to conſider with apprehenſion, we concealed two bags of pemican in the oppoſite iſland, in the hope that they would be of future ſervice to us.

The

The Indians were of a different opinion, as they entertained no expectation of returning that ſeaſon, when the hidden proviſions would be ſpoiled. Near us were two Indian encampments of the laſt year. By the manner in which theſe people cut their wood, it appears that they have no iron tools. The current was very ſtrong during the whole of this day's voyage; and in the article of proviſions two ſwans were all that the hunters were able to procure. 1789. July.

The morning was very foggy; but at half paſt five we embarked; it cleared up, however, at ſeven, when we diſcovered that the water, from being very limpid and clear, was become dark and muddy. This alteration muſt have proceeded from the influx of ſome river to the Southward, but where theſe ſtreams firſt blended their waters the fog had prevented us from obſerving. At nine we perceived a very high mountain a-head, which appeared, on our nearer approach, to be rather a cluſter of mountains, ſtretching as far as our view could reach to the Southward, and whoſe tops were loſt in the clouds. At noon there was lightning, thunder, and rain, and at one, we came abreaſt of the mountains: their ſummits appeared to be barren and rocky, but their declivities were covered with wood: they appeared alſo to be ſprinkled with white ſtones, which gliſtened in the ſun, and were called by the Indians *manetoe aſeniah*, or ſpirit ſtones. I ſuſpected that they were Talc, though they poſſeſſed a more brilliant whiteneſs: on our return, however, theſe appearances were diſſolved, as they were nothing more than patches of ſnow. Thurſday 2.

Our courſe had been Weſt-South-Weſt thirty miles, and we proceeded

1789. July. ceeded with great caution, as we continually expected to approach ſome great rapid or fall. This was ſuch a prevalent idea, that all of us were occaſionally perſuaded that we heard thoſe ſounds which betokened a fall of water. Our courſe changed to Weſt by North, along the mountains, twelve miles, North by Weſt twenty-one miles, and at eight o'clock in the evening we went on ſhore for the night on the North ſide of the river. We ſaw ſeveral encampments of the natives, ſome of which had been erected in the preſent ſpring, and others at ſome former period. The hunters killed only one ſwan and a beaver: the latter was the firſt of its kind which we had ſeen in this river. The Indians complained of the perſeverance with which we puſhed forward, and that they were not accuſtomed to ſuch ſevere fatigue as it occaſioned.

Friday 3. The rain was continual through the night, and did not ſubſide till ſeven this morning, when we embarked and ſteered North-North-Weſt for twelve miles, the river being encloſed by high mountains on either ſide. We had a ſtrong head-wind, and the rain was ſo violent as to compel us to land at ten o'clock. According to my reckoning, ſince my laſt obſervation, we had run two hundred and ſeventeen miles Weſt, and forty-four miles North. At a quarter paſt two the rain ſubſided, and we got again under way, our former courſe continuing for five miles. Here a river fell in from the North, and in a ſhort time the current became ſtrong and rapid, running with great rapidity among rocky iſlands, which were the firſt that we had ſeen in this river, and indicated our near approach to rapids and falls. Our preſent courſe was North-Weſt by North ten miles, North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt twelve miles, and North-Weſt three miles, when we encamped at eight

in

in the evening, at the foot of an high hill, on the north ſhore, which in ſome parts roſe perpendicular from the river. I immediately aſcended it, accompanied by two men and ſome Indians, and in about an hour and an half, with very hard walking, we gained the ſummit, when I was very much ſurprized to find it crowned by an encampment. The Indians informed me, that it is the cuſtom of the people who have no arms to chooſe theſe elevated ſpots for the places of their reſidence, as they can render them inacceſſible to their enemies, particularly the Kniſteneaux, of whom they are in continual dread. The proſpect from this height was not ſo extenſive as we expected, as it was terminated by a circular range of hills, of the ſame elevation as that on which we ſtood. The intervals between the hills were covered with ſmall lakes, which were inhabited by great numbers of ſwans. We ſaw no trees but the pine and the birch, which were ſmall in ſize and few in number. 1789. July.

We were obliged to ſhorten our ſtay here, from the ſwarms of muſquitoes which attacked us on all ſides, and were, indeed, the only inhabitants of the place. We ſaw ſeveral encampments of the natives in the courſe of the day, but none of them were of this year's eſtabliſhment. Since four in the afternoon the current had been ſo ſtrong that it was, at length, in an actual ebullition, and produced an hiſſing noiſe like a kettle of water in a moderate ſtate of boiling. The weather was now become extremely cold, which was the more ſenſibly felt, as it had been very ſultry ſome time before and ſince we had been in the river.

At five in the morning the wind and weather having undergone no alteration from yeſterday, we proceeded North-Weſt by Weſt twenty-two miles, Saturday.

July. 1789. miles, North-Weſt ſix miles, North-Weſt by North four miles, and Weſt North-Weſt five miles: we then paſſed the mouth of a ſmall river from the North, and after doubling a point, South-Weſt one mile, we paſſed the influx of another river from the South. We then continued our courſe North-North-Weſt, with a mountain a-head, fifteen miles, when the opening of two rivers appeared oppoſite to each other: we then proceeded Weſt four miles, and North-Weſt thirteen miles. At eight in the evening, we encamped on an iſland. The current was as ſtrong through the whole of this day as it had been the preceding afternoon; nevertheleſs, a quantity of ice appeared along the banks of the river. The hunters killed a beaver and a gooſe, the former of which ſunk before they could get to him: beavers, otters, bears, &c. if ſhot dead at once, remain like a bladder, but if there remains enough of life for them to ſtruggle, they ſoon fill with water and go to the bottom.

Sunday 5. The ſun ſet laſt night at fifty-three minutes paſt nine, by my watch, and roſe at ſeven minutes before two this morning: we embarked ſoon after, ſteering North-North-Weſt, through iſlands for five miles, and Weſt four miles. The river then encreaſed in breadth, and the current began to ſlacken in a ſmall degree; after the continuation of our courſe, we perceived a ridge of high mountains before us, covered with ſnow, Weſt-South-Weſt ten miles, and at three-quarters paſt ſeven o'clock, we ſaw ſeveral ſmokes on the North ſhore, which we made every exertion to approach. As we drew nearer, we diſcovered the natives running about in great apparent confuſion; ſome were making to the woods, and others hurrying to their canoes. Our hunters landed before us, and addreſſed the few that had not eſcaped, in the Chipewyan language, which, ſo great was their

their confuſion and terror, they did not appear to underſtand. But when they perceived that it was impoſſible to avoid us, as we were all landed, they made us ſigns to keep at a diſtance, with which we complied, and not only unloaded our canoe, but pitched our tents, before we made any attempt to approach them. During this interval, the Engliſh chief and his young men were employed in reconciling them to our arrival: and when they had recovered from their alarm, of hoſtile intention, it appeared that ſome of them perfectly comprehended the language of our Indians; ſo that they were at length perſuaded, though not without evident ſigns of reluctance and apprehenſion, to come to us. Their reception, however, ſoon diſſipated their fears, and they haſtened to call their fugitive companions from their hiding places. 1789. July.

There were five families, conſiſting of twenty-five or thirty perſons, and of two different tribes, the Slave and Dog-rib Indians. We made them ſmoke, though it was evident they did not know the uſe of tobacco; we likewiſe ſupplied them with grog; but I am diſpoſed to think, that they accepted our civilities rather from fear than inclination. We acquired a more effectual influence over them by the diſtribution of knives, beads, awls, rings, gartering, fire-ſteels, flints, and hatchets; ſo that they became more familiar even than we expected, for we could not keep them out of our tents: though I did not obſerve that they attempted to purloin any thing.

The information which they gave reſpecting the river, had ſo much of the fabulous, that I ſhall not detail it: it will be ſufficient juſt

1789. July. to mention their attempts to perſuade us, that it would require ſeveral winters to get to the ſea, and that old age would come upon us before the period of our return: we were alſo to encounter monſters of ſuch horrid ſhapes and deſtructive powers as could only exiſt in their wild imaginations. They added, beſides, that there were two impaſſable falls in the river, the firſt of which was about thirty days march from us.

Though I placed no faith in theſe ſtrange relations, they had a very different effect upon our Indians, who were already tired of the voyage. It was their opinion and anxious wiſh, that we ſhould not heſitate to return. They ſaid that, according to the information which they had received, there were very few animals in the country beyond us, and that as we proceeded, the ſcarcity would increaſe, and we ſhould abſolutely periſh from hunger, if no other accident befel us. It was with no ſmall trouble that they were convinced of the folly of theſe reaſonings; and, by my deſire, they induced one of thoſe Indians to accompany us, in conſideration of a ſmall kettle, an axe, a knife, and ſome other articles.

Though it was now three o'clock in the afternoon, the canoe was ordered to be reloaded, and as we were ready to embark our new recruit was deſired to prepare himſelf for his departure, which he would have declined; but as none of his friends would take his place, we may be ſaid, after the delay of an hour, to have compelled him to embark. Previous to his departure a ceremony took place, of which I could not learn the meaning: he cut off a lock of his hair, and having divided it into three parts, he faſtened one of them to the hair on the upper

upper part of his wife's head, blowing on it three times with the utmoſt violence in his power, and uttering certain words. The other two he faſtened with the ſame formalities, on the heads of his two children. 1789. July.

During our ſhort ſtay with theſe people, they amuſed us with dancing, which they accompanied with their voices; but neither their ſong or their dance poſſeſſed much variety. The men and women formed a promiſcuous ring. The former have a bone dagger or piece of ſtick between the fingers of the right hand, which they keep extended above the head, in continual motion: the left they ſeldom raiſe ſo high, but work it backwards and forwards in an horizontal direction; while they leap about and throw themſelves into various antic poſtures, to the meaſure of their muſic, always bringing their heels cloſe to each other at every pauſe. The men occaſionally howl in imitation of ſome animal, and he who continues this violent exerciſe for the longeſt period, appears to be conſidered as the beſt performer. The women ſuffer their arms to hang as without the power of motion. They are a meagre, ugly, ill-made people, particularly about the legs, which are very clumſy and covered with ſcabs. The latter circumſtance proceeds probably from their habitually roaſting them before the fire. Many of them appeared to be in a very unhealthy ſtate, which is owing, as I imagine, to their natural filthineſs. They are of a moderate ſtature, and as far as could be diſcovered, through the coat of dirt and greaſe that covers them, are of a fairer complexion than the generality of Indians who are the natives of warmer climates.

Some of them have their hair of a great length; while others ſuffer a long treſs to fall behind, and the reſt is cut ſo ſhort as to expoſe

1789. July.

their ears, but no other attention whatever is paid to it. The beards of ſome of the old men were long, and the reſt had them pulled out by the roots, ſo that not an hair could be ſeen on their chins. The men have two double lines, either black or blue, tattooed upon each cheek, from the ear to the noſe. The griſtle of the latter is perforated ſo as to admit a gooſe-quill or a ſmall piece of wood to be paſſed through the orifice. Their clothing is made of the dreſſed ſkins of the rein or mooſe-deer, though more commonly of the former. Theſe they prepare in the hair for winter, and make ſhirts of both, which reach to the middle of their thighs. Some of them are decorated with an embroidery of very neat workmanſhip with porcupine quills and the hair of the mooſe, coloured red, black, yellow, and white. Their upper garments are ſufficiently large to cover the whole body, with a fringe round the bottom, and are uſed both ſleeping and awake. Their leggins come half way up the thigh, and are ſewed to their ſhoes: they are embroidered round the ancle, and upon every ſeam. The dreſs of the women is the ſame as that of the men. The former have no covering on their private parts, except a taſſel of leather which dangles from a ſmall cord, as it appears, to keep off the flies, which would otherwiſe be very troubleſome. Whether circumciſion be practiſed among them, I cannot pretend to ſay, but the appearance of it was general among thoſe whom I ſaw.

Their ornaments conſiſt of gorgets, bracelets for the arms and wriſts, made of wood, horn, or bone, belts, garters, and a kind of band to go round the head, compoſed of ſtrips of leather of one inch and an half broad, embroidered with porcupine quills, and ſtuck round with the claws of bears or wild fowl inverted, to which are ſuſpended a few ſhort thongs of the ſkin of an animal that reſembles the ermine, in the form

of

of a taffel. Their cinctures and garters are formed of porcupine quills woven with ſinews, in a ſtyle of peculiar ſkill and neatneſs: they have others of different materials, and more ordinary workmanſhip; and to both they attach a long fringe of ſtrings of leather, worked round with hair of various colours. Their mittens are alſo ſuſpended from the neck in a poſition convenient for the reception of the hands. 1789. July.

Their lodges are of a very ſimple ſtructure: a few poles ſupported by a fork, and forming a ſemicircle at the bottom, with ſome branches or a piece of bark as a covering, conſtitutes the whole of their native architecture. They build two of theſe huts facing each other, and make the fire between them. The furniture harmoniſes with the buildings: they have a few diſhes of wood, bark, or horn; the veſſels in which they cook their victuals, are in the ſhape of a gourd, narrow at the top and wide at the bottom, and of watape*, fabricated in ſuch a manner as to hold water, which is made to boil by putting a ſucceſſion of red-hot ſtones into it. Theſe veſſels contain from two to ſix gallons. They have a number of ſmall leather bags to hold their embroidered work, lines, and nets. They always keep a large quantity of the fibres of willow bark, which they work into thread on their thighs. Their nets are from three to forty fathoms in length, and from thirteen to thirty-ſix meſhes in depth. The ſhort deep ones they ſet in the eddy current of rivers, and the long ones in the lakes. They likewiſe make lines of the ſinews of the rein-deer, and manufacture their hooks from wood, horn, or bone. Their arms and weapons for hunting, are bows and arrows, ſpears, daggers, and poga-

* Watape is the name given to the divided roots of the ſpruce-fir, which the natives weave into a degree of compactneſs that renders it capable of containing a fluid. The different parts of the bark canoes are alſo ſewed together with this kind of filament.

magans,

1789. July. magans, or clubs. The bows are about five or ſix feet in length, and the ſtrings are of ſinews or raw ſkins. The arrows are two feet and an half long, including the barb, which is variouſly formed of bone, horn, flint, iron, or copper, and are winged with three feathers. The pole of the ſpears is about ſix feet in length, and pointed with a barbed bone of ten inches. With this weapon they ſtrike the rein-deer in the water. The daggers are flat and ſharp-pointed, about twelve inches long, and made of horn or bone. The pogamagon is made of the horn of the rein-deer, the branches being all cut off, except that which forms the extremity. This inſtrument is about two feet in length, and is employed to diſpatch their enemies in battle, and ſuch animals as they catch in ſnares placed for that purpoſe. Theſe are about three fathom long, and are made of the green ſkin of the rein or mooſe-deer, but in ſuch ſmall ſtrips, that it requires from ten to thirty ſtrands to make this cord, which is not thicker than a cod-line; and ſtrong enough to reſiſt any animal that can be entangled in it. Snares or nooſes are alſo made of ſinews to take leſſer animals, ſuch as hares and white partridges, which are very numerous. Their axes are manufactured of a piece of brown or grey ſtone from ſix to eight inches long, and two inches thick. The inſide is flat, and the outſide round and tapering to an edge, an inch wide. They are faſtened by the middle with the flat ſide inwards to an handle two feet long, with a cord of green ſkin. This is the tool with which they ſplit their wood, and we believe, the only one of its kind among them. They kindle fire, by ſtriking together a piece of white or yellow pyrites and a flint ſtone, over a piece of touchwood. They are univerſally provided with a ſmall bag containing theſe materials, ſo that they are in a continual ſtate of preparation to produce fire. From the adjoining

joining tribes, the Red-Knives and Chepewyans, they procure, in barter for marten ſkins and a few beaver, ſmall pieces of iron, of which they manufacture knives, by fixing them at the end of a ſhort ſtick, and with them and the beaver's teeth, they finiſh all their work. They keep them in a ſheath hanging to their neck, which alſo contains their awls both of iron and horn. 1789. July.

Their canoes are ſmall, pointed at both ends, flat-bottomed and covered in the fore part. They are made of the bark of the birch-tree and fir-wood, but of ſo ſlight a conſtruction, that the man whom one of theſe light veſſels bears on the water, can, in return, carry it over land without any difficulty. It is very ſeldom that more than one perſon embarks in them, nor are they capable of receiving more than two. The paddles are ſix feet long, one half of which is occupied by a blade, of about eight inches wide. Theſe people informed us, that we had paſſed large bodies of Indians who inhabit the mountains on the Eaſt ſide of the river.

At four o'clock in the afternoon we embarked, and our Indian acquaintance promiſed to remain on the bank of the river till the fall, in caſe we ſhould return. Our courſe was Weſt-South-Weſt, and we ſoon paſſed the Great Bear Lake River, which is of a conſiderable depth, and an hundred yards wide: its water is clear, and has the greeniſh hue of the ſea. We had not proceeded more than ſix miles when we were obliged to land for the night, in conſequence of an heavy guſt of wind, accompanied with rain. We encamped beneath a rocky hill, on the top of which, according to the information of our guide, it blew a ſtorm every day

1789. July. day throughout the year. He found himſelf very uncomfortable in his new ſituation, and pretended that he was very ill, in order that he might be permitted to return to his relations. To prevent his eſcape, it became neceſſary to keep a ſtrict watch over him during the night.

Monday 6. At three o'clock, in a very raw and cloudy morning, we embarked, and ſteered Weſt-South-Weſt four miles, Weſt four miles, Weſt-North-Weſt five miles, Weſt eight miles, Weſt by South ſixteen miles, Weſt twenty-ſeven miles, South-Weſt nine miles, then Weſt ſix miles, and encamped at half paſt ſeven. We paſſed through numerous iſlands, and had the ridge of ſnowy mountains always in ſight. Our conductor informed us that great numbers of bears, and ſmall white buffaloes, frequent thoſe mountains, which are alſo inhabited by Indians. We encamped in a ſimilar ſituation to that of the preceding evening, beneath another high rocky hill, which I attempted to aſcend, in company with one of the hunters, but before we had got half way to the ſummit, we were almoſt ſuffocated by clouds of muſquitoes, and were obliged to return. I obſerved, however, that the mountains terminated here, and that a river flowed from the Weſtward: I alſo diſcovered a ſtrong ripling current, or rapid, which ran cloſe under a ſteep precipice of the hill.

Tueſday 7. We embarked at four in the morning, and croſſed to the oppoſite ſide of the river, in conſequence of the rapid; but we might have ſpared ourſelves this trouble, as there would have been no danger in continuing our courſe, without any circuitous deviation whatever. This circumſtance convinced us of the erroneous account given by the natives of the great and approaching dangers of our navigation,

as

as this rapid was ſtated to be one of them. Our courſe was now North-North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt four miles, North-Weſt ten miles, North two miles, when we came to a river that flowed from the Eaſtward. Here we landed at an encampment of four fires, all the inhabitants of which ran off with the utmoſt ſpeed, except an old man and an old woman. Our guide called aloud to the fugitives, and entreated them to ſtay, but without effect: the old man, however, did not heſitate to approach us, and repreſented himſelf as too far advanced in life, and too indifferent about the ſhort time he had to remain in the world, to be very anxious about eſcaping from any danger that threatened him; at the ſame time he pulled his grey hairs from his head by handfulls to diſtribute among us, and implored our favour for himſelf and his relations. Our guide, however, at length removed his fears, and perſuaded him to recall the fugitives, who conſiſted of eighteen people; whom I reconciled to me on their return with preſents of beads, knives, awls, &c. with which they appeared to be greatly delighted. They differed in no reſpect from thoſe whom we had already ſeen; nor were they deficient in hoſpitable attentions; they provided us with fiſh, which was very well boiled, and cheerfully accepted by us. Our guide ſtill ſickened after his home, and was ſo anxious to return thither, that we were under the neceſſity of forcing him to embark. 1789. June.

Theſe people informed us that we were cloſe to another great rapid, and that there were ſeveral lodges of their relations in its vicinity. Four canoes, with a man in each, followed us, to point out the particular channels we ſhould follow for the ſecure paſſage of the rapid. They alſo abounded in diſcouraging ſtories concerning the dangers and difficulties which we were to encounter.

1789. July. From hence our courſe was North-North-Eaſt two miles, when the river appeared to be encloſed, as it were, with lofty, perpendicular, white rocks, which did not afford us a very agreeable proſpect. We now went on ſhore in order to examine the rapid, but did not perceive any ſigns of it, though the Indians ſtill continued to magnify its dangers: however, as they ventured down it, in their ſmall canoes, our apprehenſions were conſequently removed, and we followed them at ſome diſtance, but did not find any increaſe in the rapidity of the current; at length the Indians informed us that we ſhould find no other rapid but that which was now bearing us along. The river at this place is not above three hundred yards in breadth, but on ſounding I found fifty fathoms water. At the two rivulets that offer their tributary ſtreams from either ſide, we found ſix families, conſiſting of about thirty-five perſons, who gave us an ample quantity of excellent fiſh, which were, however, confined to white fiſh, the poiſſon inconnu, and another of a round form and greeniſh colour, which was about fourteen inches in length. We gratified them with a few preſents, and continued our voyage. The men, however, followed us in fifteen canoes.

This narrow channel is three miles long, and its courſe North-North-Eaſt. We then ſteered North three miles, and landed at an encampment of three or more families, containing twenty-two perſons, which was ſituated on the bank of a river, of a conſiderable appearance, which came from the Eaſtward. We obtained hares and partridges from theſe people, and preſented in return ſuch articles as greatly delighted them. They very much regretted that they had no goods or merchandize to exchange with us, as they had left them at a lake, from whence the river

iſſued,

iſſued, and in whoſe vicinity ſome of their people were employed in ſetting ſnares for rein deer. They engaged to go for their articles of trade, and would wait our return, which we aſſured them would be within two months. There was a youth among them in the capacity of a ſlave, whom our Indians underſtood much better than any of the natives of this country, whom they had yet ſeen: he was invited to accompany us, but took the firſt opportunity to conceal himſelf, and we ſaw him no more. 1789. July.

We now ſteered Weſt five miles, when we again landed, and found two families, containing ſeven people, but had reaſon to believe that there were others hidden in the woods. We received from them two dozen of hares, and they were about to boil two more, which they alſo gave us. We were not ungrateful for their kindneſs, and left them. Our courſe was now North-Weſt four miles, and at nine we landed and pitched our tents, when one of our people killed a grey crane. Our conductor renewed his complaints, not, as he aſſured us, from any apprehenſion of our ill-treatment, but of the Eſquimaux, whom he repreſented as a very wicked and malignant people; who would put us all to death. He added, alſo, that it was but two ſummers ſince a large party of them came up this river, and killed many of his relations. Two Indians followed us from the laſt lodges.

At half paſt two in the morning we embarked, and ſteered a Weſterly courſe, and ſoon after put aſhore at two lodges of nine Indians. We made them a few trifling preſents, but without diſembarking, and had proceeded but a ſmall diſtance from thence, when we obſerved ſeveral Wedneſ. 8.

1789. July. ſmokes beneath an hill, on the North ſhore, and on our approach we perceived the natives climbing the aſcent to gain the woods. The Indians, however, in the two ſmall canoes which were ahead of us, having aſſured them of our friendly intentions, they returned to their fires, and we diſembarked. Several of them were clad in hare-ſkins, but in every other circumſtance they reſembled thoſe whom we had already ſeen. We were, however, informed that they were of a different tribe, called the Hare Indians, as hares and fiſh are their principal ſupport, from the ſcarcity of rein-deer and beaver, which are the only animals of the larger kind that frequent this part of the country. They were twenty-five in number; and among them was a woman who was afflicted with an abceſs in the belly, and reduced, in conſequence, to a mere ſkeleton: at the ſame time ſeveral old women were ſinging and howling around her; but whether theſe noiſes were to operate as a charm for her cure, or merely to amuſe and conſole her, I do not pretend to determine. A ſmall quantity of our uſual preſents were received by them with the greateſt ſatisfaction.

Here we made an exchange of our guide, who had become ſo troubleſome that we were obliged to watch him night and day, except when he was upon the water. The man, however, who had agreed to go in his place ſoon repented of his engagement, and endeavoured to perſuade us that ſome of his relations further down the river, would readily accompany us, and were much better acquainted with the river than himſelf. But, as he had informed us ten minutes before that we ſhould ſee no more of his tribe, we paid very little attention to his remonſtrances, and compelled him to embark.

In

In about three hours a man overtook us in a ſmall canoe, and we ſuſpected that his object was to facilitate, in ſome way or other, the eſcape of our conductor. About twelve we alſo obſerved an Indian walking along the North-Eaſt ſhore, when the ſmall canoes paddled towards him. We accordingly followed, and found three men, three women, and two children, who had been on an hunting expedition. They had ſome fleſh of the rein-deer, which they offered to us, but it was ſo rotten, as well as offenſive to the ſmell, that we excuſed ourſelves from accepting it. They had alſo their wonderful ſtories of danger and terror, as well as their countrymen, whom we had already ſeen; and we were now informed, that behind the oppoſite iſland there was a Manitoe or ſpirit, in the river, which ſwallowed every perſon that approached it. As it would have employed half a day to have indulged our curioſity in proceeding to examine this phænomenon, we did not deviate from our courſe, but left theſe people with the uſual preſents, and proceeded on our voyage. Our courſe and diſtance this day were Weſt twenty-eight miles, Weſt-North-Weſt twenty-three miles, Weſt-South-Weſt ſix miles, Weſt by North five miles, South-Weſt four miles, and encamped at eight o'clock. A fog prevailed the greater part of the day, with frequent ſhowers of ſmall rain. 1789. July.

CHAP.

CHAPTER IV.

The new guide makes his eſcape. Compel another to ſupply his place. Land at an encampment of another tribe of Indians. Account of their manners, dreſs, weapons, &c. Traffic with them. Deſcription of a beautiful fiſh. Engage another guide. His curious behaviour. Kill a fox and ground-hog. Land at an encampment of a tribe called the Degüthee Denees, or Quarellers. Saw flax growing wild. The varying character of the river and its banks. Diſtant mountains. Perplexity from the nümerous channels of the river. Determined to proceed. Land where there had been an encampment of the Eſquimaux. Saw large flocks of wild fowl. View of the ſun at midnight. Deſcription of a place lately deſerted by the Indians. Houſes of the natives deſcribed. Frequent ſhowers. Saw a black fox. The diſcontents of our hunters renewed, and pacified. Face of the country. Land at a ſpot lately inhabited. Peculiar circumſtances of it. Arrive at the entrance of the lake Proceed to an iſland. Some account of it.

1789. July. Thurſday 9. THUNDER and rain prevailed during the night, and, in the courſe of it, our guide deſerted; we therefore compelled another of theſe people, very much againſt his will, to ſupply the place of his fugitive countryman. We alſo took away the paddles of one of them who remained

remained behind, that he might not follow us on any ſcheme of promoting the eſcape of his companion, who was not eaſily pacified. At length, however, we ſucceeded in the act of conciliation, and at half paſt three quitted our ſtation. In a ſhort time we ſaw a ſmoke on the Eaſt ſhore, and directed our courſe towards it. Our new guide began immediately to call to the people that belonged to it in a particular manner, which we did not comprehend. He informed us that they were not of his tribe, but were a very wicked, malignant people, who would beat us cruelly, pull our hair with great violence from our heads, and mal-treat us in various other ways. 1789. July.

The men waited our arrival, but the women and children took to the woods. There were but four of theſe people, and previous to our landing, they all harangued us at the ſame moment, and apparently with violent anger and reſentment. Our hunters did not underſtand them, but no ſooner had our guide addreſſed them, than they were appeaſed. I preſented them with beads, awls, &c. and when the women and children returned from the woods, they were gratified with ſimilar articles. There were fifteen of them; and of a more pleaſing appearance than any which we had hitherto ſeen, as they were healthy, full of fleſh, and clean in their perſons. Their language was ſomewhat different, but I believe chiefly in the accent, for they and our guide converſed intelligibly with each other; and the Engliſh chief clearly comprehended one of them, though he was not himſelf underſtood.

Their arms and utenſils differ but little from thoſe which have been deſcribed in a former chapter. The only iron they have is in ſmall pieces, which

1789. July. which ſerve them for knives. They obtain this metal from the Eſquimaux Indians. Their arrows are made of very light wood, and are winged only with two feathers; their bows differed from any which we had ſeen, and we underſtood that they were furniſhed by the Eſquimaux, who are their neighbours: they conſiſt of two pieces, with a very ſtrong cord of ſinews along the back, which is tied in ſeveral places, to preſerve its ſhape; when this cord becomes wet, it requires a ſtrong bow-ſtring, and a powerful arm to draw it. The veſſel in which they prepare their food, is made of a thin frame of wood, and of an oblong ſhape; the bottom is fixed in a curve, in the ſame manner as a caſk. Their ſhirts are not cut ſquare at the bottom, but taper to a point, from the belt downwards as low as the knee, both before and behind, with a border, embelliſhed with a ſhort fringe. They uſe alſo another fringe, ſimilar to that which has been already deſcribed, with the addition of the ſtone of a grey farinaceous berry, of the ſize and ſhape of a large barley-corn: it is of a brown colour, and fluted, and being bored is run on each ſtring of the fringe; with this they decorate their ſhirts, by ſewing it in a ſemicircle on the breaſt and back, and croſſing over both ſhoulders; the ſleeves are wide and ſhort, but the mittens ſupply their deficiency, as they are long enough to reach over a part of the ſleeve, and are commodiouſly ſuſpended by a cord from the neck. If their leggins were made with waiſtbands, they might with great propriety be denominated trowſers: they faſten them with a cord round the middle, ſo that they appear to have a ſenſe of decency which their neighbours cannot boaſt. Their ſhoes are ſewed to their leggins, and decorated on every ſeam. One of the men was clad in a ſhirt made of the ſkins of the muſk-rat. The dreſs of the women is the ſame as that of the men, except

in

in their ſhirts, which are longer, and without the finiſhing of a fringe on their breaſt. Their peculiar mode of tying the hair is as follows:—that which grows on the temples, or the fore part of the ſkull, is formed into two queues, hanging down before the ears; that of the ſcalp or crown is faſhioned in the ſame manner to the back of the neck, and is then tied with the reſt of the hair, at ſome diſtance from the head. A thin cord is employed for theſe purpoſes, and very neatly worked with hair, artificially coloured. The women, and, indeed, ſome of the men, let their hair hang looſe on their ſhoulders, whether it be long or ſhort. 1789. July.

We purchaſed a couple of very large mooſe ſkins from them, which were very well dreſſed; indeed we did not ſuppoſe that there were any of thoſe animals in the country; and it appears from the accounts of the natives themſelves, that they are very ſcarce. As for the beaver, the exiſtence of ſuch a creature does not ſeem to be known by them. Our people bought ſhirts of them, and many curious articles, &c. They preſented us with a moſt delicious fiſh, which was leſs than an herring, and very beautifully ſpotted with black and yellow: its dorſal fin reached from the head to the tail; in its expanded ſtate takes a triangular form, and is variegated with the colours that enliven the ſcales: the head is very ſmall, and the mouth is armed with ſharp-pointed teeth.

We prevailed on the native, whoſe language was moſt intelligible, to accompany us. He informed us that we ſhould ſleep ten nights more before we arrived at the ſea; that ſeveral of his relations reſided in the immediate vicinity of this part of the river, and that in three nights we

1789. July. ſhould meet with the Eſquimaux, with whom they had formerly made war, but were now in a ſtate of peace and amity. He mentioned the laſt Indians whom we had ſeen in terms of great deriſion; deſcribing them as being no better than old women, and as abominable liars; which coincided with the notion we already entertained of them.

As we puſhed off, ſome of my men diſcharged their fowling pieces, that were only loaded with powder, at the report of which the Indians were very much alarmed, as they had not before heard the diſcharge of fire arms. This circumſtance had ſuch an effect upon our guide, that we had reaſon to apprehend he would not fulfil his promiſe. When, however, he was informed that the noiſe which he had heard was a ſignal of friendſhip, he was perſuaded to embark in his own ſmall canoe, though he had been offered a ſeat in ours.

Two of his companions, whom he repreſented as his brothers, followed us in their canoes; and they amuſed us not only with their native ſongs, but with others, in imitation of the Eſquimaux; and our new guide was ſo enlivened by them, that the antics he performed, in keeping time to the ſinging, alarmed us with continual apprehenſion that his boat muſt upſet: but he was not long content with his confined ſituation, and paddling up along-ſide our canoe, requeſted us to receive him in it, though but a ſhort time before he had reſolutely refuſed to accept our invitation. No ſooner had he entered our canoe, than he began to perform an Eſquimaux dance, to our no ſmall alarm. He was, however, ſoon prevailed upon to be more tranquil; when he began to diſplay various indecencies, according to the cuſtoms of the Eſquimaux, of which

which he boaſted an intimate acquaintance. On our putting to ſhore, in order to leave his canoe, he informed us, that on the oppoſite hill the Eſquimaux, three winters before, killed his grandfather. We ſaw a fox, and a ground hog on the hill, the latter of which the brother of our guide ſhot with his bow and arrow. 1789. July.

About four in the afternoon we perceived a ſmoke on the Weſt ſhore, when we traverſed and landed. The natives made a moſt terrible uproar, talking with great vociferation, and running about as if they were deprived of their ſenſes, while the greater part of the women, with the children, fled away. Perceiving the diſorder which our appearance occaſioned among theſe people, we had waited ſome time before we quitted the canoe; and I have no doubt, if we had been without people to introduce us, that they would have attempted ſome violence againſt us; for when the Indians ſend away their women and children, it is always with an hoſtile deſign. At length we pacified them with the uſual preſents, but they preferred beads to any of the articles that I offered them; particularly ſuch as were of a blue colour; and one of them even requeſted to exchange a knife which I had given him for a ſmall quantity of thoſe ornamental baubles. I purchaſed of them two ſhirts for my hunters; and at the ſame time they preſented me with ſome arrows, and dried fiſh. This party conſiſted of five families, to the amount, as I ſuppoſe, of forty men, women, and children; but I did not ſee them all, as ſeveral were afraid to venture from their hiding-places. They are called *Deguthee Dinees*, or the *Quarrellers*.

Our guide, like his predeceſſors, now manifeſted his wiſh to leave us,

1789. July. and entertained ſimilar apprehenſions that we ſhould not return by this paſſage. He had his alarms alſo reſpecting the Eſquimaux, who might kill us, and take away the women. Our Indians, however, aſſured him that we had no fears of any kind, and that he need not be alarmed for himſelf. They alſo convinced him that we ſhould return by the way we were going, ſo that he conſented to re-embark without giving us any further trouble; and eight ſmall canoes followed us. Our courſes this day were South-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles, South-Weſt by South thirty miles, South-Weſt three miles, Weſt by South twelve miles, Weſt by North two miles, and we encamped at eight in the evening on the Eaſtern bank of the river.

The Indians whom I found here, informed me, that from the place where I this morning met the firſt of their tribe, the diſtance overland, on the Eaſt ſide, to the ſea, was not long; and that from hence, by proceeding to the Weſtward, it was ſtill ſhorter. They alſo repreſented the land on both ſides as projecting to a point. Theſe people do not appear to harbour any thieviſh diſpoſitions; at leaſt we did not perceive that they took, or wanted to take, any thing from us by ſtealth or artifice. They enjoyed the amuſements of dancing and jumping in common with thoſe we had already ſeen; and, indeed, theſe exerciſes ſeem to be their favourite diverſions. About mid-day the weather was ſultry, but in the afternoon it became cold. There was a large quantity of wild flax, the growth of the laſt year, laying on the ground, and the new plants were ſprouting up through it. This circumſtance I did not obſerve in any other part.

At

1789. July. Friday 10.

At four in the morning we embarked, at a ſmall diſtance from the place of our encampment; the river, which here becomes narrower, flows between high rocks; and a meandring courſe took us North-Weſt four miles. At this ſpot the banks became low; indeed, from the firſt rapid, the country does not wear a mountainous appearance; but the banks of the river are generally lofty, in ſome places perfectly naked, and in others well covered with ſmall trees, ſuch as the fir and the birch. We continued our laſt courſe for two miles, with mountains before us, whoſe tops were covered with ſnow.

The land is low on both ſides of the river, except theſe mountains, whoſe baſe is diſtant about ten miles: here the river widens, and runs through various channels, formed by iſlands, ſome of which are without a tree, and little more than banks of mud and ſand; while others are covered with a kind of ſpruce fir, and trees of a larger ſize than we had ſeen for the laſt ten days. Their banks, which are about ſix feet above the ſurface of the water, diſplay a face of ſolid ice, intermixed with veins of black earth and as the heat of the ſun melts the ice, the trees frequently fall into the river.

So various were the channels of the river at this time, that we were at a loſs which to take. Our guide preferred the Eaſternmoſt, on account of the Eſquimaux, but I determined to take the middle channel, as it appeared to be a larger body of water, and running North and South: beſides, as there was a greater chance of ſeeing them I concluded, that we could always go to the Eaſtward, whenever we might prefer it. Our courſe

was

1789. July. was now Weſt by North ſix miles, North-Weſt by Weſt, the ſnowy mountains being Weſt by South from us, and ſtretching to the Northward as far as we could ſee. According to the information of the Indians, they are part of the chain of mountains which we approached on the third of this month. I obtained an obſervation this day that gave me 67. 47. North latitude, which was farther North than I expected, according to the courſe I kept; but the difference was owing to the variation of the compaſs, which was more Eaſterly than I imagined. From hence it was evident that theſe waters emptied themſelves into the Hyperborean Sea; and though it was probable that, from the want of proviſion, we could not return to Athabaſca in the courſe of the ſeaſon, I nevertheleſs, determined to penetrate to the diſcharge of them.

My new conductor being very much diſcouraged and quite tired of his ſituation, uſed his influence to prevent our proceeding. He had never been, he ſaid, at the *Benahulla Toe*, or White Man's Lake; and that when he went to the Eſquimaux Lake, which is at no great diſtance, he paſſed over land from the place where we found him, and to that part where the Eſquimaux paſs the ſummer. In ſhort, my hunters alſo became ſo diſheartened from theſe accounts, and other circumſtances, that I was confident they would have left me, if it had been in their power. I, however, ſatisfied them, in ſome degree, by the aſſurance, that I would proceed onwards but ſeven days more, and if I did not then get to the ſea, I would return. Indeed, the low ſtate of our proviſions, without any other conſideration, formed a very ſufficient ſecurity for the maintenance

tenance of my engagement. Our laſt courſe was thirty-two miles, with a ſtronger current than could be expected in ſuch a low country. 1789. July.

We now proceeded North-North-Weſt four miles, North-Weſt three miles, North-Eaſt two miles, North-Weſt by Weſt three miles, and North-Eaſt two miles. At half paſt eight in the evening we landed and pitched our tents, near to where there had been three encampments of the Eſquimaux, ſince the breaking up of the ice. The natives, who followed us yeſterday, left us at our ſtation this morning. In the courſe of the day we ſaw large flocks of wild fowl.

I ſat up all night to obſerve the ſun. At half paſt twelve I called up one of the men to view a ſpectacle which he had never before ſeen; when, on ſeeing the ſun ſo high, he thought it was a ſignal to embark, and began to call the reſt of his companions, who would ſcarcely be perſuaded by me, that the ſun had not deſcended nearer to the horizon, and that it was now but a ſhort time paſt midnight. Saturday 11.

We repoſed, however, till three quarters after three, when we entered the canoe, and ſteered about North-Weſt, the river taking a very ſerpentine courſe. About ſeven we ſaw a ridge of high land: at twelve we landed at a ſpot where we obſerved that ſome of the natives had lately been. I counted thirty places where there had been fires; and ſome of the men who went further, ſaw as many more. They muſt have been here for a conſiderable time, though it does not appear that they had erected any huts. A great number of poles, however, were ſeen fixed in the river, to which they had attached their nets, and there ſeemed

to

1789. July. to be an excellent fiſhery. One of the fiſh, of the many which we ſaw leap out of the water, fell into our canoe; it was about ten inches long, and of a round ſhape. About the places where they had made their fires were ſcattered pieces of whalebone, and thick burned leather, with parts of the frames of three canoes; we could alſo obſerve where they had ſpilled train oil; and there was the ſingular appearance of a ſpruce fir, ſtripped of its branches to the top like an Engliſh may-pole. The weather was cloudy, and the air cold and unpleaſant. From this place for about five miles, the river widens, it then flows in a variety of narrow, meandering channels, amongſt low iſlands, enlivened with no trees, but a few dwarf willows.

At four, we landed, where there were three houſes, or rather huts, belonging to the natives. The ground-plot is of an oval form, about fifteen feet long, ten feet wide in the middle, and eight feet at either end: the whole of it is dug about twelve inches below the ſurface of the ground, and one half of it is covered over with willow branches; which probably ſerves as a bed for the whole family. A ſpace, in the middle of the other part, of about four feet wide, is deepened twelve inches more, and is the only ſpot in the houſe where a grown perſon can ſtand upright. One ſide of it is covered, as has been already deſcribed, and the other is the hearth or fire-place, of which, however, they do not make much uſe. Though it was cloſe to the wall, the latter did not appear to be burned. The door or entrance is in the middle of one end of the houſe, and is about two feet and an half high and two feet wide, and has a covered way or porch five feet in length; ſo that it is abſolutely neceſſary to creep on all fours

in

in order to get into, or out of, this curious habitation. There is an hole of about eighteen inches ſquare on the top of it, which ſerves the three-fold purpoſe of a window, an occaſional door, and a chimney. The under-ground part of the floor is lined with ſplit wood. Six or eight ſtumps of ſmall trees driven into the earth, with the root upwards, on which are laid ſome croſs pieces of timber, ſupport the roof of the building, which is an oblong ſquare of ten feet by ſix. The whole is made of drift-wood covered with branches and dry graſs; over which is laid a foot deep of earth. On each ſide of theſe houſes are a few ſquare holes in the ground of about two feet in depth, which are covered with ſplit wood and earth, except in the middle. Theſe appeared to be contrived for the preſervation of the winter ſtock of proviſions. In and about the houſes we found ſledge runners and bones, pieces of whalebone, and poplar bark cut in circles, which are uſed as corks to buoy the nets, and are fixed to them by pieces of whalebone. Before each hut a great number of ſtumps of trees were fixed in the ground, upon which it appeared that they hung their fiſh to dry. 1789. July.

We now continued our voyage, and encamped at eight o'clock. I calculated our courſe at about North-Weſt, and, allowing for the windings, that we had made fifty-four miles. We expected, throughout the day, to meet with ſome of the natives. On ſeveral of the iſlands we perceived the print of their feet in the ſand, as if they had been there but a few days before, to procure wild fowl. There were frequent ſhowers of rain in the afternoon, and the weather was raw and diſagreeable. We ſaw a black fox; but trees were now become very rare objects, except a few dwarf willows, of not more than three feet in height.

1789. July. The diſcontents of our hunters were now renewed by the accounts which our guide had been giving of that part of our voyage that was approaching. According to his information, we were to ſee a larger lake on the morrow. Neither he nor his relations, he ſaid, knew any thing about it, except that part which is oppoſite to, and not far from, their country. The Eſquimaux alone, he added, inhabit its ſhores, and kill a large fiſh that is found in it, which is a principal part of their food; this, we preſumed, muſt be the whale. He alſo mentioned white bears and another large animal which was ſeen in thoſe parts, but our hunters could not underſtand the deſcription which he gave of it. He alſo repreſented their canoes as being of a large conſtruction, which would commodiouſly contain four or five families. However, to reconcile the Engliſh chief to the neceſſary continuance in my ſervice, I preſented him with one of my capots or travelling coats; at the ſame time, to ſatisfy the guide, and keep him, if poſſible, in good humour, I gave him a ſkin of the mooſe-deer, which, in his opinion, was a valuable preſent.

Sunday 12. It rained with violence throughout the night, and till two in the morning; the weather continuing very cold. We proceeded on the ſame meandering courſe as yeſterday, the wind North-North-Weſt, and the country ſo naked that ſcarce a ſhrub was to be ſeen. At ten in the morning, we landed where there were four huts, exactly the ſame as thoſe which have been ſo lately deſcribed. The adjacent land is high and covered with ſhort graſs and flowers, though the earth was not thawed above four inches from the ſurface; beneath which was a ſolid body of ice. This beautiful appearance, however, was ſtrangely contraſted with the ice and ſnow that are ſeen in the vallies. The ſoil,

where

where there is any, is a yellow clay mixed with ſtones. Theſe huts appear to have been inhabited during the laſt winter; and we had reaſon to think, that ſome of the natives had been lately there, as the beach was covered with the track of their feet. Many of the runners and bars of their ſledges were laid together, near the houſes, in a manner that ſeemed to denote the return of the proprietors. There were alſo pieces of netting made of ſinews, and ſome bark of the willow. The thread of the former was plaited, and no ordinary portion of time muſt have been employed in manufacturing ſo great a length of cord. A ſquare ſtone-kettle, with a flat bottom, alſo occupied our attention, which was capable of containing two gallons; and we were puzzled as to the means theſe people muſt have employed to have chiſelled it out of a ſolid rock into its preſent form. To theſe articles may be added, ſmall pieces of flint fixed into handles of wood, which, probably, ſerve as knives; ſeveral wooden diſhes; the ſtern and part of a large canoe; pieces of very thick leather, which we conjectured to be the covering of a canoe; ſeveral bones of large fiſh, and two heads; but we could not determine the animal to which they belonged, though we conjectured that it muſt be the ſea-horſe. 1789. July.

When we had ſatisfied our curioſity we re-embarked, but we were at a loſs what courſe to ſteer, as our guide ſeemed to be as ignorant of this country as ourſelves. Though the current was very ſtrong, we appeared to have come to the entrance of the lake. The ſtream ſet to the Weſt, and we went with it to an high point, at the diſtance of about eight miles, which we conjectured to be an iſland; but, on approaching it, we perceived it to be connected with the ſhore by a low neck of land. I now

July. 1789. took an obſervation which gave 69. 1. North latitude. From the point that has been juſt mentioned, we continued the ſame courſe for the Weſternmoſt point of an high iſland, and the Weſternmoſt land in ſight, at the diſtance of fifteen miles.

The lake was quite open to us to the Weſtward, and out of the channel of the river there was not more than four feet water, and in ſome places the depth did not exceed one foot. From the ſhallowneſs of the water it was impoſſible to coaſt to the Weſtward. At five o'clock we arrived at the iſland, and during the laſt fifteen miles, five feet was the deepeſt water. The lake now appeared to be covered with ice, for about two leagues diſtance, and no land ahead, ſo that we were prevented from proceeding in this direction by the ice, and the ſhallowneſs of the water along the ſhore.

We landed at the boundary of our voyage in this direction, and as ſoon as the tents were pitched I ordered the nets to be ſet, when I proceeded with the Engliſh chief to the higheſt part of the iſland, from which we diſcovered the ſolid ice, extending from the South-Weſt by compaſs to the Eaſtward. As far as the eye could reach to the South-Weſtward, we could dimly perceive a chain of mountains, ſtretching further to the North than the edge of the ice, at the diſtance of upwards of twenty leagues. To the Eaſtward we ſaw many iſlands, and in our progreſs we met with a conſiderable number of white partridges, now become brown. There were alſo flocks of very beautiful plovers, and I found the neſt of one of them with four eggs. White owls, likewiſe, were among the inhabitants of the place: but the dead, as well

well as the living, demanded our attention, for we came to the grave of one of the natives, by which lay a bow, a paddle, and a ſpear. The Indians informed me that they landed on a ſmall iſland, about four leagues from hence, where they had ſeen the tracks of two men, that were quite freſh; they had alſo found a ſecret ſtore of train oil, and ſeveral bones of white bears were ſcattered about the place where it was hid. The wind was now ſo high that it was impracticable for us to viſit the nets. 1789. July.

My people could not, at this time, refrain from expreſſions of real concern, that they were obliged to return without reaching the ſea: indeed the hope of attaining this object encouraged them to bear, without repining, the hardſhips of our unremitting voyage. For ſome time paſt their ſpirits were animated by the expectation that another day would bring them to the *Mer d'oueſt*: and even in our preſent ſituation they declared their readineſs to follow me wherever I ſhould be pleaſed to lead them. We ſaw ſeveral large white gulls, and other birds, whoſe back, and upper feathers of the wing, are brown; and whoſe belly, and under feathers of the wing are white.

CHAPTER V.

The baggage removed from the riſing of the water. One of the nets driven away by the wind and current. Whales are ſeen. Go in purſuit of them, but prevented from continuing it by the fog. Proceed to take a view of the ice. Canoe in danger from the ſwell. Examine the iſlands. Deſcribe one of them. Erect a poſt to perpetuate our viſit there. The riſing of the water appears to be the tide. Succeſsful fiſhing. Uncertain weather. Sail among the iſlands. Proceed to a river. Temperature of the air improves. Land on a ſmall iſland, which is a place of ſepulture. Deſcription of it. See a great number of wild fowl. Fine view of the river from the high land. The hunters kill rein-deer. Cranberries, &c. found in great plenty. The appearance and ſtate of the country. Our guide deſerts. Large flight of geeſe: kill many of them. Violent rain. Return up the river. Leave the channels for the main ſtream. Obliged to tow the canoe. Land among the natives. Circumſtances concerning them. Their account of the Eſquimaux Indians. Accompany the natives to their huts. Account of our proviſions.

1789. July. Monday 13. WE had no ſooner retired to reſt laſt night, if I may uſe that expreſſion, in a country where the ſun never ſinks beneath the horizon, than ſome of the people were obliged to riſe and remove the baggage, on account of

of the riſing of the water. At eight in the morning the weather was fine and calm, which afforded an opportunity to examine the nets, one of which had been driven from its poſition by the wind and current. We caught ſeven poiſſons inconnus, which were unpalatable; a white fiſh, that proved delicious; and another about the ſize of an herring, which none of us had ever ſeen before, except the Engliſh chief, who recognized it as being of a kind that abounds in Hudſon's Bay. About noon the wind blew hard from the Weſtward, when I took an obſervation, which gave 69. 14. North latitude, and the meridian variation of the compaſs was thirty-ſix degrees Eaſtward*. 1789. July.

This afternoon I re-aſcended the hill, but could not diſcover that the ice had been put in motion by the force of the wind. At the ſame time I could juſt diſtinguiſh two ſmall iſlands in the ice, to the North-Weſt by compaſs. I now thought it neceſſary to give a new net to my men to mount, in order to obtain as much proviſion as poſſible from the water, our ſtores being reduced to about five hundred weight, which, without any other ſupply, would not have ſufficed for fifteen people above twelve days. One of the young Indians, however, was ſo fortunate as to find the net that had been miſſing, and which contained three of the poiſſons inconnus.

It blew very hard from the North-Weſt ſince the preceding evening. Having ſat up till three in the morning, I ſlept longer than uſual; but about eight one of my men ſaw a great many animals in the water, which Tueſday 14.

* The longitude has ſince been diſcovered by the dead reckoning to be 135. Weſt.

he

1789. July. he at firſt ſuppoſed to be pieces of ice. About nine, however, I was awakened to reſolve the doubts which had taken place reſpecting this extraordinary appearance. I immediately perceived that they were whales; and having ordered the canoe to be prepared, we embarked in purſuit of them. It was, indeed, a very wild and unreflecting enterpriſe, and it was a very fortunate circumſtance that we failed in our attempt to overtake them, as a ſtroke from the tail of one of theſe enormous fiſh would have daſhed the canoe to pieces. We may, perhaps, have been indebted to the foggy weather for our ſafety, as it prevented us from continuing our purſuit. Our guide informed us that they are the ſame kind of fiſh which are the principal food of the Eſquimaux, and they were frequently ſeen as large as our canoe. The part of them which appeared above the water was altogether white, and they were much larger than the largeſt porpoiſe.

About twelve the fog diſperſed, and being curious to take a view of the ice, I gave orders for the canoe to be got in readineſs. We accordingly embarked, and the Indians followed us. We had not, however, been an hour on the water, when the wind roſe on a ſudden from the North-Eaſt, and obliged us to tack about, and the return of the fog prevented us from aſcertaining our diſtance from the ice; indeed, from this circumſtance, the iſland which we had ſo lately left was but dimly ſeen. Though the wind was cloſe, we ventured to hoiſt the ſail, and from the violence of the ſwell it was by great exertions that two men could bale out the water from our canoe. We were in a ſtate of actual danger, and felt every correſponding emotion of pleaſure when we reached the land. The Indians had fortunately got more to windward,

ſo

ſo that the ſwell in ſome meaſure drove them on ſhore, though their canoes were nearly filled with water; and had they been laden, we ſhould have ſeen them no more. As I did not propoſe to ſatisfy my curioſity at the riſk of ſimilar dangers, we continued our courſe along the iſlands, which ſcreened us from the wind. I was now determined to take a more particular examination of the iſlands, in the hope of meeting with parties of the natives, from whom I might be able to obtain ſome intereſting intelligence, though our conductor diſcouraged my expectations by repreſenting them as very ſhy and inacceſſible people. At the ſame time he informed me that we ſhould probably find ſome of them, if we navigated the channel which he had originally recommended us to enter. 1789. July.

At eight we encamped on the Eaſtern end of the iſland, which I had named the Whale Iſland. It is about ſeven leagues in length, Eaſt and Weſt by compaſs; but not more than half a mile in breadth. We ſaw ſeveral red foxes, one of which was killed. There were alſo five or ſix very old huts on the point where we had taken our ſtation. The nets were now ſet, and one of them in five fathom water, the current ſetting North-Eaſt by compaſs. This morning I ordered a poſt to be erected cloſe to our tents, on which I engraved the latitude of the place, my own name, the number of perſons which I had with me, and the time we remained there.

Being awakened by ſome caſual circumſtance, at four this morning, I was ſurpriſed on perceiving that the water had flowed under our baggage. As the wind had not changed, and did not blow with greater violence than Wedneſ. 15.

1789. July. when we went to reſt, we were all of opinion that this circumſtance proceeded from the tide. We had, indeed, obſerved at the other end of the iſland that the water roſe and fell; but we then imagined that it muſt have been occaſioned by the wind. The water continued to riſe till about ſix, but I could not aſcertain the time with the requiſite preciſion, as the wind then began to blow with great violence; I therefore determined, at all events, to remain here till the next morning, though, as it happened, the ſtate of the wind was ſuch as to render my ſtay here an act of neceſſity. Our nets were not very ſucceſsful, as they preſented us with only eight fiſh. From an obſervation which I obtained at noon, we were in 69. 7. North latitude. As the evening approached, the wind increaſed, and the weather became cold. Two ſwans were the only proviſion which the hunters procured for us.

Thurſday 16. The rain did not ceaſe till ſeven this morning, the weather being at intervals very cold and unpleaſant. Such was its inconſtancy, that I could not make an accurate obſervation; but the tide appeared to riſe ſixteen or eighteen inches.

We now embarked, and ſteered under ſail among the iſlands, where I hoped to meet with ſome of the natives, but my expectation was not gratified. Our guide imagined that they were gone to their diſtant haunts, where they fiſh for whales and hunt the rein-deer, that are oppoſite to his country. His relations, he ſaid, ſee them every year, but he did not encourage us to expect that we ſhould find any of them, unleſs it were at a ſmall river that falls into the great one, from the Eaſtward, at a conſiderable diſtance from our immediate ſituation. We accordingly made for the river,

river, and ſtemmed the current. At two in the afternoon the water was quite ſhallow in every part of our courſe, and we could always find the bottom with the paddle. At ſeven we landed, encamped, and ſet the nets. Here the Indians killed two geeſe, two cranes, and a white owl. Since we entered the river, we experienced a very agreeable change in the temperature of the air; but this pleaſant circumſtance was not without its inconvenience, as it ſubjected us to the perſecution of the muſquitoes. 1789. July.

On taking up the nets, they were found to contain but ſix fiſh. We embarked at four in the morning, and paſſed four encampments, which appeared to have been very lately inhabited. We then landed upon a ſmall round iſland, cloſe to the Eaſtern ſhore, which poſſeſſed ſomewhat of a ſacred character, as the top of it ſeemed to be a place of ſepulture, from the numerous graves which we obſerved there. We found the frame of a ſmall canoe, with various diſhes, troughs, and other utenſils, which had been the living property of thoſe who could now uſe them no more, and form the ordinary accompaniments of their laſt abodes. As no part of the ſkins that muſt have covered the canoe was remaining, we concluded that it had been eaten by wild animals that inhabit, or occaſionally frequent, the iſland. The frame of the canoe, which was entire, was put together with whalebone: it was ſewed in ſome parts, and tied in others. The ſledges were from four to eight feet long; the length of the bars was upwards of two feet; the runners were two inches thick and nine inches deep; the prow was two feet and an half high, and formed of two pieces, ſewed with whalebone; to three other thin ſpars of wood, which were of the ſame height, and fixed in the runners by means Friday 17.

1789. July. of mortiſes, were ſewed two thin broad bars lengthways, at a ſmall diſtance from each other; theſe frames were fixed together with three or four croſs bars, tied faſt upon the runners; and on the lower edge of the latter, ſmall pieces of horn were faſtened by wooden pegs, that they might ſlide with greater facility. They are drawn by ſhafts, which I imagine are applied to any particular ſledge as they are wanted, as I ſaw no more than one pair of them.

About half paſt one we came oppoſite to the firſt ſpruce-tree that we had ſeen for ſome time: there are but very few of them on the main land, and they are very ſmall; thoſe are larger which are found on the iſlands, where they grow in patches, and cloſe together. It is, indeed, very extraordinary that there ſhould be any wood whatever in a country where the ground never thaws above five inches from the ſurface. We landed at ſeven in the evening. The weather was now very pleaſant, and in the courſe of the day we ſaw great numbers of wild fowl, with their young ones, but they were ſo ſhy that we could not approach them. The Indians were not very ſucceſsful in their foraging party, as they killed only two grey cranes, and a grey gooſe. Two of them were employed on the high land to the Eaſtward, through the greater part of the day, in ſearch of rein-deer, but they could diſcover nothing more than a few tracks of that animal. I alſo aſcended the high land, from whence I had a delightful view of the river, divided into innumerable ſtreams, meandering through iſlands, ſome of which were covered with wood, and others with graſs. The mountains, that formed the oppoſite horizon, were at the diſtance of forty miles. The inland view was neither ſo extenſive nor agreeable, being terminated by a near range of bleak, barren

barren hills, between which are ſmall lakes or ponds, while the ſurrounding country is covered with tufts of moſs, without the ſhade of a ſingle tree. Along the hills is a kind of fence, made with branches, where the natives had ſet ſnares to catch white partridges. 1789. June.

The nets did not produce a ſingle fiſh, and at three o'clock in the morning we took our departure. The weather was fine and clear, and we paſſed ſeveral encampments. As the prints of human feet were very freſh in the ſand, it could not have been long ſince the natives had viſited the ſpot. We now proceeded in the hope of meeting with ſome of them at the river, whither our guide was conducting us with that expectation. We obſerved a great number of trees, in different places, whoſe branches had been lopped off to the tops. They denote the immediate abode of the natives, and probably ſerve for ſignals to direct each other to their reſpective winter quarters. Our hunters, in the courſe of the day killed two rein-deer, which were the only large animals that we had ſeen ſince we had been in this river, and proved a very ſeaſonable ſupply, as our Pemmican had become mouldy for ſome time paſt; though in that ſituation we were under the neceſſity of eating it. Saturday 13.

In the vallies and low lands near the river, cranberries are found in great abundance, particularly in favourable aſpects. It is a ſingular circumſtance, that the fruit of two ſucceeding years may be gathered at the ſame time, from the ſame ſhrub. Here was alſo another berry, of a very pale yellow colour, that reſembles a raſpberry, and is of a very agreeable flavour. There is a great variety of other plants and herbs, whoſe names and properties are unknown to me.

The

1789. July. The weather became cold towards the afternoon, with the appearance of rain, and we landed for the night at ſeven in the evening The Indians killed eight geeſe. During the greater part of the day I walked with the Engliſh chief, and found it very diſagreeable and fatiguing. Though the country is ſo elevated, it was one continual moraſs, except on the ſummits of ſome barren hills. As I carried my hanger in my hand, I frequently examined if any part of the ground was in a ſtate of thaw, but could never force the blade into it, beyond the depth of ſix or eight inches. The face of the high land, towards the river, is in ſome places rocky, and in others a mixture of ſand and ſtone, veined with a kind of red earth, with which the natives bedaub themſelves.

Sunday 19. It rained, and blew hard from the North, till eight in the morning, when we diſcovered that our conductor had eſcaped. I was, indeed, ſurpriſed at his honeſty, as he left the mooſe-ſkin which I had given him for a covering, and went off in his ſhirt, though the weather was very cold. I inquired of the Indians if they had given him any cauſe of offence, or had obſerved any recent diſpoſition in him to deſert us, but they aſſured me that they had not in any inſtance diſpleaſed him: at the ſame time they recollected that he had expreſſed his apprehenſions of being taken away as a ſlave; and his alarms were probably increaſed on the preceding day, when he ſaw them kill the two rein-deer with ſo much readineſs. In the afternoon the weather became fine and clear, when we ſaw large flights of geeſe with their young ones, and the hunters killed twenty-two of them. As they had at this time caſt their feathers, they could not fly. They were of a ſmall kind, and much inferior in ſize to thoſe that frequent the vicinity of Athabaſca. At eight, we took

our

our ſtation near an Indian encampment, and, as we had obſerved in ſimilar ſituations, pieces of bone, rein-deer's horn, &c. were ſcattered about it. It alſo appeared, that the natives had been employed here in working wood into arms, utenſils, &c. 1789. July.

We embarked at three this morning, when the weather was cloudy, with ſmall rain and aft wind. About twelve the rain became ſo violent as to compel us to encamp at two in the afternoon. We ſaw great numbers of fowl, and killed among us fifteen geeſe and four ſwans. Had the weather been more favourable, we ſhould have added conſiderably to our booty. We now paſſed the river, where we expected to meet ſome of the natives, but diſcovered no ſigns of them. The ground cloſe to the river does not riſe to any conſiderable height, and the hills, which are at a ſmall diſtance, are covered with the ſpruce fir and ſmall birch trees, to their very ſummits. Monday 20.

We embarked at half paſt one this morning, when the weather was cold and unpleaſant, and the wind South-Weſt. At ten, we left the channels formed by the iſlands for the uninterrupted channel of the river, where we found the current ſo ſtrong, that it was abſolutely neceſſary to tow the canoe with a line. The land on both ſides was elevated, and almoſt perpendicular, and the ſhore beneath it, which is of no great breadth, was covered with a grey ſtone that falls from the precipice. We made much greater expedition with the line, than we could have done with the paddles. The men in the canoe relieved two of thoſe on ſhore every two hours, ſo that it was very hard and fatiguing duty, but it ſaved a great deal of that time which was ſo precious to us. At half Tueſday 21.

paſt

1789. July. paſt eight, we landed at the ſame ſpot where we had already encamped on the ninth inſtant.

In about an hour after our arrival, we were joined by eleven of the natives, who were ſtationed further up the river, and there were ſome among them whom we had not ſeen during our former viſit to this place. The brother of our late guide, however, was of the party, and was eager in his inquiries after him; but our account did not prove ſatisfactory. They all gave evident tokens of their ſuſpicion, and each of them made a diſtinct harangue on the occaſion. Our Indians, indeed, did not underſtand their eloquence, though they conjectured it to be very unfavourable to our aſſertions. The brother, nevertheleſs, propoſed to barter his credulity for a ſmall quantity of beads, and promiſed to believe every thing I ſhould ſay, if I would gratify him with a few of thoſe baubles: but he did not ſucceed in his propoſition, and I contented myſelf with giving him the bow and arrows which our conductor had left with us.

My people were now neceſſarily engaged in putting the fire-arms in order, after the violent rain of the preceding day; an employment which very much attracted the curioſity, and appeared, in ſome degree to awaken the apprehenſions, of the natives. To their inquiries concerning the motives of our preparation, we anſwered by ſhewing a piece of meat and a gooſe, and informing them, that we were preparing our arms to procure ſimilar proviſions: at the ſame time we aſſured them, though it was our intention to kill any animals we might find, there was no intention to hurt or injure them. They, however, entreated us not to diſcharge our pieces in their preſence. I requeſted the Engliſh chief to aſk them ſome queſtions,

queſtions, which they either did not or would not underſtand; ſo that I failed in obtaining any information from them. 1789. July.

All my people went to reſt; but I thought it prudent to ſit up, in order to watch the motions of the natives. This circumſtance was a ſubject of their inquiry; and their curioſity was ſtill more excited, when they ſaw me employed in writing. About twelve o'clock I perceived four of their women coming along the ſhore; and they were no ſooner ſeen by their friends, than they ran haſtily to meet them, and perſuaded two of them, who, I ſuppoſe, were young, to return, while they brought the other two who were very old, to enjoy the warmth of our fire; but, after ſtaying there for about half an hour, they alſo retreated. Thoſe who remained, immediately kindled a ſmall fire, and laid themſelves down to ſleep round it, like ſo many whelps, having neither ſkins or garments of any kind to cover them, notwithſtanding the cold that prevailed. My people having placed their kettle of meat on the fire, I was obliged to guard it from the natives, who made ſeveral attempts to poſſeſs themſelves of its contents; and this was the only inſtance I had hitherto diſcovered, of their being influenced by a pilfering diſpoſition. It might, perhaps, be a general opinion, that proviſions were a common property. I now ſaw the ſun ſet for the firſt time ſince I had been here before. During the preceding night, the weather was ſo cloudy, that I could not obſerve its deſcent to the horizon. The water had ſunk, at this place, upward of three feet ſince we had paſſed down the river.

We began our march at half paſt three this morning, the men being Wedneſ. 22.

1789. July. employed to tow the canoe. I walked with the Indians to their huts, which were at a greater diſtance than I had any reaſon to expect, for it occupied three hours in hard walking to reach them. We paſſed a narrow and deep river in our way, at the mouth of which the natives had ſet their nets. They had hid their effects, and ſent their young women into the woods, as we ſaw but very few of the former, and none of the latter. They had large huts built with drift wood on the declivity of the beach, and in the inſide the earth was dug away, ſo as to form a level floor. At each end was a ſtout fork, whereon was laid a ſtrong ridge-pole, which formed a ſupport to the whole ſtructure, and a covering of ſpruce bark preſerved it from the rain. Various ſpars of different heights were fixed within the hut, and covered with ſplit fiſh that hung on them to dry; and fires were made in different parts to accelerate the operation. There were rails alſo on the outſide of the building, which were hung around with fiſh, but in a freſher ſtate than thoſe within. The ſpawn is alſo carefully preſerved and dried in the ſame manner. We obtained as many fiſh from them as the canoe could conveniently contain, and ſome ſtrings of beads were the price paid for them, an article which they preferred to every other. Iron they held in little or no eſtimation.

During the two hours that I remained here, I employed the Engliſh chief in a continual ſtate of inquiry concerning theſe people. The information that reſulted from this conference was as follows.

This nation or tribe is very numerous, with whom the Eſquimaux had been continually at variance, a people who take every advantage of attacking thoſe who are not in a ſtate to defend themſelves; and though they

they had promiſed friendſhip, had lately, and in the moſt treacherous manner, butchered ſome of their people. As a proof of this circumſtance, the relations of the deceaſed ſhewed us, that they had cut off their hair on the occaſion. They alſo declared their determination to withdraw all confidence in future from the Eſquimaux, and to collect themſelves in a formidable body, that they might be enabled to revenge the death of their friends. 1789. July.

From their account, a ſtrong party of Eſquimaux occaſionally aſcends this river, in large canoes, in ſearch of flint ſtones, which they employ to point their ſpears and arrows. They were now at their lake due Eaſt from the ſpot where we then were, which was at no great diſtance over land, where they kill the rein-deer, and that they would ſoon begin to catch big fiſh for the winter ſtock. We could not, however, obtain any information reſpecting the lake in the direction in which we were. To the Eaſtward and Weſtward where they ſaw it, the ice breaks up, but ſoon freezes again.

The Eſquimaux informed them that they ſaw large canoes full of white men to the Weſtward, eight or ten winters ago, from whom they obtained iron in exchange for leather. The lake where they met theſe canoes, is called by them *Belhoullay Toe*, or White Man's Lake. They alſo repreſented the Eſquimaux as dreſſing like themſelves. They wear their hair ſhort, and have two holes perforated, one on each ſide of the mouth, in a line with the under lip, in which they place long beads that they find in the lake. Their bows are ſomewhat different from thoſe uſed by the natives we had ſeen, and they employ ſlings from

1789. July. whence they throw ſtones with ſuch dexterity that they prove very formidable weapons in the day of battle.

We alſo learned in addition from the natives, that we ſhould not ſee any more of their relations, as they had all left the river to go in purſuit of rein-deer for their proviſions, and that they themſelves ſhould engage in a ſimilar expedition in a few days. Rein-deer, bears, wolvereens, martens, foxes, hares, and white buffaloes are the only quadrupeds in their country; and that the latter were only to be found in the mountains to the Weſtward.

We proceeded with the line throughout the day, except two hours, when we employed the ſail. We encamped at eight in the evening. From the place we quitted this morning, the banks of the river are well covered with ſmall wood, ſpruce, firs, birch, and willow. We found it very warm during the whole of our progreſs.

Thurſday 23. At five in the morning we proceeded on our voyage, but found it very difficult to travel along the beach. We obſerved ſeveral places where the natives had ſtationed themſelves and ſet their nets ſince our paſſage downwards. We paſſed a ſmall river, and at five o'clock our Indians put to ſhore in order to encamp, but we proceeded onwards, which diſpleaſed them very much, from the fatigue they ſuffered, and at eight we encamped at our poſition of the 8th inſtant. The day was very fine, and we employed the towing line throughout the courſe of it. At ten, our hunters returned, ſullen and diſſatisfied. We had not touched any of our proviſion ſtores for ſix days, in which time we had conſumed two rein

rein-deer, four ſwans, forty-five geeſe, and a conſiderable quantity of fiſh: but it is to be conſidered, that we were ten men, and four women. I have always obſerved, that the north men poſſeſſed very hearty appetites, but they were very much exceeded by thoſe with me, ſince we entered this river. I ſhould really have thought it abſolute gluttony in my people, if my own appetite had not increaſed in a ſimilar proportion. 1789. July.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VI.

Employ the towing line. Deſcription of a place where the Indians come to collect flint. Their ſhyneſs and ſuſpicions. Current leſſens. Appearance of the country. Abundance of hares. Violent ſtorm. Land near three lodges. Alarm of the Indians. Supply of fiſh from them. Their fabulous accounts. Continue to ſee Indian lodges. Treatment of a diſeaſe. Miſunderſtanding with the natives. The interpreter harangues them. Their accounts ſimilar to thoſe we have already received. Their curious conduct. Purchaſe ſome beaver ſkins. Shoot one of their dogs. The conſequence of that act. Apprehenſions of the women. Large quantities of liquorice. Swallow's neſts ſeen in the precipices. Fall in with a party of natives killing geeſe. Circumſtances concerning them. Hurricane. Variation of the weather. Kill great numbers of geeſe. Abundance of ſeveral kinds of berries. State of the river and its bank

1789. July. Friday 24. AT five we continued our courſe, but, in a very ſhort time, were under the neceſſity of applying to the aid of the line, the ſtream being ſo ſtrong as to render all our attempts unavailing to ſtem it with the paddles. We paſſed a ſmall river, on each ſide of which the natives and Eſquimaux collect flint. The bank is an high, ſteep, and ſoft rock, variegated with red,

red, green, and yellow hues. From the continual dripping of water, parts of it frequently fall and break into ſmall ſtony flakes like ſlate, but not ſo hard. Among them are found pieces of *Petrolium*, which bears a reſemblance to yellow wax, but is more friable. The Engliſh chief informed me, that rocks of a ſimilar kind are ſcattered about the country, at the back of the Slave Lake, where the Chepewyans collect copper. 1789. July.

At ten, we had an aft wind, and the men who had been engaged in towing, re-embarked. At twelve we obſerved a lodge on the ſide of the river, and its inhabitants running about in great confuſion, or hurrying to the woods. Three men waited our arrival, though they remained at ſome diſtance from us, with their bows and arrows ready to be employed; or at leaſt, that appeared to be the idea they wiſhed to convey to us, by continually ſnapping the ſtrings of the former, and the ſigns they made to forbid our approach. The Engliſh chief, whoſe language they, in ſome degree, underſtood, endeavoured to remove their diſtruſt of us; but till I went to them with a preſent of beads, they refuſed to have any communication with us.

When they firſt perceived our ſail, they took us for the Eſquimaux Indians, who employ a ſail in their canoes. They were ſuſpicious of our deſigns, and queſtioned us with a view to obtain ſome knowledge of them. On ſeeing us in poſſeſſion of ſome of the clothes, bows, &c. which muſt have belonged to ſome of the Deguthee Denees, or Quarrellers, they imagined, that we had killed ſome of them, and were bearing away the fruits of our victory. They appeared, indeed, to be of the ſame tribe,

1789. July. tribe, though they were afraid of acknowledging it. From their queſtions, it was evident that they had not received any notice of our being in thoſe parts.

They would not acknowledge that they had any women with them, though we had ſeen them running to the woods; but pretended that they had been left at a conſiderable diſtance from the river, with ſome relations, who were engaged in killing rein-deer. Theſe people had been here but a ſhort time, and their lodge was not yet completed; nor had they any fiſh in a ſtate of preparation for their proviſion. I gave them a knife and ſome beads for an horn-wedge or chiſel, with which they ſplit their canoe-wood. One of my Indians having broken his paddle, attempted to take one of theirs, which was immediately conteſted by its owner, and on my interfering to prevent this act of injuſtice, he manifeſted his gratitude to me on the occaſion. We loſt an hour and a half in this conference.

The Engliſh chief was during the whole of the time in the woods, where ſome of the hidden property was diſcovered, but the women contrived to elude the ſearch that was made after them. Some of theſe articles were purloined, but I was ignorant of this circumſtance till we had taken our departure, or I ſhould certainly have given an ample remuneration. Our chief expreſſed his diſpleaſure at their running away to conceal themſelves, their property, and their young women, in very bitter terms. He ſaid his heart was ſet againſt thoſe ſlaves; and complained aloud of his diſappointment in coming ſo far without ſeeing the natives, and getting ſomething from them.

We

We employed the ſail and the paddle ſince ten this morning, and pitched our tents at ſeven in the evening. We had no ſooner encamped than we were viſited by an Indian whom we had ſeen before, and whoſe family was at a ſmall diſtance up the river: at nine he left us. The weather was clear and ſerene. 1789. July.

We embarked this morning at a quarter paſt three, and at ſeven we paſſed the lodge of the Indian who had viſited us the preceding evening. There appeared to have been more than one family, and we naturally concluded that our viſitor had made ſuch an unfavourable report of us, as to induce his companions to fly on our approach. Their fire was not extinguiſhed, and they had left a conſiderable quantity of fiſh ſcattered about their dwelling. Saturday 25.

The weather was now very ſultry; but the current had relaxed of its force, ſo that the paddle was ſufficient for our progreſs during the greateſt part of the day. The inland part of the country is mountainous and the banks of the river low, but covered with wood, among which is the poplar, but of ſmall growth, and the firſt which we had ſeen on our return. A pigeon alſo flew by us, and hares appeared to be in great plenty. We paſſed many Indian encampments which we did not ſee in our paſſage down the river. About ſeven the ſky, to the Weſtward, became of a ſteel-blue colour, with lightning and thunder. We accordingly landed to prepare ourſelves againſt the coming ſtorm; but before we could erect our tents, it came on with ſuch violence, that we expected it to carry every thing before it. The ridge-pole of my tent was broken in the middle, where it was found, and nine inches and an half in

 circumference;

1789. July. circumference; and we were obliged to throw ourſelves flat on the ground to eſcape being wounded by the ſtones that were hurled about in the air like ſand. The violence of the ſtorm, however, ſubſided in a ſhort time, but left the ſky overcaſt with the appearance of rain.

Sunday 26. It rained from the preceding evening to this morning, when we embarked at four o'clock. At eight we landed at three large Indian lodges. Their inhabitants, who were aſleep, expreſſed uncommon alarm and agitation when they were awakened by us, though moſt of them had ſeen us before. Their habitations were crowded with fiſh, hanging to dry in every part; but as we wanted ſome for preſent uſe, we ſent their young men to viſit the nets, and they returned with abundance of large white fiſh, to which the name has been given of *poiſſon incognu*; ſome of a round ſhape, and green colour; and a few white ones; all which were very agreeable food. Some beads, and a few other trifles, were gratefully received in return. Theſe people are very fond of iron work of any kind, and my men purchaſed ſeveral of their articles for ſmall pieces of tin.

There were five or ſix perſons whom we had not ſeen before; and among them was a Dog-rib Indian, whom ſome private quarrel had driven from his country. The Engliſh chief underſtood him as well as one of his own nation, and gave the following account of their converſation:—

He had been informed by the people with whom he now lives, the Hare Indians, that there is another river on the other ſide of the mountains

tains to the South-Weſt, which falls into the *Belhoullay Toe*, or White-man's Lake, in compariſon of which that on whoſe banks we then were, was but a ſmall ſtream; that the natives were very large, and very wicked, and kill common men with their eyes; that they make canoes larger than ours; that thoſe who inhabit the entrance of it kill a kind of beaver, the ſkin of which is almoſt red; and that large canoes often frequent it. As there is no known communication by water with this river, the natives who ſaw it went over the mountains. 1789. July.

As he mentioned that there were ſome beavers in this part of the country, I told him to hunt it, and deſire the others to do the ſame, as well as the martens, foxes, beaver-eater or wolvereen, &c. which they might carry to barter for iron with his own nation, who are ſupplied with goods by us, near their country. He was anxious to know whether we ſhould return that way: at the ſame time he informed us that we ſhould ſee but few of the natives along the river, as all the young men were engaged in killing rein-deer, near the Eſquimaux Lake, which, he alſo ſaid, was at no great diſtance. The latter he repreſented as very treacherous, and added, that they had killed one of his people. He told us likewiſe, that ſome plan of revenge was meditating, unleſs the offending party paid a ſufficient price for the body of the murdered perſon.

My Indians were very anxious to poſſeſs themſelves of a woman that was with the natives, but as they were not willing to part with her, I interfered, to prevent her being taken by force: indeed I was obliged to exerciſe the utmoſt vigilance, as the Indians who accompanied me were ever ready to take what they could from the natives, without making them any

1789. July. return. About twelve we paſſed a river of ſome appearance, flowing from the Eaſtward. One of the natives who followed us, called it the Winter Road River. We did not find the ſtream ſtrong to-day along the ſhore, as there were many eddy currents: we therefore employed the ſail during ſome hours of it, and went on ſhore for the night at half paſt ſeven.

Monday 27. The weather was now fine, and we renewed our voyage at half paſt two. At ſeven we landed where there were three families, ſituated cloſe to the rapids. We found but few people; for as the Indian who followed us yeſterday had arrived here before us, we ſuppoſed that the greater part had fled, on the intelligence which he gave of our approach. Some of theſe people we had ſeen before, when they told us that they had left their property at a lake in the neighbourhood, and had promiſed to fetch it before our return; but we now found them as unprovided as when we left them. They had plenty of fiſh, ſome of which was packed up in birch bark.

During the time we remained with them, which was not more than two hours, I endeavoured to obtain ſome additional intelligence reſpecting the river which had been mentioned on the preceding day; when they declared their total ignorance of it, but from the reports of others, as they had never been beyond the mountains, on the oppoſite ſide of their own river: they had, however, been informed that it was larger than that which waſhed the banks whereon they lived, and that its courſe was towards the mid-day ſun. They added, that there were people at a ſmall diſtance up the river, who inhabited the oppoſite mountains, and had lately deſcended from them to obtain ſupplies of fiſh. Theſe people, they ſuggeſted,

gefted, muſt be well acquainted with the other river, which was the object of my inquiry. I engaged one of them, by a bribe of ſome beads, to deſcribe the circumjacent country upon the ſand. This ſingular map he immediately undertook to delineate, and accordingly traced out a very long point of land between the rivers, though without paying the leaſt attention to their courſes, which he repreſented as running into the great lake, at the extremity of which, as he had been told by Indians of other nations, there was a Belhoullay Couin, or White Man's Fort. This I took to be Unalaſcha Fort, and conſequently the river to the Weſt to be Cook's River; and that the body of water or ſea into which this river diſcharges itſelf at Whale Iſland, communicates with Norton Sound. I made an advantageous propoſition to this man to accompany me acroſs the mountains to the other river, but he refuſed it. At the ſame time he recommended me to the people already mentioned, who were fiſhing in the neighbourhood, as better qualified to aſſiſt me in the undertaking which I had propoſed. 1789. July.

One of this ſmall company of natives was grievouſly afflicted with ulcers in his back; and the only attention which was paid to his miſerable condition, as far at leaſt as we could diſcover, proceeded from a woman, who carefully employed a bunch of feathers in preventing the flies from ſettling upon his ſores.

At ten this morning we landed near the lodges which had already been mentioned to us, and I ordered my people to make preparation for paſſing the remaining part of the day here, in order to obtain that familiarity with the natives which might induce them to afford me, without reſerve, the information

1789. July. information that I ſhould require from them. This object, however, was in danger of being altogether fruſtrated, by a miſunderſtanding that had taken place between the natives and my young Indians, who were already arrived there. Before the latter could diſembark, the former ſeized the canoe, and dragged it on ſhore, and in this act of violence the boat was broken, from the weight of the perſons in it. This inſult was on the point of being ſeriouſly revenged, when I arrived, to prevent the conſequences of ſuch a diſpoſition. The variation of the compaſs was about twenty-nine degrees to the Eaſt.

At four in the afternoon I ordered my interpreter to harangue the natives, aſſembled in council; but his long diſcourſe obtained little ſatisfactory intelligence from them. Their account of the river to the Weſtward, was ſimilar to that which we had already received; and their deſcription of the inhabitants of that country, was ſtill more abſurd and ridiculous. They repreſented them as being of a gigantic ſtature, and adorned with wings; which, however, they never employed in flying. That they fed on large birds, which they killed with the greateſt eaſe, though common men would be certain victims of their voracity if they ventured to approach them. They alſo deſcribed the people that inhabited the mouth of the river as poſſeſſing the extraordinary power of killing with their eyes, and devouring a large beaver at a ſingle meal. They added that canoes of very large dimenſions viſited that place. They did not, however, relate theſe ſtrange circumſtances from their own knowledge, but on the reports of other tribes, as they themſelves never ventured to proceed beyond the firſt mountains, where they went in ſearch of the ſmall white buffaloes, as the inhabitants of the other ſide

endeavour

endeavour to kill them whenever they meet. They likewiſe mentioned that the ſources of thoſe ſtreams which are tributary to both the great rivers, are ſeparated by the mountains. It appeared to us, however, that theſe people knew more about the country than they choſe to communicate, or at leaſt reached me, as the interpreter, who had long been tired of the voyage, might conceal ſuch a part of their communications as, in in his opinion, would induce me to follow new routes, or extend my excurſions. No ſooner was the conference concluded, than they began to dance, which is their favourite, and, except jumping, their only amuſement. In this paſtime old and young, male and female, continued their exertions, till their ſtrength was exhauſted. This exerciſe was accompanied by loud imitations of the various noiſes produced by the reindeer, the bear, and the wolf. 1789. July.

When they had finiſhed their antics, I deſired the Engliſh chief to renew the former ſubjects; which he did without ſucceſs. I therefore aſſumed an angry air, expreſſed my ſuſpicions that they withheld their information, and concluded with a menace, that if they did not give me all the ſatisfaction in their power, I would force one of them along with me to-morrow, to point out the road to the other river. On this declaration, they all, at one and the ſame moment, became ſick, and anſwered in a very faint tone, that they knew no more than they had already communicated, and that they ſhould die if I took any of them away. They began to perſuade my interpreter to remain with them, as they loved him as well as they did themſelves, and that he would be killed if he continued with me. Nor did this propoſition, aided as it was by the ſolicitation of his women, fail of producing a conſiderable effect upon him, though he endeavoured to conceal it from me.

I now

1789. July. I now found that it would be fruitleſs for me to expect any accounts of the country, or the other great river, till I got to the river of the Bear Lake, where I expected to find ſome of the natives, who promiſed to wait for us there. Theſe people had actually mentioned this river to me when we paſſed them, but I then paid no attention to that circumſtance, as I imagined it to be either a miſunderſtanding of my interpreter, or that it was an invention which, with their other lies, might tend to prevent me from proceeding down their river.

We were plentifully ſupplied with fiſh, as well dry as freſh, by theſe people; they alſo gathered as many whittle berries as we choſe, for which we paid with the uſual articles of beads, awls, knives, and tin. I purchaſed a few beaver-ſkins of them, which, according to their accounts, are not very numerous in this country; and that they do not abound in mooſe-deer and buffaloes. They were alarmed for ſome of their young men, who were killing geeſe higher up the river, and entreated us to do them no harm. About ſun-ſet I was under the neceſſity of ſhooting one of their dogs, as we could not keep thoſe animals from our baggage. It was in vain that I had remonſtrated on this ſubject, ſo that I was obliged to commit the act which has been juſt mentioned. When theſe people heard the report of the piſtol, and ſaw the dog dead, they were ſeized with a very general alarm, and the women took their children on their backs and ran into the woods. I ordered the cauſe of this act of ſeverity to be explained, with the aſſurance that no injury would be offered to themſelves. The woman, however, to whom the dog belonged, was very much affected, and declared that the loſs of five children, during the preceding winter, had not affected her ſo much as the death of this

this animal. But her grief was not of very long duration; and a few beads, &c. ſoon aſſuaged her ſorrow. But as they can without difficulty get rid of their affliction, they can with equal eaſe aſſume it, and feign ſickneſs if it be neceſſary with the ſame verſatility. When we arrived this morning, we found the women in tears, from an apprehenſion that we were come to take them away. To the eye of an European they certainly were objects of diſguſt; but there were thoſe among my party who obſerved ſome hidden charms in theſe females which rendered them objects of deſire, and means were found, I believe, that very ſoon diſſipated their alarms and ſubdued their coyneſs. 1789. July.

On the upper part of the beach, liquorice grew in great abundance and it was now in bloſſom. I pulled up ſome of the roots, which were large and long; but the natives were ignorant of its qualities, and conſidered it as a weed of no uſe or value.

At four this morning I ordered my people to prepare for our departure; and while they were loading the canoe, I went with the Engliſh chief to viſit the lodges, but the greater part of their inhabitants had quitted them during the night, and thoſe that remained pretended ſickneſs, and refuſed to riſe. When, however, they were convinced that we did not mean to take any of them with us, their ſickneſs abandoned them, and when we had embarked, they came forth from their huts, to deſire that we would viſit their nets, which were at a ſmall diſtance up the river, and take all the fiſh we might find in them. We accordingly availed ourſeves of this permiſſion, and took as many as were neceſſary for our own ſupply. Tueſday 28.

1789. July. We landed ſhortly after where there were two more lodges, which were full of fiſh, but without any inhabitants, who were probably with the natives whom we had juſt left. My Indians, in rummaging theſe places, found ſeveral articles which they propoſed to take; I therefore gave beads and awls, to be left as the purchaſe of them; but this act of juſtice they were not able to comprehend, as the people themſelves were not preſent. I took up a net and left a large knife in the place of it. It was about four fathoms long, and thirty-two meſhes in depth: theſe nets are much more convenient to ſet in the eddy current than our long ones. This is the place that the Indians call a rapid though we went up it all the way with the paddle; ſo that the current could not be ſo ſtrong here, as in many other parts of the river; indeed if it were ſo, the difficulty of towing would be almoſt inſuperable, as in many parts the rocks, which are of a great height and rather project over the water, leave no ſhore between them and the ſtream. Theſe precipices abound in ſwallows' neſts. The weather was now very ſultry, and at eleven we were under the neceſſity of landing to gum our canoe.

In about an hour we ſet forward, and at one in the afternoon, went on ſhore at a fire, which we ſuppoſed to have been kindled by the young men, who, as we had been already informed, were hunting geeſe. Our hunters found their canoe and the fowl they had got, ſecreted in the woods; and ſoon after, the people themſelves, whom they brought to the waterſide. Out of two hundred geeſe we picked thirty-ſix which were eatable; the reſt were putrid and emitted an horrid ſtench. They had been killed ſome time without having been gutted, and in this ſtate

of

of loathſome rottenneſs, we have every reaſon to ſuppoſe they are eaten by the natives. We paid for thoſe which we had taken, and departed. At ſeven in the evening, the weather became cloudy and overcaſt; at eight we encamped; at nine, it began to thunder with great violence; an heavy rain ſucceeded, accompanied with an hurricane, that blew down our tents, and threatened to carry away the canoe, which had been faſtened to ſome trees with a cod-line. The ſtorm laſted two hours and deluged us with wet. 1789. July.

Yeſterday the weather was cloudy and the heat inſupportable; and now we could not put on clothes enough to keep us warm. We embarked at a quarter paſt four with an aft wind, which drove us on at a great rate, though the current is very ſtrong. At ten we came to the other rapid which we got up with the line on the Weſt ſide, where we found it much ſtronger than when we went down; the water had alſo fallen at leaſt five feet ſince that time, ſo that ſeveral ſhoals appeared in the river which we had not ſeen before. One of my hunters narrowly eſcaped being drowned in croſſing a river that falls in from the Weſtward, and is the moſt conſiderable, except the mountain river, that flows in this direction. We had ſtrong Northerly and cold wind throughout the whole of the day, and took our ſtation for the night at a quarter paſt eight. We killed a gooſe and caught ſome young ones. Wedneſ. 29.

We renewed our voyage at four this morning after a very rainy night. The weather was cloudy, but the cold had moderated, and the wind was Thurſday 30.

1789. July. North-Weſt. We were enabled to employ the ſail during part of the day, and encamped at about ſeven in the evening. We killed eleven old geeſe and forty young ones which had juſt begun to fly. The Engliſh chief was very much irritated againſt one of his young men: that jealouſy occaſioned this uneaſineſs, and that it was not without very ſufficient cauſe, was all I could diſcover. For the laſt two or three days we had eaten the liquorice root, of which there is great abundance on the banks of the river. We found it a powerful aſtringent.

Friday 31. The rain was continual throughout the night, and did not ſubſide till nine this morning, when we renewed our progreſs. The wind and weather the ſame as yeſterday. About three in the afternoon it cleared up and the wind died away, when it became warm. At five the wind veered to the Eaſt, and brought cold along with it. There were plenty of whirtle berries, raſpberries, and a berry called *Paire*, which grows in the greateſt abundance. We were very much impeded in our way by ſhoals of ſand and ſmall ſtones, which render the water ſhallow at a diſtance from the ſhore. In other places the bank of the river is lofty: it is formed of black earth and ſand, and, as it is continually falling, diſplayed to us, in ſome parts, a face of ſolid ice, to within a foot of the ſurface. We finiſhed this day's voyage at a quarter before eight, and in the courſe of it killed ſeven geeſe.

We now had recourſe to our corn, for we had only conſumed three days of our original proviſion ſince we began to mount the current. It was my intention to have aſcended the river on the South ſide from the

the laſt rapid, to diſcover if there were any rivers of conſequence that flow from the Weſtward: but the ſand-banks were ſo numerous and the current ſo ſtrong, that I was compelled to traverſe to the oppoſite ſide, where the eddy currents are very frequent, which gave us an opportunity of ſetting our nets and making much more head-way. 1789. July.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VII.

Voyage continued. Suſpect the integrity of the interpreter. Stars viſible. Springs of mineral water, and lumps of iron ore. Arrive at the river of the Bear Lake. Coal mine in a ſtate of combuſtion. Water of the river diminiſhed. Continue to ſee Indian encampments, and kill geeſe, &c. Hunting excurſions. A canoe found on the edge of a wood. Attempt to aſcend a mountain. Account of the paſſage to it. See a few of the natives. Kill a beaver and ſome hares. Deſign of the Engliſh chief. Kill a wolf. Changeable ſtate of the weather. Recover the Pemmican, which had been hidden in an iſland. Natives fly at our approach. Meet with dogs. Altercation with the Engliſh chief. Account of the articles left by the fugitives. Shoals of the river covered with ſaline matter. Encamp at the mouth of the river of the mountain. The ground on fire on each ſide of it. Continue to ſee encampments of the natives. Various kinds of berries. Kill geeſe, ſwans, &c. &c. &c. Corroding quality of the water. Weather changeable. Reach the entrance of the Slave Lake. Dangers encountered on entering it. Caught pike and trout. Met M. Le Roux on the lake. Further circumſtances till our return to Fort Chepewyan. Concluſion of the voyage.

1789. Auguſt. Saturday 1. WE embarked at three this morning, the weather being clear and cold, with the wind at South-Eaſt. At three in the afternoon we traverſed and landed to take the canoe in tow: here was an encampment of

of the natives, which we had reaſon to ſuppoſe they had quitted the preceding day. At five we perceived a family, conſiſting of a man, two women, and as many children, ſtationed by the ſide of the water, whom we had not ſeen before. They informed us, that they had but few fiſh, and that none of their friends were in the neighbourhood, except the inhabitants of one lodge on the other ſide of the river, and a man who belonged to them, and who was now occupied in hunting. I now found my interpreter very unwilling to aſk ſuch queſtions as were dictated to him, from the apprehenſion, as I imagined, that I might obtain ſuch intelligence as would prevent him from ſeeing Athabaſca this ſeaſon. We left him with the Indian, and pitched our tents at the ſame place where we had paſſed the night on the fifth of laſt month. The Engliſh chief came along with the Indian to our fire; and the latter informed us that the native who went down part of the river with us had paſſed there, and that we ſhould meet with three lodges of his tribe above the river of the Bear Lake. Of the river to the Weſtward he knew nothing but from the relation of others. This was the firſt night ſince our departure from Athabaſca, when it was ſufficiently dark to render the ſtars viſible. 1789. Auguſt.

We ſet off at three this morning with the towing-line. I walked with my Indians, as they went faſter than the canoe, and particularly as I ſuſpected that they wanted to arrive at the huts of the natives before me. In our way, I obſerved ſeveral ſmall ſprings of mineral water running from the foot of the mountain, and along the beach I ſaw ſeveral lumps of iron ore. When we came to the river of the Bear Lake, I ordered one of the young Indians to wait for my canoe, and I took my Sunday 2.

place

1789. August. place in their ſmall canoe. This river is about two hundred and fifty yards broad at this place, the water clear and of a greeniſh colour. When I landed on the oppoſite ſhore, I diſcovered that the natives had been there very lately from the print of their feet in the ſand. We continued walking till five in the afternoon, when we ſaw ſeveral ſmokes along the ſhore. As we naturally concluded, that theſe were certain indications where we ſhould meet the natives who were the objects of our ſearch, we quickened our pace; but, in our progreſs, experienced a very ſulphurous ſmell, and at length diſcovered that the whole bank was on fire for a very conſiderable diſtance. It proved to be a coal mine, to which the fire had communicated from an old Indian encampment. The beach was covered with coals, and the Engliſh chief gathered ſome of the ſofteſt he could find, as a black dye; it being the mineral, as he informed me, with which the natives render their quills black.

Here we waited for the large canoe, which arrived an hour after us. At half paſt ten we ſaw ſeveral Indian marks, which conſiſted of pieces of bark fixed on poles, and pointing to the woods, oppoſite to which is an old beaten road, that bore the marks of being lately frequented; the beach alſo was covered with tracks. At a ſmall diſtance were the poles of five lodges ſtanding; where we landed and unloaded our canoe. I then diſpatched one of my men and two young Indians to ſee if they could find any natives within a day's march of us. I wanted the Engliſh chief to go, but he pleaded fatigue, and that it would be of no uſe. This was the firſt time he had refuſed to comply with my deſire, and jealouſy, I believe, was the cauſe of it in the preſent inſtance; though I had taken every precaution that he ſhould not have cauſe to be jealous of the Canadians. There

was

was not, at this time, the leaſt appearance of ſnow on the oppoſite mountains, though they were almoſt covered with it when we paſſed before. Set two nets, and at eleven o'clock at night the men and Indians returned. They had been to their firſt encampment, where there were four fires, and which had been quitted a ſhort time before; ſo that they were obliged to make the circuit of ſeveral ſmall lakes, which the natives croſs with their canoes. This encampment was on the borders of a lake which was too large for them to venture round it, ſo that they did not proceed any further. They ſaw ſeveral beavers and beaver lodges in thoſe ſmall lakes. They killed one of theſe animals whoſe fur began to get long, a ſure indication that the fall of the year approaches. They alſo ſaw many old tracks of the mooſe and rein-deer. This is the time when the rein-deer leave the plains to come to the woods, as the muſquitoes begin to diſappear; I, therefore, apprehended that we ſhould not find a ſingle Indian on the river ſide, as they would be in or about the mountains ſetting ſnares to take them. 1789. Auguſt.

We proceeded with a ſtrong Weſterly wind, at four this morning, the weather being cloudy and cold. At twelve it cleared up and became fine: the current alſo increaſed. The water had fallen ſo much ſince our paſſage down the river, that here, as in other places, we diſcovered many ſhoals which were not then viſible. We killed ſeveral geeſe of a larger ſize than thoſe which we had generally ſeen. Several Indian encampments were ſeen along the river, and we landed at eight for the night. Monday 3.

At four in the morning we renewed our courſe, when it was fine and calm. Tueſday 4.

1789. August. calm. The night had been cold and a very heavy dew had fallen. At nine we were obliged to land in order to gum the canoe, when the weather became extremely warm. Numerous tracks of rein deer appeared on the ſide of the river. At half paſt five we took our ſtation for the night, and ſet the nets. The current was very ſtrong all day, and we found it very difficult to walk along the beach, from the large ſtones which were ſcattered over it.

Wedneſ. 5. We raiſed our nets but had not the good fortune to take a ſingle fiſh. The water was now become ſo low that the eddy currents would not admit of ſetting them. The current had not relaxed its ſtrength; and the difficulty of walking along the beach was continued. The air was now become ſo cold, that our exerciſe, violent as it was, ſcarce kept us warm. We paſſed ſeveral points which we ſhould not have accompliſhed, if the canoe had been loaded. We were very much fatigued, and at ſix were glad to conclude our toilſome march. The Indians killed two geeſe. The women who did not quit the canoe, were continually employed in making ſhoes of mooſe-ſkin, for the men, as a pair did not laſt more than a day.

Thurſday 6. The rain prevented us from proceeding till half paſt ſix, when we had a ſtrong aft wind, which, aided by the paddles, drove us on at a great rate. We encamped at ſix to wait for our Indians, whom we had not ſeen ſince the morning; and at half paſt ſeven they arrived very much diſſatisfied with their day's journey. Two days had now elapſed ſince we had ſeen the leaſt appearance of Indian habitations.

Friday 7. We embarked at half paſt three, and ſoon after perceived two rein-

deer

deer on the beach before us. We accordingly checked our courſe; but our Indians, in contending who ſhould be the firſt to get near theſe animals, alarmed and loſt them. We, however, killed a female rein-deer, and from the wounds in her hind-legs, it was ſuppoſed that ſhe had been purſued by wolves, who had devoured her young one: her udder was full of milk, and one of the young Indians poured it among ſome boiled corn, which he ate with great delight, eſteeming it a very delicious food. At five in the afternoon we ſaw an animal running along the beach, but could not determine, whether it was a grey fox or a dog. In a ſhort time we went aſhore for the night, at the entrance of a ſmall river, as I thought there might be ſome natives in the vicinity of the place. I ordered my hunters to put their fuzees in order, and gave them ammunition to proceed on an hunting party the next day; they were alſo inſtructed to diſcover if there were any natives in the neighbouring mountains. I found a ſmall canoe at the edge of the woods, which contained a paddle and a bow: it had been repaired this ſpring, and the workmanſhip of the bark excelled any that I had yet ſeen. We ſaw ſeveral encampments in the courſe of the day. The current of the river was very ſtrong, and along the points equal to rapids. 1789. Auguſt.

The rain was very violent throughout the night, and continued till the afternoon of this day, when the weather began to clear, with a ſtrong, cold, and Weſterly wind. At three the Indians proceeded on the hunting expedition, and at eight they returned without having met with the leaſt ſucceſs; though they ſaw numerous tracks of the rein-deer. They came to an old beaten road, which one of them followed Saturday 8.

1789. August. for ſome time; but it did not appear to have been lately frequented. The rain now returned and continued till the morning.

Sunday 9. We renewed our voyage at half paſt three, the weather being cold and cloudy; but at ten it became clear and moderate. We ſaw another canoe at the outſide of the wood, and one of the Indians killed a dog, which was in a meagre, emaciated condition. We perceived various places where the natives had made their fires; for theſe people reſide but a ſhort time near the river, and remove from one bank to the other, as it ſuits their purpoſes. We ſaw a path which was connected with another on the oppoſite ſide of the river. The water had riſen conſiderably ſince laſt night, and there had been a ſtrong current throughout the day. At ſeven we made to the ſhore and encamped.

Monday 10. At three this morning we returned to our canoe; the weather fine and clear, with a light wind from the South-Eaſt. The Indians were before us in purſuit of game. At ten we landed oppoſite to the mountains which we had paſſed on the ſecond of the laſt month, in order to aſcertain the variation of the compaſs at this place; but this was accompliſhed in a very imperfect manner, as I could not depend on my watch. One of the hunters joined us here, fatigued and unſucceſsful. As theſe mountains are the laſt of any conſiderable magnitude on the South-Weſt ſide of the river, I ordered my men to croſs to that ſide of it, that I might aſcend one of them. It was near four in the afternoon when I landed, and I loſt no time in proceeding to the attainment of my object. I was accompanied only by a young Indian, as the curioſity of my

my people was ſubdued by the fatigue they had undergone; and we ſoon had reaſon to believe that we ſhould pay dearly for the indulgence of our own. The wood, which was chiefly of ſpruce firs, was ſo thick that it was with great difficulty we made our way through it. When we had walked upwards of an hour, the under-wood decreaſed, while the white birch and poplar were the largeſt and talleſt of their kind that I had ever ſeen. The ground now began to riſe, and was covered with ſmall pines, and at length we got the firſt view of the mountains ſince we had left the canoe; as they appeared to be no nearer to us, though we had been walking for three hours, than when we had ſeen them from the river, my companion expreſſed a very great anxiety to return; his ſhoes and leggins were torn to pieces, and he was alarmed at the idea of paſſing through ſuch bad roads during the night. I perſiſted, however, in proceeding, with a determination to paſs the night on the mountains and return on the morrow. As we approached them, the ground was quite marſhy, and we waded in water and graſs up to the knees, till we came within a mile of them, when I ſuddenly ſunk up to my arm-pits, and it was with ſome difficulty that I extricated myſelf from this diſagreeable ſituation. I now found it impoſſible to proceed: to croſs this marſhy ground in a ſtraight line was impracticable; and it extended ſo far to the right and left, that I could not attempt to make the circuit: I therefore determined to return to the canoe, and arrived there about midnight, very much fatigued with this fruitleſs journey. 1789. Auguſt.

We obſerved ſeveral tracks along the beach, and an encampment at the edge of the woods, which appeared to be five or ſix days old. We ſhould Tueſday 11.

1789. August. should have continued our route along this ſide of the river, but we had not ſeen our hunters ſince yeſterday morning. We accordingly embarked before three, and at five traverſed the river, when we ſaw two of them coming down in ſearch of us. They had killed no other animals than one beaver, and a few hares. According to their account, the woods were ſo thick that it was impoſſible to follow the game through them. They had ſeen ſeveral of the natives encampments, at no great diſtance from the river; and it was their opinion that they had diſcovered us in our paſſage down it, and had taken care to avoid us; which accounted for the ſmall number we had ſeen on our return.

I requeſted the Engliſh chief to return with me to the other ſide of the river, in order that he might proceed to diſcover the natives, whoſe tracks and habitations we had ſeen there; but he was backward in complying with my deſire, and propoſed to ſend the young men; but I could not truſt to them, and at the ſame time was become rather doubtful of him. They were ſtill afraid leſt I ſhould obtain ſuch accounts of the other river as would induce me to travel overland to it, and that they ſhould be called upon to accompany me. I was, indeed, informed by one of my own people, that the Engliſh chief, his wives and companions, had determined to leave me on this ſide of the Slave Lake, in order to go to the country of the Beaver Indians; and that about the middle of the winter he would return to that lake, where he had appointed to meet ſome of his relations, who, during the laſt ſpring, had been engaged in war.

We now traverſed the river, and continued to track the Indians till paſt twelve, when we loſt all traces of them; in conſequence, as we imagined,

gined, of their having croſſed to the Eaſtern ſide. We ſaw ſeveral dogs on both ſhores; and one of the young Indians killed a wolf, which the men ate with great ſatisfaction: we ſhot, alſo, fifteen young geeſe that were now beginning to fly. It was eight when we took our evening ſtation, having loſt four hours in making our traverſes. There was no interruption of the fine weather during the courſe of this day. 1789. Auguſt.

We proceeded on our voyage at three this morning, and diſpatched the two young Indians acroſs the river, that we might not miſs any of the natives that ſhould be on the banks of it. We ſaw many places where fires had been lately made along the beach, as well as fire running in the woods. At four we arrived at an encampment which had been left this morning. Their tracks were obſervable in ſeveral places in the woods, and as it might be preſumed that they could not be at any great diſtance, it was propoſed to the chief to accompany me in ſearch of them. We accordingly, though with ſome heſitation on his part, penetrated ſeveral miles into the woods, but without diſcovering the objects of our reſearch. The fire had ſpread all over the country, and had burned about three inches of the black, light ſoil, which covered a body of cold clay, that was ſo hard as not to receive the leaſt impreſſion of our feet. At ten we returned from our unſucceſsful excurſion. In the mean time the hunters had killed ſeven geeſe. There were ſeveral ſhowers of rain, accompanied with guſts of wind and thunder. The nets had been ſet during our abſence. Wedneſ. 12.

The nets were taken up, but not one fiſh was found in them; and at half Thurſd. 13.

1789. Auguſt. half paſt three we continued our route, with very favourable weather. We paſſed ſeveral places, where fires had been made by the natives, and many tracks were perceptible along the beach. At ſeven we were oppoſite the iſland where our Pemmican had been concealed: two of the Indians were accordingly diſpatched in ſearch of it, and it proved very acceptable, as it rendered us more independent of the proviſions which were to be obtained by our fowling pieces, and qualified us to get out of the river without that delay which our hunters would otherwiſe have required. In a ſhort time we perceived a ſmoke on the ſhore to the South-Weſt, at the diſtance of three leagues, which did not appear to proceed from any running fire. The Indians, who were a little way ahead of us, did not diſcover them, being engaged in the purſuit of a flock of geeſe, at which they fired ſeveral ſhots, when the ſmoke immediately diſappeared; and in a ſhort time we ſaw ſeveral of the natives run along the ſhore, ſome of whom entered their canoes. Though we were almoſt oppoſite to them, we could not croſs the river without going further up it, from the ſtrength of the current; I therefore ordered our Indians to make every poſſible exertion, in order to ſpeak with them, and wait our arrival. But as ſoon as our ſmall canoe ſtruck off, we could perceive the poor affrighted people haſten to the ſhore, and after drawing their canoes on the beach, hurry into the woods. It was paſt ten before we landed at the place where they had deſerted their canoes, which were four in number. They were ſo terrified that they had left ſeveral articles on the beach. I was very much diſpleaſed with my Indians, who inſtead of ſeeking the natives, were dividing their property. I rebuked the Engliſh chief with ſome ſeverity for his conduct, and immediately ordered him, his young men, and my own people, to

go

go in ſearch of the fugitives, but their fears had made them too nimble for us, and we could not overtake them. We ſaw ſeveral dogs in the woods, and ſome of them followed us to our canoe. 1789. Auguſt.

The Engliſh chief was very much diſpleaſed at my reproaches, and expreſſed himſelf to me in perſon to that effect. This was the very opportunity which I wanted, to make him acquainted with my diſſatisfaction for ſome time paſt. I ſtated to him that I had come a great way, and at a very conſiderable expence, without having obtained the object of my wiſhes, and that I ſuſpected he had concealed from me a principal part of what the natives had told him reſpecting the country, leſt he ſhould be obliged to follow me: that his reaſon for not killing game, &c. was his jealouſy, which likewiſe prevented him from looking after the natives as he ought; and that we had never given him any cauſe for any ſuſpicions of us. Theſe ſuggeſtions irritated him in a very high degree, and he accuſed me of ſpeaking ill words to him; he denied the charge of jealouſy, and declared that he did not conceal any thing from us; and that as to the ill ſucceſs of their hunting, it aroſe from the nature of the country, and the ſcarcity, which had hitherto appeared, of animals in it. He concluded by informing me that he would not accompany me any further; that though he was without ammunition, he could live in the ſame manner as the ſlaves, (the name given to the inhabitants of that part of the country), and that he would remain among them. His harangue was ſucceeded by a loud and bitter lamentation; and his relations aſſiſted the vociferations of his grief; though they ſaid that their tears flowed for their dead friends. I did not interrupt their grief for two hours, but as I could not well do without them, I was at length obliged to ſooth it, and

1789. August. induce the chief to change his reſolution, which he did, but with great apparent reluctance; when we embarked as we had hitherto done.

The articles which the fugitives had left behind them, on the preſent occaſion, were bows, arrows, ſnares for mooſe and rein-deer, and for hares; to theſe may be added a few diſhes, made of bark, ſome ſkins of the marten and the beaver, and old beaver robes, with a ſmall robe made of the ſkin of the lynx. Their canoes were coarſely made of the bark of the ſpruce-fir, and will carry two or three people. I ordered my men to remove them to the ſhade, and gave moſt of the other articles to the young Indians. The Engliſh chief would not accept of any of them. In the place, and as the purchaſe of them, I left ſome cloth, ſome ſmall knives, a file, two fire-ſteels, a comb, rings, with beads and awls. I alſo ordered a marten ſkin to be placed on a proper mould, and a beaver ſkin to be ſtretched on a frame, to which I tied a ſcraper. The Indians were of opinion that all theſe articles would be loſt, as the natives were ſo much frightened that they would never return. Here we loſt ſix hours; and on our quitting the place, three of the dogs which I have already mentioned followed us along the beach.

We pitched our tents at half paſt eight, at the entrance of the river of the mountain; and while the people were unloading the canoe, I took a walk along the beach, and on the ſhoals, which being uncovered ſince we paſſed down, by the ſinking of the waters, were now white with a ſaline ſubſtance. I ſent for the Engliſh chief to ſup with me, and a dram or two diſpelled all his heart-burning and diſcontent. He informed me that it was a cuſtom with the Chepewyan chiefs to go to war after they had

had ſhed tears, in order to wipe away the diſgrace attached to ſuch a feminine weakneſs, and that in the enſuing ſpring he ſhould not fail to execute his deſign; at the ſame time he declared his intention to continue with us as long as I ſhould want him. I took care that he ſhould carry ſome liquid conſolation to his lodge, to prevent the return of his chagrin. The weather was fine, and the Indians killed three geeſe. 1789. August.

At a quarter before four this morning, we returned to our canoe, and went about two miles up the river of the mountains. Fire was in the ground on each ſide of it. In traverſing, I took ſoundings, and found five, four and an half, and three and an half fathoms water. Its ſtream was very muddy, and formed a cloudy ſtreak along the water of the great river, on the Weſt ſide to the Eaſtern rapid, where the waters of the two rivers at length blend in one. It was impoſſible not to conſider it as an extraordinary circumſtance, that the current of the former river ſhould not incorporate with that of the latter, but flow, as it were, in diſtinct ſtreams at ſo great a diſtance, and till the contracted ſtate of the channel unites them. We paſſed ſeveral encampments of the natives, and a river which flowed in from the North, that had the appearance of being navigable. We concluded our voyage of this day at half paſt five in the afternoon. There were plenty of berries, which my people called *poires*: they are of a purple hue, ſomewhat bigger than a pea, and of a luſcious taſte; there were alſo gooſeberries, and a few ſtrawberries. Friday 14.

We continued our courſe from three in the morning till half paſt five in the afternoon. We ſaw ſeveral encampments along the beach, till it became too narrow to admit them; when the banks roſe into a conſider- Saturday 15.

1789. Auguſt. able degree of elevation, and there were more eddy currents. The Indians killed twelve geeſe, and berries were collected in great abundance. The weather was ſultry throughout the day.

Sunday 16. We continued our voyage at a quarter before four, and in five hours paſſed the place where we had been ſtationed on the 13th of June. Here the river widened, and its ſhores became flat. The land on the North ſide is low, compoſed of a black ſoil, mixed with ſtones, but agreeably covered with the aſpen, the poplar, the white birch, the ſpruce fir, &c. The current was ſo moderate, that we proceeded upon it almoſt as faſt as in dead water. At twelve we paſſed an encampment of three fires, which was the only one we ſaw in the courſe of the day. The weather was the ſame as yeſterday.

Monday 17. We proceeded at half paſt three; and ſaw three ſucceſſive encampments. From the peculiar ſtructure of the huts, we imagined that ſome of the Red-Knife Indians had been in this part of the country, though it is not uſual for them to come this way. I had laſt night ordered the young Indians to precede us, for the purpoſe of hunting, and at ten we overtook them. They had killed five young ſwans; and the Engliſh chief preſented us with an eagle, three cranes, a ſmall beaver, and two geeſe. We encamped at ſeven this evening on the ſame ſpot which had been our reſting-place on the 29th of June.

Tueſday 18. At four this morning I equipped all the Indians for an hunting excurſion, and ſent them onward, as our ſtock of proviſion was nearly exhauſted. We followed at half paſt ſix, and croſſed over to the North ſhore,

ſhore, where the land is low and ſcarcely viſible in the horizon. It was near twelve when we arrived. I now got an obſervation, when it was 61. 33. North latitude. We were near five miles to the North of the main channel of the river. The freſh tracks and beds of buffaloes were very perceptible. Near this place a river flowed in from the Horn mountains which are at no great diſtance. We landed at five in the afternoon, and before the canoe was unloaded, the Engliſh chief arrived with the tongue of a cow, or female buffalo, when four men and the Indians were diſpatched for the fleſh; but they did not return till it was dark, with five geeſe. They informed me, that they had ſeen ſeveral human tracks in the ſand on the oppoſite iſland. The fine weather continued without interruption. 1789. Auguſt.

The Indians were again ſent forward in purſuit of game: and ſome time being employed in gumming the canoe, we did not embark till half paſt five, and at nine we landed to wait the return of the hunters. I here found the variation of the compaſs to be about twenty degrees Eaſt. Wedneſ. 19.

The people made themſelves paddles and repaired the canoe. It is an extraordinary circumſtance for which I do not pretend to account, that there is ſome peculiar quality in the water of this river, which corrodes wood, from the deſtructive effect it had on the paddles. The hunters arrived at a late hour without having ſeen any large animals. Their booty conſiſted only of three ſwans and as many geeſe. The women were employed in gathering cranberries and crowberries, which were found in great abundance.

We

1789. Auguſt. Thurſday 20. We embarked at four o'clock, and took the North ſide of the channel, though the current was on that ſide much ſtronger, in order to take a view of the river, which had been mentioned to me in our paſſage downwards, as flowing from the country of the Beaver Indians, and which fell in hereabouts. We could not, however, diſcover it, and it is probable that the account was referable to the river which we had paſſed on Tueſday. The current was very ſtrong, and we croſſed over to an iſland oppoſite to us; here it was ſtill more impetuous, and aſſumed the hurry of a rapid. We found an awl and a paddle on the ſide of the water; the former we knew to belong to the Kniſtineaux: I ſuppoſed it to be the chief Merde-d'ours and his party, who went to war laſt ſpring, and had taken this route on their return to Athabaſca. Nor is it improbable that they may have been the cauſe that we ſaw ſo few of the natives on the banks of this river. The weather was raw and cloudy, and formed a very unpleaſant contraſt to the warm, ſunny days which immediately preceded it. We took up our abode for the night at half paſt ſeven, on the Northern ſhore, where the adjacent country is both low and flat. The Indians killed five young ſwans, and a beaver. There was an appearance of rain.

Friday 21. The weather was cold, with a ſtrong Eaſterly wind and frequent ſhowers, ſo that we were detained in our ſtation. In the afternoon the Indians got on the track of a mooſe-deer, but were not ſo fortunate as to overtake it.

Saturday 22. The wind veered round to the Weſtward, and continued to blow ſtrong and cold. We, however, renewed our voyage, and, in three hours

hours reached the entrance of the Slave Lake, under half ſail; with the paddle, it would have taken us at leaſt eight hours. The Indians did not arrive till four hours after us; but the wind was ſo violent, that it was not expedient to venture into the lake; we therefore ſet a net and encamped for the night. The women gathered large quantities of the fruit, already mentioned, called Pathagomenan, and cranberries, crowberries, mooſeberries, &c. The Indians killed two ſwans and three geeſe. 1789. August.

The net produced but five ſmall pike, and at five we embarked, and entered the lake by the ſame channel through which we had paſſed from it. The South-Weſt ſide would have been the ſhorteſt, but we were not certain of there being plenty of fiſh along the coaſt, and we were ſure of finding abundance of them in the courſe we preferred. Beſides, I expected to find my people at the place where I left them, as they had received orders to remain there till the fall. Sunday 23.

We paddled a long way into a deep bay to get the wind, and having left our maſt behind us, we landed to cut another. We then hoiſted ſail and were driven on at a great rate. At twelve the wind and ſwell were augmented to ſuch a degree, that our under yard broke, but luckily the maſt thwart reſiſted, till we had time to faſten down the yard with a pole, without lowering ſail. We took in a large quantity of water, and had our maſt given way, in all probability, we ſhould have filled and ſunk. Our courſe continued to be very dangerous, along a flat lee-ſhore, without being able to land till three in the afternoon. Two men were continually employed in bailing out the water which we took in on all ſides. We fortunately doubled a point that ſcreened us from the wind

1789. August. wind and ſwell, and encamped for the night, in order to wait for our Indians. We then ſet our nets, made a yard and maſt, and gummed the canoe. On viſiting the nets, we found ſix white fiſh, and two pike. The women gathered cranberries and crowberries in great plenty; and as the night came on the weather became more moderate.

Monday 24. Our nets this morning produced fourteen white fiſh, ten pikes, and a couple of trouts. At five we embarked with a light breeze from the South, when we hoiſted ſail, and proceeded ſlowly, as our Indians had not come up with us. At eleven we went on ſhore to prepare the kettle, and dry the nets; at one we were again on the water. At four in the afternoon we perceived a large canoe with a ſail, and two ſmall ones ahead; we ſoon came up with them, when they proved to be M. Le Roux and an Indian, with his family, who were on an hunting party, and had been out twenty five days. It was his intention to have gone as far as the river, to leave a letter for me, to inform me of his ſituation. He had ſeen no more Indians where I had left him; but had made a voyage to Lac la Marte, where he met eighteen ſmall canoes of the Slave Indians, from whom he obtained five packs of ſkins, which were principally thoſe of the marten. There were four Beaver Indians among them, who had bartered the greateſt part of the abovementioned articles with them, before his arrival. They informed him that their relations had more ſkins, but that they were afraid to venture with them, though they had been informed that people were to come with goods to barter for them. He gave theſe people a pair of ice chiſels each, and other articles, and ſent them away to conduct their friends to the Slave Lake, where he was to remain during the ſucceeding winter.

We

We ſet three nets, and in a ſhort time caught twenty fiſh of different kinds. In the duſk of the evening the Engliſh chief arrived with a moſt pitiful account that he had like to have been drowned in trying to follow us; and that the other men had alſo a very narrow eſcape. Their canoe, he ſaid, had broken on the ſwell, at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, but as it was flat, they had with his aſſiſtance been able to ſave themſelves. He added, that he left them lamenting, leſt they ſhould not overtake me, if I did not wait for them: he alſo expreſſed his apprehenſions that they would not be able to repair their canoe. This evening I gave my men ſome rum to cheer them after their fatigues. 1789. Auguſt.

We roſe this morning at a late hour, when we viſited the nets, which produced but few fiſh: my people, indeed, partook of the ſtores of M. Le Roux. At eleven the young Indians arrived, and reproached me for having left them ſo far behind. They had killed two ſwans, and brought me one of them. The wind was Southerly throughout the day, and too ſtrong for us to depart, as we were at the foot of a grand traverſe. At noon I had an obſervation, which gave 61. 29. North latitude. Such was the ſtate of the weather, that we could not viſit our nets. In the afternoon the ſky darkened, and there was lightning, accompanied with loud claps of thunder. The wind alſo veered round to the Weſtward, and blew an hurricane. Tueſday 25.

It rained throughout the night, and till eight in the morning, without any alteration in the wind. The Indians went on an hunting excurſion, but returned altogether without ſucceſs in the evening. One of them was ſo unfortunate as to miſs a mooſe-deer. In the afternoon there were heavy ſhowers, with thunder, &c. Wedneſ. 26.

1789. August. Thurſd. 27. We embarked before four, and hoiſted ſail. At nine we landed to dreſs victuals, and wait for M. Le Roux and the Indians. At eleven we proceeded with fine and calm weather. At four in the afternoon a light breeze ſprang up to the Southward, to which we ſpread our ſail, and at half paſt five in the afternoon went on ſhore for the night. We then ſet our nets. The Engliſh chief and his people being quite exhauſted with fatigue, he this morning expreſſed his deſire to remain behind, in order to proceed to the country of the Beaver Indians, engaging at the ſame time that he would return to Athabaſca in the courſe of the winter.

Friday 28. It blew very hard throughout the night, and this morning, ſo that we found it a buſineſs of ſome difficulty to get to our nets; our trouble, however, was repaid by a conſiderable quantity of white fiſh, trout, &c. Towards the afternoon the wind increaſed. Two of the men who had been gathering berries ſaw two mooſe-deer, with the tracks of buffaloes and rein-deer. About ſun-ſet we heard two ſhots, and ſaw a fire on the oppoſite ſide of the bay; we accordingly made a large fire alſo, that our poſition might be determined. When we were all gone to bed, we heard the report of a gun very near us, and in a very ſhort time the Engliſh chief preſented himſelf drenched with wet, and in much apparent confuſion informed me that the canoe with his companions was broken to pieces; and that they had loſt their fowling pieces, and the fleſh of a rein-deer, which they had killed this morning. They were, he ſaid, at a very ſhort diſtance from us; and at the ſame time requeſted that fire might be ſent to them, as they were ſtarving with cold. They and his women, however, ſoon joined us, and were immediately accommodated with dry clothes.

I ſent

I ſent the Indians on an hunting party, but they returned without ſucceſs; and they expreſſed their determination not to follow me any further, from their apprehenſion of being drowned. 1789. Auguſt. Saturday 29.

We embarked at one this morning, and took from the nets a large trout, and twenty white fiſh. At ſun-riſe a ſmart aft breeze ſprang up, which wafted us to M. Le Roux's houſe by two in the afternoon. It was late before he and our Indians arrived; when, according to a promiſe which I had made the latter, I gave them a plentiful equipment of iron ware, ammunition, tobacco, &c. as a recompence for the toil and inconvenience they had ſuſtained with me. Sunday 30.

I propoſed to the Engliſh chief to proceed to the country of the Beaver Indians, and bring them to diſpoſe of their peltries to M. Le Roux, whom I intended to leave there the enſuing winter. He had already engaged to be at Athabaſca, in the month of March next, with plenty of furs.

I ſat up all night to make the neceſſary arrangements for the embarkation of this morning, and to prepare inſtructions for M. Le Roux. We obtained ſome proviſions here, and parted from him at five, with fine calm weather. It ſoon, however, became neceſſary to land on a ſmall iſland, to ſtop the leakage of the canoe, which had been occaſioned by the ſhot of an arrow under the water mark, by ſome Indian children. While this buſineſs was proceeding, we took the opportunity of dreſſing ſome fiſh. At twelve the wind ſprang up from the South-Eaſt, which was in the teeth of our direction, ſo that our progreſs was greatly impeded. I had an obſervation, Monday 31.

1789. September. which gave 62. 15. North latitude. We landed at ſeven in the evening, and pitched our tents.

Tueſday 1. We continued our voyage at five in the morning, the weather calm and fine, and paſſed the Iſle à la Cache about twelve, but could not perceive the land, which was ſeen in our former paſſage. On paſſing the Carreboeuf Iſlands, at five in the afternoon, we ſaw land to the South by Weſt, which we thought was the oppoſite ſide of the lake, ſtretching away to a great diſtance. We landed at half paſt ſix in the evening, when there was thunder, and an appearance of change in the weather.

Wedneſ. 2. It rained and blew hard the latter part of the night. At half paſt five the rain ſubſided, when we made a traverſe of twelve miles, and took in a good deal of water. At twelve it became calm, when I had an obſervation, which gave 61. 36. North latitude. At three in the afternoon there was a ſlight breeze from the Weſtward, which ſoon increaſed, when we hoiſted ſail, and took a traverſe of twenty-four miles for the point of the old Fort, where we arrived at ſeven and ſtopped for the night. This traverſe ſhortened our way three leagues; indeed we did not expect to have cleared the lake in ſuch a ſhort time.

Thurſday 3. It blew with great violence throughout the night, and at four in the morning we embarked, when we did not make more than five miles in three hours without ſtopping; notwithſtanding we were ſheltered from the ſwell by a long bank. We now entered the ſmall river, where the wind could have no effect upon us. There were frequent ſhowers in the courſe of the day, and we encamped at ſix in the evening.

The

1789. September. Friday 4.

The morning was dark and cloudy, nevertheleſs we embarked at five; but at ten it cleared up. We ſaw a few fowl, and at ſeven in the evening went on ſhore for the night.

Saturday 5.

The weather continued to be cloudy. At five we proceeded, and at eight it began to rain very hard. In about half an hour we put to ſhore, and were detained for the remaining part of the day.

Sunday 6.

It rained throughout the night, with a ſtrong North wind. Numerous flocks of wild fowl paſſed to the Southward; at ſix in the afternoon, the rain, in ſome meaſure, ſubſided, and we embarked, but it ſoon returned with renewed violence; we nevertheleſs took the advantage of an aft wind, though it coſt us a complete drenching. The hunters killed ſeven geeſe, and we pitched our tents at half paſt ſix in the evening.

Monday 7.

We were on the water at five this morning, with an head-wind, accompanied by ſucceſſive ſhowers. At three in the afternoon we ran the canoe on a ſtump, and it filled with water before ſhe could be got to land. Two hours were employed in repairing her, and at ſeven in the evening we took our ſtation for the night.

Tueſday 8.

We renewed our voyage at half paſt four in a thick miſt which laſted till nine, when it cleared away, and fine weather ſucceeded. At three in the afternoon we came to the firſt carrying-place, *Portage des Noyés*, and encamped at the upper end of it to dry our clothes, ſome of which were almoſt rotten.

We

1789. September. Wednesd. 9. We embarked at five in the morning, and our canoe was damaged on the mens' ſhoulders who were bearing it over the carrying-place, called *Portage du Chetique.* The guide repaired her, however, while the other men were employed in carrying the baggage. The canoe was gummed at the carrying-place, named the *Portage de la Montagne.* After having paſſed the carrying places, we encamped at the Dog River, at half paſt four in the afternoon, in a ſtate of great fatigue. The canoe was again gummed, and paddles were made to replace thoſe that had been broken in aſcending the rapids. A ſwan was the only animal we killed throughout the day.

Thurſday 10. There was rain and violent wind during the night: in the morning the former ſubſided and the latter increaſed. At half paſt five we continued our courſe with a North-Weſterly wind. At ſeven we hoiſted ſail: in the forenoon there were frequent ſhowers of rain and hail, and in the afternoon two ſhowers of ſnow: the wind was at this time very ſtrong, and at ſix in the evening we landed at a lodge of Kniſteneaux, conſiſting of three men and five women and children. They were on their return from war, and one of them was very ſick: they ſeparated from the reſt of their party in the enemy's country, from abſolute hunger. After this ſeparation, they met with a family of the hoſtile tribe, whom they deſtroyed. They were entirely ignorant of the fate of their friends, but imagined, that they had returned to the Peace River, or had periſhed for want of food. I gave medicine to the ſick,* and

* This man had conceived an idea, that the people with whom he had been at war, had thrown medicine at him, which had cauſed his preſent complaint, and that he deſpaired of recovery. The natives are ſo ſuperſtitious, that this idea alone was ſufficient to kill him. Of this weakneſs I took advantage;

and a ſmall portion of ammunition to the healthy; which, indeed, they very much wanted, as they had entirely lived for the laſt ſix months on the produce of their bows and arrows. They appeared to have been great ſufferers by their expedition. 1789. September.

It froze hard during the night, and was very cold throughout the day, with an appearance of ſnow. We embarked at half paſt four in the morning, and continued our courſe till ſix in the evening, when we landed for the night at our encampment of the third of June. Friday 11.

The weather was cloudy and alſo very cold. At eight we embarked with a North-Eaſt wind, and entered the Lake of the Hills. About ten, the wind veered to the Weſtward, and was as ſtrong as we could bear it with the high ſail, ſo that we arrived at Chepewyan fort by three o'clock in the afternoon, where we found Mr. Macleod, with five men, buſily employed in building a new houſe. Here, then, we concluded this voyage, which had occupied the conſiderable ſpace of one hundred and two days. Saturday 12.

vantage; and aſſured him, that if he would never more go to war with ſuch poor defenceleſs people, that I would cure him. To this propoſition he readily conſented, and on my giving him medicine, which conſiſted of Turlington's balſam, mixed in water, I declared, that it would loſe its effect, if he was not ſincere in the promiſe that he made me. In ſhort, he actually recovered, was true to his engagements, and on all occaſions manifeſted his gratitude to me.

JOURNAL

OF A

SECOND VOYAGE, &c.

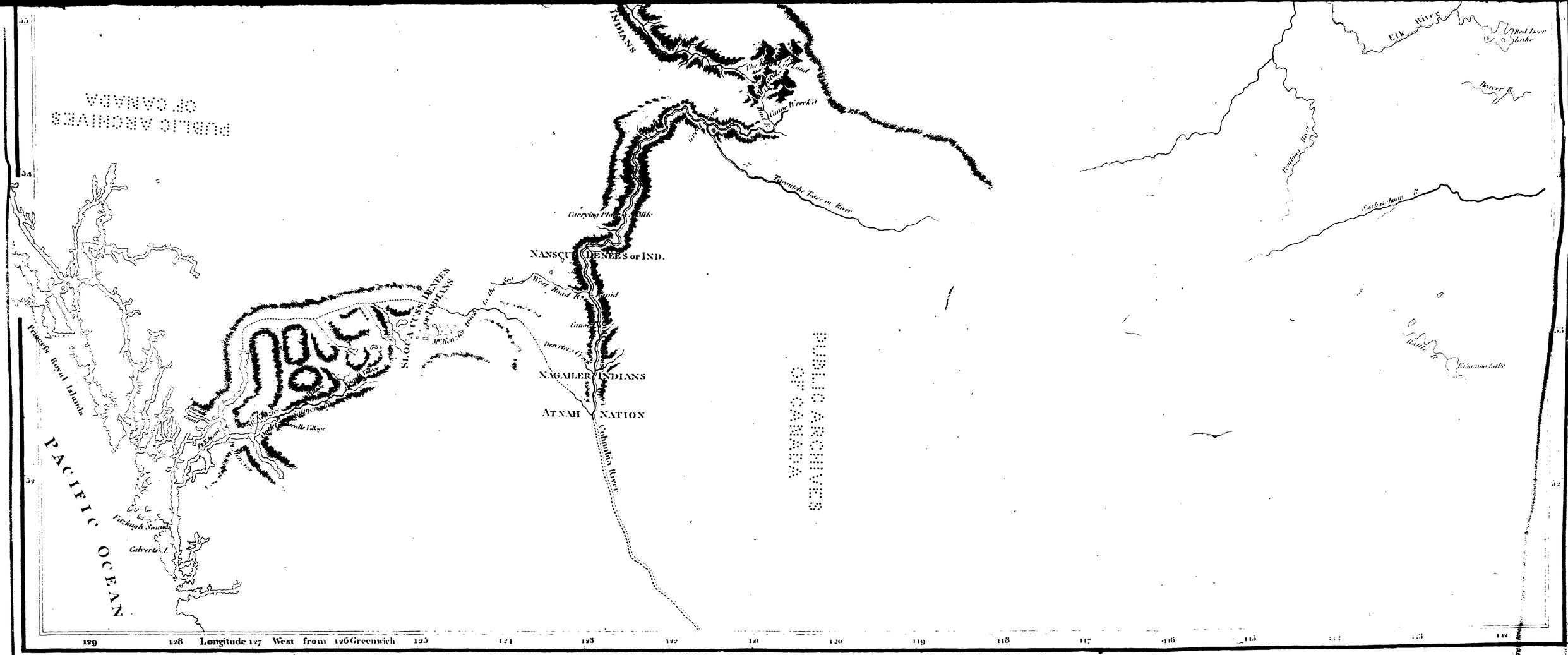
CHAPTER I.

Leave Fort Chepewyan. Proceed to the Peace River. State of the Lakes. Arrive at Peace Point. The reaſon aſſigned for its name. The weather cold. Arrive at the Falls. Deſcription of the country. Land at the Fort, called The Old Eſtabliſhment. The principal building deſtroyed by fire. Courſe of the river. Arrive at another fort. Some account of the natives. Depart from thence. Courſe of the river continued. It divides into two branches. Proceed along the principal one. Land at the place of our winter's reſidence. Account of its circumſtances and inhabitants, &c. Preparations for erecting a fort, &c. &c. Table of the weather. Broke the thermometer. Froſt ſets in. Deſcription of birds.

HAVING made every neceſſary preparation, I left Fort Chepewyan, to proceed up the Peace River. I had reſolved to go as far as our moſt diſtant ſettlement, which would occupy the remaining part of the ſeaſon, 1792. October 10.

A Map of Mackenzie's Track from FORT CHIPEWYAN to the PACIFIC OCEAN in 1793.

PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA



London Published 1st Oct. 1801 by Hounder MacKenzie N°26 North Str. Strand.

1792. October. it being the route by which I propoſed to attempt my next diſcovery, acroſs the mountains from the ſource of that river; for whatever diſtance I could reach this fall, would be a proportionate advancement of my voyage.

In conſequence of this deſign, I left the eſtabliſhment of Fort Chepewyan, in charge of Mr. Roderic Mackenzie, accompanied by two canoes laden with the neceſſary articles for trade: we accordingly ſteered Weſt for one of the branches that communicates with the Peace River, called the Pine River; at the entrance of which we waited for the other canoes, in order to take ſome ſupplies from them, as I had reaſon to apprehend they would not be able to keep up with us. We entered the Peace River at ſeven in the morning of the 12th, taking a Weſterly courſe. It is evident, that all the land between it and the Lake of the Hills, as far as the Elk River, is formed by the quantity of earth and mud, which is carried down by the ſtreams of thoſe two great rivers. In this ſpace there are ſeveral lakes. The lake, Clear Water, which is the deepeſt, Lake Vaſſieu, and the Athabaſca Lake, which is the largeſt of the three, and whoſe denomination in the Kniſtineaux language, implies, a flat low, ſwampy country, ſubject to inundations. The two laſt lakes are now ſo ſhallow, that, from the cauſe juſt mentioned, there is every reaſon to expect, that in a few years, they will have exchanged their character and become extenſive foreſts.

This country is ſo level, that, at ſome ſeaſons, it is entirely overflowed, which accounts for the periodical influx and reflux of the waters between the Lake of the Hills and the Peace River.

On

On the 13th at noon we came to the Peace Point; from which, according to the report of my interpreter, the river derives its name; it was the ſpot where the Kniſteneaux and Beaver Indians ſettled their diſpute; the real name of the river and point being that of the land which was the object of contention. 1792. October.

When this country was formerly invaded by the Kniſteneaux, they found the Beaver Indians inhabiting the land about Portage la Loche; and the adjoining tribe were thoſe whom they called ſlaves. They drove both theſe tribes before them; when the latter proceeded down the river from the Lake of the Hills, in conſequence of which that part of it obtained the name of the Slave River. The former proceeded up the river; and when the Kniſteneaux made peace with them, this place was ſettled to be the boundary.

We continued our voyage, and I did not find the current ſo ſtrong in this river as I had been induced to believe, though this, perhaps, was not the period to form a correct notion of that circumſtance, as well as of the breadth, the water being very low; ſo that the ſtream has not appeared to me to be in any part that I have ſeen, more than a quarter of a mile wide.

The weather was cold and raw, ſo as to render our progreſs unpleaſant; at the ſame time we did not relax in our expedition, and, at three on the afternoon of the 17th we arrived at the falls. The river at this place is about four hundred yards broad, and the fall about twenty feet high: the firſt carrying place is eight hundred paces in length, and the

1792. October. laſt, which is about a mile onwards, is ſomething more than two thirds of that diſtance. Here we found ſeveral fires, from which circumſtance we concluded, that the canoes deſtined for this quarter, which left the fort ſome days before us, could not be far a-head. The weather continued to be very cold, and the ſnow that fell during the night was ſeveral inches deep.

On the morning of the 18th, as ſoon as we got out of the draught of the fall, the wind being at North-Eaſt, and ſtrong in our favour, we hoiſted ſail, which carried us on at a conſiderable rate againſt the current, and paſſed the Loon River before twelve o'clock; from thence we ſoon came along the Grande Iſle, at the upper end of which we encamped for the night. It now froze very hard: indeed, it had ſo much the appearance of winter, that I began to entertain ſome alarm leſt we might be ſtopped by the ice: we therefore ſet off at three o'clock in the morning of the 19th, and about eight we landed at the Old Eſtabliſhment.

The paſſage to this place from Athabaſca having been ſurveyed by M. Vandrieul, formerly in the Company's ſervice, I did not think it neceſſary to give any particular attention to it; I ſhall, however, juſt obſerve, that the courſe in general from the Lake of the Hills to the falls, is Weſterly, and as much to the North as the South of it, from thence it is about Weſt-South-Weſt to this fort.

The country in general is low from our entrance of the river to the falls, and with the exception of a few open parts covered with graſs, it is clothed with wood. Where the banks are very low

the

the ſoil is good, being compoſed of the ſediment of the river and putrefied leaves and vegetables. Where they are more elevated, they diſplay a face of yellowiſh clay, mixed with ſmall ſtones. On a line with the falls, and on either ſide of the river, there are ſaid to be very extenſive plains, which afford paſture to numerous herds of buffaloes. Our people a-head ſlept here laſt night, and, from their careleſſneſs, the fire was communicated to and burned down, the large houſe, and was proceeding faſt to the ſmaller buildings when we arrived to extinguiſh it. 1792. October.

We continued our voyage, the courſe of the river being South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a quarter, South by Eaſt one mile, South-Weſt by South three miles, Weſt by South one mile, South-South-Weſt two miles, South four miles, South-Weſt ſeven miles and an half, South by Weſt one mile, North-North-Weſt two miles and an half, South five miles and a quarter, South-Weſt one mile and an half, North-Eaſt by Eaſt three miles and an half, and South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile.

We overtook Mr. Finlay, with his canoes, who was encamped near the fort of which he was going to take the charge, during the enſuing winter, and made every neceſſary preparative for a becoming appearance on our arrival the following morning. Although I had been ſince the year 1787 in the Athabaſca country, I had never yet ſeen a ſingle native of that part of it which we had now reached.

At ſix o'clock in the morning of the 20th, we landed before the houſe amidſt the rejoicing and firing of the people, who were animated with the proſpect of again indulging themſelves in the luxury of rum, of which they

1792. October. they had been deprived ſince the beginning of May; as it is a practice throughout the North-Weſt, neither to ſell or give any rum to the natives during the ſummer. There was at this time only one chief with his people, the other two being hourly expected with their bands; and on the 21ſt and 22d they all arrived except the war chief and fifteen men. As they very ſoon expreſſed their deſire of the expected regale, I called them together, to the number of forty-two hunters, or men capable of bearing arms, to offer ſome advice, which would be equally advantageous to them and to us, and I ſtrengthened my admonition with a nine gallon caſk of reduced rum and a quantity of tobacco. At the ſame time I obſerved, that as I ſhould not often viſit them, I had inſtanced a greater degree of liberality than they had been accuſtomed to.

The number of people belonging to this eſtabliſhment amounts to about three hundred, of which, ſixty are hunters. Although they appear from their language to be of the ſame ſtock as the Chepewyans, they differ from them in appearance, manners, and cuſtoms, as they have adopted thoſe of their former enemies, the Kniſteneaux: they ſpeak their language, as well as cut their hair, paint, and dreſs like them, and poſſeſs their immoderate fondneſs for liquor and tobacco. This deſcription, however, can be applied only to the men, as the women are leſs adorned even than thoſe of the Chepewyan tribes. We could not obſerve, without ſome degree of ſurprize, the contraſt between the neat and decent appearance of the men, and the naſtineſs of the women. I am diſpoſed, however, to think that this circumſtance is generally owing to the extreme ſubmiſſion and abaſement of the latter: for I obſerved, that one

one of the chiefs allowed two of his wives more liberty and familiarity than were accorded to the others, as well as a more becoming exterior, and their appearance was proportionably pleasing. I shall, however, take a future opportunity to speak more at large on this subject. 1792. October.

There were frequent changes of the weather in the course of the day, and it froze rather hard in the night. The thickness of the ice in the morning was a sufficient notice for me to proceed. I accordingly gave the natives such good counsel as might influence their behaviour, communicated my directions to Mr. Findlay for his future conduct, and took my leave under several vollies of musketry, on the morning of the 23d. I had already dispatched my loaded canoes two days before, with directions to continue their progress without waiting for me. Our course was South-South-East one mile and an half, South three quarters; East seven miles and an half, veering gradually to the West four miles and an half. South-East by South three miles, South-East three miles and an half, East-South-East to Long Point three miles, South-West one mile and a quarter, East by North four miles and three quarters, West three miles and an half, West-South-West one mile, East by South five miles and and an half, South three miles and three quarters, South-East by South three miles, East-South-East three miles, East-North-East one mile, when there was a river that flowed in on the right, East two miles and an half, East-South-East half a mile, South-East by South seven miles and an half, South two miles, South-South-East three miles and an half; in the course of which we passed an island South by West, where a rivulet flowed in on the right, one mile, East one mile and an half, South five miles, South-East by South four miles and an half, South-West one

mile

1792. October. mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt four miles and an half, Weſt-South-Weſt half a mile, South-Weſt ſix miles and three quarters, South-Eaſt by South one mile and an half, South one mile and an half, South-Eaſt by South two miles, South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by South two miles and an half, Eaſt by South one mile and three quarters, South two miles, South-Eaſt one mile and an half, South-South-Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt by South two miles and an half, North-Eaſt three miles, South-Weſt by Weſt ſhort diſtance to the eſtabliſhment of laſt year, Eaſt-North-Eaſt four miles, South-South-Eaſt one mile and three quarters, South half a mile, South-Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South three miles, South-South-Eaſt one mile and three quarters, South by Eaſt four miles and an half, South-Weſt three miles, South by Eaſt two miles, South by Weſt one mile and an half, South-Weſt two miles, South by Weſt four miles and an half, South-Weſt one mile and an half, and South by Eaſt three miles. Here we arrived at the forks of the river; the Eaſtern branch appearing to be not more than half the ſize of the Weſtern one. We purſued the latter, in a courſe South-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles, and landed on the firſt of November at the place which was deſigned to be my winter reſidence: indeed, the weather had been ſo cold and diſagreeable, that I was more than once apprehenſive of our being ſtopped by the ice, and, after all, it required the utmoſt exertions of which my men were capable to prevent it; ſo that on their arrival they were quite exhauſted. Nor were their labours at an end, for there was not a ſingle hut to receive us: it was, however, now in my power to feed and ſuſtain them in a more comfortable manner.

We

We found two men here who had been ſent forward laſt ſpring, for the purpoſe of ſquaring timber for the erection of an houſe, and cutting palliſades, &c. to ſurround it. With them was the principal chief of the place, and about ſeventy men, who had been anxiouſly waiting for our arrival, and received us with every mark of ſatisfaction and regard which they could expreſs. If we might judge from the quantity of powder that was waſted on our arrival, they certainly had not been in want of ammunition, at leaſt during the ſummer. 1792. December.

The banks of the river, from the falls, are in general lofty, except at low woody points, accidentally formed in the manner I have already mentioned: they alſo diſplayed, in all their broken parts, a face of clay, intermixed with ſtone; in ſome places there likewiſe appeared a black mould.

In the ſummer of 1788, a ſmall ſpot was cleared at the Old Eſtabliſhment, which is ſituated on a bank thirty feet above the level of the river, and was ſown with turnips, carrots, and parſnips. The firſt grew to a large ſize, and the others thrived very well. An experiment was alſo made with potatoes and cabbages, the former of which were ſucceſsful; but for want of care the latter failed. The next winter the perſon who had undertaken this cultivation, ſuffered the potatoes, which had been collected for ſeed, to catch the froſt, and none had been ſince brought to this place. There is not the leaſt doubt but the ſoil would be very productive, if a proper attention was given to its preparation. In the fall of the year 1787, when I firſt arrived at Athabaſca, Mr. Pond was ſettled on the banks of the Elk River, where he remained for three years, and had formed as fine a kitchen garden as I ever ſaw in Canada.

1792. December.

In addition to the wood which flouriſhed below the fall, theſe banks produce the cypreſs tree, arrow-wood, and the thorn. On either ſide of the river, though inviſible from it, are extenſive plains, which abound in buffaloes, elks, wolves, foxes, and bears. At a conſiderable diſtance to the Weſtward, is an immenſe ridge of high land or mountains, which take an oblique direction from below the falls, and are inhabited by great numbers of deer, who are ſeldom diſturbed, but when the Indians go to hunt the beaver in thoſe parts; and, being tired of the fleſh of the latter, vary their food with that of the former. This ridge bears the name of the Deer Mountain. Oppoſite to our preſent ſituation, are beautiful meadows, with various animals grazing on them, and groves of poplars irregularly ſcattered over them.

My tent was no ſooner pitched, than I ſummoned the Indians together, and gave each of them about four inches of Brazil tobacco, a dram of ſpirits, and lighted the pipe. As they had been very troubleſome to my predeceſſor, I informed them that I had heard of their miſconduct, and was come among them to inquire into the truth of it. I added alſo that it would be an eſtabliſhed rule with me to treat them with kindneſs, if their behaviour ſhould be ſuch as to deſerve it; but, at the ſame time, that I ſhould be equally ſevere if they failed in thoſe returns which I had a right to expect from them. I then preſented them with a quantity of rum, which I recommended to be uſed with diſcretion; and added ſome tobacco, as a token of peace. They, in return, made me the faireſt promiſes; and, having expreſſed the pride they felt on beholding me in their country, took their leave.

I now

I now proceeded to examine my ſituation; and it was with great ſatisfaction I obſerved that the two men who had been ſent hither ſome time before us, to cut and ſquare timber for our future operations, had employed the intervening period with activity and ſkill. They had formed a ſufficient quantity of palliſades of eighteen feet long, and ſeven inches in diameter, to incloſe a ſquare ſpot of an hundred and twenty feet; they had alſo dug a ditch of three feet deep to receive them; and had prepared timber, planks, &c. for the erection of an houſe. 1792. December.

I was, however, ſo much occupied in ſettling matters with the Indians, and equipping them for their winter hunting, that I could not give my attention to any other object, till the 7th, when I ſet all hands at work to conſtruct the fort, build the houſe, and form ſtore-houſes. On the preceding day the river began to run with ice, which we call the laſt of the navigation. On the 11th we had a South-Weſt wind, with ſnow. On the 16th the ice ſtopped in the other fork, which was not above a league from us, acroſs the intervening neck of land. The water in this branch continued to flow till the 22d, when it was arreſted alſo by the froſt, ſo that we had a paſſage acroſs the river, which would laſt to the latter end of the ſucceeding April. This was a fortunate circumſtance, as we depended for our ſupport upon what the hunters could provide for us, and they had been prevented by the running of the ice from croſſing the river. They now, however, very ſhortly procured us as much freſh meat as we required, though it was for ſome time a toilſome buſineſs to my people, for as there was not yet a ſufficient quantity of ſnow to run ſledges, they were under the neceſſity of loading themſelves with the ſpoils of the chaſe.

1792. December.

On the 27th the froſt was ſo ſevere that the axes of the workmen became almoſt as brittle as glaſs. The weather was very various until the 2d of December, when my Farenheit's thermometer was injured by an accident, which rendered it altogether uſeleſs. The following table, therefore, from the 16th of November, to this unfortunate circumſtance, is the only correct account of the weather which I can offer.

Month and Year.	Date.	Hours A.M.	Hour.	below o.	above o.	Wind.	Weather.	Hour.	below o.	above o.	Wind.	Weather.	Hour P.M.	below o.	above o.	Wind.	Weather.	
1792																		
Nov	16	8½			10			12	0	14			6		15		cloudy	
	17	8½			17		clear	12		20		clear	6		23		ditto	
	18	9			19	ESE		12		21	ESE		6		14	ESE	clear	
	19	8			5	NW		12		12	NW		6		9	NW	ditto	Strong wind.
	20	8½			4	——	ditto	12		14	——	ditto	6		19	——	cloudy	At 10 laſt night 1 below o.
	21	6			19	——		12		25	——		6		23	——		River ſtopped.
	22	9			27	——	cloudy	12		29	——	cloudy	6		28	——	cloudy	Ice drove, and water riſes.
	23	8½			9	N.	clear	12		28	——	clear	6		15	N.		Ice drove again.
	24	8	3			——	ditto	12	0	0	N E.		6	1		N E.	cloudy	
	25	8	14			——	ditto	12	4		——		6	2		——	clear	Snowed laſt night 2 inches.
	26	9	10			N.	ditto	12		2	N.		6	0	0	N.	ditto	
	27	8	2			——	ditto	12		2	——		6		1	S W	ditto	
	28	8	16			——	ditto	12	2		——		6	7		S.	ditto	After dark, over caſt.
	29	7½			4	——	cloudy	12		13	——		6		7	——	ditto	Ditto, a little wind S. W.
	30	9			4	S.		12		13	S.	cloudy	5		16	S.	cloudy	
Dec.	1	9			10	——		12		19	S. E.		5		24	S. E.	ditto	Fell 3 inches ſnow laſt night
	2	9			27	E.												

In this ſituation, removed from all thoſe ready aids which add ſo much to the comfort, and indeed is a principal characteriſtic of civilized life, I was under the neceſſity of employing my judgment and experience in acceſſory circumſtances, by no means connected with the habits of my life, or the enterpriſe in which I was immediately engaged. I was now among a people who had no knowledge whatever of remedial application

tion

tion to thoſe diſorders and accidents to which man is liable in every part of the globe, in the diſtant wilderneſs, as in the peopled city. They had not the leaſt acquaintance with that primitive medicine which conſiſts in an experience of the healing virtues of herbs and plants, and is frequently found among unciviliſed and ſavage nations. This circumſtance now obliged me to be their phyſician and ſurgeon, as a woman with a ſwelled breaſt, which had been lacerated with flint ſtones for the cure of it, preſented herſelf to my attention, and by cleanlineſs, poultices, and healing ſalve, I ſucceeded in producing a cure. One of theſe people alſo, who was at work in the woods, was attacked with a ſudden pain near the firſt joint of his thumb, which diſabled him from holding an axe. On examining his arm, I was aſtoniſhed to find a narrow red ſtripe, about half an inch wide, from his thumb to his ſhoulder; the pain was violent, and accompanied with chillineſs and ſhivering. This was a caſe that appeared to be beyond my ſkill, but it was neceſſary to do ſomething towards relieving the mind of the patient, though I might be unſucceſsful in removing his complaint. I accordingly prepared a kind of volatile liniment of rum and ſoap, with which I ordered his arm to be rubbed, but with little or no effect. He was in a raving ſtate throughout the night, and the red ſtripe not only encreaſed, but was alſo accompanied with the appearance of ſeveral blotches on his body, and pains in his ſtomach: the propriety of taking ſome blood from him now occurred to me, and I ventured, from abſolute neceſſity, to perform that operation for the firſt time, and with an effect that juſtified the treatment. The following night afforded him reſt, and in a ſhort time he regained his former health and activity. 1792. December.

I was

1792. December.

I was very much ſurpriſed on walking in the woods at ſuch an inclement period of the year, to be ſaluted with the ſinging of birds, while they ſeemed by their vivacity to be actuated by the invigorating power of a more genial ſeaſon. Of theſe birds the male was ſomething leſs than the robin; part of his body is of a delicate fawn colour, and his neck, breaſt, and belly, of a deep ſcarlet; the wings are black, edged with fawn colour, and two white ſtripes running acroſs them; the tail is variegated, and the head crowned with a tuft. The female is ſmaller than the male, and of a fawn colour throughout, except on the neck, which is enlivened by an hue of gloſſy yellow. I have no doubt but they are conſtant inhabitants of this climate, as well as ſome other ſmall birds which we ſaw, of a grey colour.

CHAP.

CHAPTER II.

Removed from the tent to the houſe. Build habitations for the people. The hardſhips they ſuffer. Violent hurricane. Singular circumſtances attending it. The commencement of the new year. An Indian cured of a dangerous wound. State of the weather. Curious cuſtoms among the Indians, on the death of a relation. Account of a quarrel. An Indian's reaſoning on it. Murder of one of the Indians. The cauſe of it. Some account of the Rocky Mountain Indians. Curious circumſtance reſpecting a woman in labour, &c. A diſpute between two Indians, which aroſe from gaming. An account of one of their games. Indian ſuperſtition. Mildneſs of the ſeaſon. The Indians prepare ſnow ſhoes. Singular cuſtoms. Further account of their manners. The ſlaviſh ſtate of the women. Appearance of ſpring. Diſpatch canoes with the trade to Fort Chepewyan. Make preparations for the voyage of diſcovery.

1792. Decemb. 23. I THIS day removed from the tent into the houſe which had been erected for me, and ſet all the men to begin the buildings intended for their own habitation. Materials ſufficient to erect a range of five houſes for them, of about ſeventeen by twelve feet, were already collected. It would be conſidered by the inhabitants of a milder climate, as a great evil, to be expoſed to the weather at this rigorous ſeaſon of the year, but theſe people are inured to it, and it is neceſſary to deſcribe in ſome meaſure

1792. December. ſure the hardſhips which they undergo without a murmur, in order to convey a general notion of them.

The men who were now with me, left this place in the beginning of laſt May, and went to the Rainy Lake in canoes, laden with packs of fur, which, from the immenſe length of the voyage, and other concurring circumſtances, is a moſt ſevere trial of patience and perſeverance: there they do not remain a ſufficient time for ordinary repoſe, when they take a load of goods in exchange, and proceed on their return, in a great meaſure, day and night. They had been arrived near two months, and, all that time, had been continually engaged in very toilſome labour, with nothing more than a common ſhed to protect them from the froſt and ſnow. Such is the life which theſe people lead; and is continued with unremitting exertion, till their ſtrength is loſt in premature old age.

The Canadians remarked, that the weather we had on the 25th, 26th, and 27th of this month, denoted ſuch as we might expect in the three ſucceeding months. On the 29th, the wind being at North-Eaſt, and the weather calm and cloudy, a rumbling noiſe was heard in the air like diſtant thunder, when the ſky cleared away in the South-Weſt; from whence there blew a perfect hurricane, which laſted till eight. Soon after it commenced, the atmoſphere became ſo warm that it diſſolved all the ſnow on the ground; even the ice was covered with water, and had the ſame appearance as when it is breaking up in the ſpring. From eight to nine the weather became calm, but immediately after a wind aroſe from the North-Eaſt, with equal violence, with

with clouds, rain, and hail, which continued throughout the night and till the evening of the next day, when it turned to ſnow. One of the people who wintered at Fort Dauphin in the year 1780, when the ſmall-pox firſt appeared there, informed me, that the weather there was of a ſimilar deſcription. 1792, December.

On the firſt day of January, my people, in conformity to the uſual cuſtom, awoke me at the break of day with the diſcharge of fire-arms, with which they congratulated the appearance of the new year. In return, they were treated with plenty of ſpirits, and when there is any flour, cakes are always added to their regales, which was the caſe on the preſent occaſion. 1793. January 1.

On my arrival here laſt fall, I found that one of the young Indians had loſt the uſe of his right hand by the burſting of a gun, and that his thumb had been maimed in ſuch a manner as to hang only by a ſmall ſtrip of fleſh. Indeed, when he was brought to me, his wound was in ſuch an offenſive ſtate, and emitted ſuch a putrid ſmell, that it required all the reſolution I poſſeſſed to examine it. His friends had done every thing in their power to relieve him; but as it conſiſted only in ſinging about him, and blowing upon his hand, the wound, as may be well imagined, had got into the deplorable ſtate in which I found it. I was rather alarmed at the difficulty of the caſe, but as the young man's life was in a ſtate of hazard, I was determined to riſk my ſurgical reputation, and accordingly took him under my care. I immediately formed a poultice of bark, ſtripped from the roots of the ſpruce-fir, which I applied to the wound, having firſt waſhed it with the juice of the

1793. January. bark: this proved a very painful dreſſing: in a few days, however, the wound was clean, and the proud fleſh around it deſtroyed. I wiſhed very much in this ſtate of the buſineſs to have ſeparated the thumb from the hand, which I well knew muſt be effected before the cure could be performed; but he would not conſent to that operation, till, by the application of vitriol, the fleſh by which the thumb was ſuſpended, was ſhrivelled almoſt to a thread. When I had ſucceeded in this object, I perceived that the wound was cloſing rather faſter than I deſired. The ſalve I applied on the occaſion was made of the Canadian balſam, wax, and tallow dropped from a burning candle into water. In ſhort, I was ſo ſucceſsful, that about Chriſtmas my patient engaged in an hunting party, and brought me the tongue of an elk: nor was he finally ungrateful. When he left me I received the warmeſt acknowledgments, both from himſelf, and the relations with whom he departed, for my care of him. I certainly did not ſpare my time or attention on the occaſion, as I regularly dreſſed his wound three times a day, during the courſe of a month.

On the 5th in the morning the weather was calm, clear, and very cold; the wind blew from the South-Weſt, and in the courſe of the afternoon it began to thaw. I had already obſerved at Athabaſca, that this wind never failed to bring us clear mild weather, whereas, when it blew from the oppoſite quarter, it produced ſnow. Here it is much more perceptible, for if it blows hard South-Weſt for four hours, a thaw is the conſequence, and if the wind is at North-Eaſt it brings ſleet and ſnow. To this cauſe it may be attributed, that there is now ſo little ſnow in this part of the world. Theſe warm winds come off the Pacific Ocean, which

which cannot, in a direct line, be very far from us; the diſtance being ſo ſhort, that though they paſs over mountains covered with ſnow, there is not time for them to cool. 1793. January.

There being ſeveral of the natives at the houſe at this time, one of them, who had received an account of the death of his father, proceeded in ſilence to his lodge, and began to fire off his gun. As it was night, and ſuch a noiſe being ſo uncommon at ſuch an hour, eſpecially when it was ſo often repeated, I ſent my interpreter to inquire into the cauſe of it, when he was informed by the man himſelf, that this was a common cuſtom with them on the death of a near relation, and was a warning to their friends not to approach, or intrude upon them, as they were, in conſequence of their loſs, become careleſs of life. The chief, to whom the deceaſed perſon was alſo related, appeared with his war-cap on his head, which is only worn on theſe ſolemn occaſions, or when preparing for battle, and confirmed to me this ſingular cuſtom of firing guns, in order to expreſs their grief for the death of relations and friends.* The women alone indulge in tears on ſuch occaſions; the men conſidering it as a mark of puſillanimity and a want of fortitude to betray any perſonal tokens of ſenſibility or ſorrow.

The Indians informed me, that they had been to hunt at a large lake, called by the Kniſteneaux, the Slave Lake, which derived its name from that of its original inhabitants, who were called Slaves. They repre-

* When they are drinking together, they frequently preſent their guns to each other, when any of the parties have not other means of procuring rum. On ſuch an occaſion they always diſcharge their pieces, as a proof, I imagine, of their being in good order, and to determine the quantity of liquor the may propoſe to get in exchange for them.

1768. January. sented it as a large body of water, and that it lies about one hundred and twenty miles due East from this place. It is well known to the Kniſteneaux, who are among the inhabitants of the plains on the banks of the Saſkatchiwine river; for formerly, when they uſed to come to make war in this country, they came in their canoes to that lake, and left them there; from thence there is a beaten path all the way to the Fork, or Eaſt branch of this river, which was their war-road.

January 10. Among the people who were now here, there were two Rocky Mountain Indians, who declared, that the people to whom we had given that denomination, are by no means entitled to it, and that their country has ever been in the vicinity of our preſent ſituation. They ſaid, in ſupport of their aſſertion, that theſe people were entirely ignorant of thoſe parts which are adjacent to the mountain, as well as the navigation of the river; that the Beaver Indians had greatly encroached upon them, and would ſoon force them to retire to the foot of theſe mountains. They repreſented themſelves as the only real natives of that country then with me: and added, that the country, and that part of the river that intervenes between this place and the mountains, bear much the ſame appearance as that around us; that the former abounds with animals, but that the courſe of the latter is interrupted, near, and in the mountains, by ſucceſſive rapids and conſiderable falls. Theſe men alſo informed me, that there is another great river towards the mid-day ſun, whoſe current runs in that direction, and that the diſtance from it is not great acroſs the mountains.

The natives brought me plenty of furs. The ſmall quantity of ſnow, at this time, was particularly favourable for hunting the beaver, as from

from this circumſtance, thoſe animals could, with the greater facility, be traced from their lodges to their lurking-places. 1793. January.

On the 12th the hunter arrived, having left his mother-in-law, who was lately become a widow with three ſmall children, and in actual labour of a fourth. Her daughter related this circumſtance to the women here, without the leaſt appearance of concern, though ſhe repreſented her as in a ſtate of great danger, which probably might proceed from her being abandoned in this unnatural manner. At the ſame time without any apparent conſciouſneſs of her own barbarous negligence; if the poor abandoned woman ſhould die, ſhe would moſt probably lament her with great outcries, and, perhaps, cut off one or two joints of her fingers as tokens of her grief. The Indians, indeed, conſider the ſtate of a woman in labour as among the moſt trifling occurrences of corporal pain to which human nature is ſubject, and they may be, in ſome meaſure, juſtified in this apparent inſenſibility from the circumſtances of that ſituation among themſelves. It is by no means uncommon in the haſty removal of their camps from one poſition to another, for a woman to be taken in labour, to deliver herſelf in her way, without any aſſiſtance or notice from her aſſociates in the journey, and to overtake them before they complete the arrangements of their evening ſtation, with her newborn babe on her back.

I was this morning threatened with a very unpleaſant event, which, however, I was fortunately enabled to control. Two young Indians being engaged in one of their games, a diſpute enſued, which roſe to ſuch an height, that they drew their knives, and if I had not happened

to

1798. January. to have appeared, they would, I doubt not, have employed them to very bloody purpoſes. So violent was their rage, that after I had turned them both out of the houſe, and ſeverely reprimanded them, they ſtood in the fort for at leaſt half an hour, looking at each other with a moſt vindictive aſpect, and in ſullen ſilence.

The game which produced this ſtate of bitter enmity, is called that of the Platter, from a principal article of it. The Indians play at it in the following manner.

The inſtruments of it conſiſt of a platter, or diſh, made of wood or bark, and ſix round, or ſquare, but flat pieces of metal, wood, or ſtone, whoſe ſides or ſurfaces are of different colours. Theſe are put into the diſh, and after being for ſome time ſhaken together, are thrown into the air, and received again in the diſh with conſiderable dexterity; when, by the number that are turned up of the ſame mark or colour, the game is regulated. If there ſhould be equal numbers, the throw is not reckoned; if two or four, the platter changes hands.

On the 13th, one of theſe people came to me, and preſented in himſelf a curious example of Indian ſuperſtition. He requeſted me to furniſh him with a remedy that might be applied to the joints of his legs and thighs, of which he had, in a great meaſure loſt the uſe for five winters. This affliction he attributed to his cruelty about that time, when having found a wolf with two whelps in an old Beaver lodge, he ſet fire to it and conſumed them.

The

The winter had been ſo mild, that the ſwans had but lately left us, and at this advanced period there was very little ſnow on the ground: it was, however, at this time a foot and a half in depth, in the environs of the eſtabliſhment below this, which is at the diſtance of about ſeventy leagues. 1793. January.

On the 28th the Indians were now employed in making their ſnow-ſhoes, as the ſnow had not hitherto fallen in ſufficient quantity to render them neceſſary.

The weather now became very cold, and it froze ſo hard in the night that my watch ſtopped; a circumſtance that had never happened to this watch ſince my reſidence in the country. February 2.

There was a lodge of Indians here, who were abſolutely ſtarving with cold and hunger. They had lately loſt a near relation, and had, according to cuſtom, thrown away every thing belonging to them, and even exchanged the few articles of raiment which they poſſeſſed, in order, as I preſume, to get rid of every thing that may bring the deceaſed to their remembrance. They alſo deſtroy every thing belonging to any deceaſed perſon, except what they conſign to the grave with the late owner of them. We had ſome difficulty to make them comprehend that the debts of a man who dies ſhould be diſcharged, if he left any furs behind him: but thoſe who underſtand this principle of juſtice, and profeſs to adhere to it, never fail to prevent the appearance of any ſkins beyond ſuch as may be neceſſary to ſatisfy the debts of their dead relation.

On the 8th I had an obſervation for the longitude. In the courſe of this

1798. February. this day one of my men, who had been ſome time with the Indians, came to inform me that one of them had threatened to ſtab him; and on his preferring a complaint to the man with whom he now lived, and to whom I had given him in charge, he replied, that he had been very imprudent to play and quarrel with the young Indians out of his lodge, where no one would dare to come and quarrel with him; but that if he had loſt his life where he had been, it would have been the conſequence of his own folly. Thus, even among theſe children of nature, it appears that a man's houſe is his caſtle, where the protection of hoſpitality is rigidly maintained.

The hard froſt which had prevailed from the beginning of February continued to the 16th of March, when the wind blowing from the South-Weſt, the weather became mild.

On the 22d a wolf was ſo bold as to venture among the Indian lodges, and was very near carrying off a child.

I had another obſervation of Jupiter and his ſatellites for the longitude. On the 13th ſome geeſe were ſeen, and theſe birds are always conſidered as the harbingers of ſpring. On the 1ſt of April my hunters ſhot five of them. This was a much earlier period than I ever remember to have obſerved the viſits of wild fowl in this part of the world. The weather had been mild for the laſt fortnight, and there was a promiſe of its continuance. On the 5th the ſnow had entirely diſappeared.

At half paſt four this morning I was awakened to be informed that an Indian had been killed. I accordingly haſtened to the camp, where I found

I found two women employed in rolling up the dead body of a man, called the White Partridge, in a beaver robe, which I had lent him. He had received four mortal wounds from a dagger, two within the collar-bone, one in the left breaſt, and another in the ſmall of the back, with two cuts acroſs his head. The murderer, who had been my hunter throughout the winter, had fled; and it was pretended that ſeveral relations of the deceaſed were gone in purſuit of him. The hiſtory of this unfortunate event is as follows:— 1793. February.

Theſe two men had been comrades for four years; the murderer had three wives; and the young man who was killed, becoming enamoured of one of them, the huſband conſented to yield her to him, with the reſerved power of claiming her as his property, when it ſhould be his pleaſure. This connection was uninterrupted for near three years, when, whimſical as it may appear, the huſband became jealous, and the public amour was ſuſpended. The parties, however, made their private aſſignations, which cauſed the woman to be ſo ill treated by her huſband, that the paramour was determined to take her away by force; and this project ended in his death. This is a very common practice among the Indians, and generally terminates in very ſerious and fatal quarrels. In conſequence of this event all the Indians went away in great apparent hurry and confuſion, and in the evening not one of them was to be ſeen about the fort.

The Beaver and Rocky Mountain Indians, who traded with us in this river, did not exceed an hundred and fifty men, capable of bearing arms; two thirds of whom call themſelves Beaver Indians. The latter differ only from the former, as they have, more or leſs, imbibed the cuſ-

1793. March. toms and manners of the Knifteneaux. As I have already obferved, they are paffionately fond of liquor, and in the moments of their feftivity will barter any thing they have in their poffeffion for it.

Though the Beaver Indians made their peace with the Knifteneaux, at Peace Point, as already mentioned, yet they did not fecure a ftate of amity from others of the fame nation, who had driven away the natives of the Saſkatchiwine and Miffinipy Rivers, and joined at the head water of the latter, called the Beaver River: from thence they proceeded Weft by the Slave Lake juft defcribed, on their war excurfions, which they often repeated, even till the Beaver Indians had procured arms, which was in the year 1782. If it fo happened that they miffed them, they proceeded Weftward till they were certain of wreaking their vengeance on thofe of the Rocky Mountain, who being without arms, became an eafy prey to their blind and favage fury. All the European articles they poffeffed, previous to the year 1780, were obtained from the Knifteneaux and Chepewyans, who brought them from Fort Churchill, and for which they were made to pay an extravagant price.

As late as the year 1786, when the firft traders from Canada arrived on the banks of this river, the natives employed bows and fnares, but at prefent very little ufe is made of the former, and the latter are no longer known. They ftill entertain a great dread of their natural enemies, but they are fince become fo well armed, that the others now call them their allies. The men are in general of a comely appearance, and fond of perfonal decoration. The women are of a contrary difpofition, and the flaves of the men: in common with all the Indian tribes polygamy is allowed among

among them. They are very ſubject to jealouſy, and fatal conſequences frequently reſult from the indulgence of that paſſion. But notwithſtanding the vigilance and ſeverity which is exerciſed by the huſband, it ſeldom happens that a woman is without her favourite, who, in the abſence of the huſband, exacts the ſame ſubmiſſion, and practiſes the ſame tyranny. And ſo premature is the tender paſſion, that it is ſometimes known to invigorate ſo early a period of life as the age of eleven or twelve years. The women are not very prolific; a circumſtance which may be attributed, in a great meaſure, to the hardſhips that they ſuffer, for except a few ſmall dogs, they alone perform that labour which is allotted to beaſts of burthen in other countries. It is not uncommon, while the men carry nothing but a gun, that their wives and daughters follow with ſuch weighty burdens, that if they lay them down they cannot replace them, and that is a kindneſs which the men will not deign to perform; ſo that during their journeys they are frequently obliged to lean againſt a tree for a ſmall portion of temporary relief. When they arrive at the place which their tyrants have choſen for their encampment, they arrange the whole in a few minutes, by forming a curve of poles, meeting at the top, and expanding into circles of twelve or fifteen feet diameter at the bottom, covered with dreſſed ſkins of the mooſe ſewed together. During theſe preparations, the men ſit down quietly to the enjoyment of their pipes, if they happen to have any tobacco. But notwithſtanding this abject ſtate of ſlavery and ſubmiſſion, the women have a conſiderable influence on the opinion of the men in every thing except their own domeſtic ſituation. 1793. March.

Theſe Indians are excellent hunters, and their exerciſe in that capacity

1793. March. is ſo violent as to reduce them in general to a very meagre appearance. Their religion is of a very contracted nature, and I never witneſſed any ceremony of devotion which they had not borrowed from the Kniſteneaux, their feaſts and faſts being in imitation of that people. They are more vicious and warlike than the Chepewyans, from whence they ſprang, though they do not poſſeſs their ſelfiſhneſs, for while they have the means of purchaſing their neceſſaries, they are liberal and generous, but when thoſe are exhauſted they become errant beggars: they are, however, remarkable for their honeſty, for in the whole tribe there were only two women and a man who had been known to have ſwerved from that virtue, and they were conſidered as objects of diſregard and reprobation. They are afflicted with but few diſeaſes, and their only remedies conſiſt in binding the temples, procuring perſpiration, ſinging, and blowing on the ſick perſon, or affected part. When death overtakes any of them, their property, as I have before obſerved, is ſacrificed and deſtroyed; nor is there any failure of lamentation or mourning on ſuch occaſion: they who are more nearly related to the departed perſon, black their faces, and ſometimes cut off their hair; they alſo pierce their arms with knives and arrows. The grief of the females is carried to a ſtill greater exceſs; they not only cut their hair, and cry and howl, but they will ſometimes, with the utmoſt deliberation, employ ſome ſharp inſtrument to ſeparate the nail from the finger, and then force back the fleſh beyond the firſt joint, which they immediately amputate. But this extraordinary mark of affliction is only diſplayed on the death of a favourite ſon, an huſband, or a father. Many of the old women have ſo often repeated this ceremony, that they have not a complete finger remaining on either hand. The women renew their lamentations

tations at the graves of their departed relatives for a long ſucceſſion of years. They appear, in common with all the Indian tribes, to be very fond of their children, but they are as careleſs in their mode of ſwadling them in their infant ſtate, as they are of their own dreſs; the child is laid down on a board, of about two feet long, covered with a bed of moſs, to which it is faſtened by bandages, the moſs being changed as often as the occaſion requires. The chief of the nation had no leſs than nine wives, and children in proportion. 1793. March.

When traders firſt appeared among theſe people, the Canadians were treated with the utmoſt hoſpitality and attention; but they have, by their ſubſequent conduct, taught the natives to withdraw that reſpect from them, and ſometimes to treat them with indignity. They differ very much from the Chepewyans and Kniſteneaux, in the abhorrence they profeſs of any carnal communication between their women and the white people. They carry their love of gaming to exceſs; they will purſue it for a ſucceſſion of days and nights, and no apprehenſion of ruin, nor influence of domeſtic affection, will reſtrain them from the indulgence of it. They are a quick, lively, active people, with a keen, penetrating, dark eye; and though they are very ſuſceptible of anger, are as eaſily appeaſed. The males eradicate their beards, and the females their hair in every part, except their heads, where it is ſtrong and black, and without a curl. There are many old men among them, but they are in general ignorant of the ſpace in which they have been inhabitants of the earth, though one of them told me that he recollected ſixty winters.

An Indian in ſome meaſure explained his age to me, by relating that he

1793. April. he remembered the oppoſite hills and plains, now interſperſed with groves of poplars, when they were covered with moſs, and without any animal inhabitant but the rein-deer. By degrees, he ſaid, the face of the country changed to its preſent appearance, when the elk came from the Eaſt, and was followed by the buffalo; the rein-deer then retired to the long range of high lands that, at a conſiderable diſtance, run parallel with this river.

On the 20th of April I had an obſervation of Jupiter and his ſatellites, for the longitude, and we were now viſited by our ſummer companions the gnats and moſquitoes. On the other ſide of the river, which was yet covered with ice, the plains were delightful; the trees were budding, and many plants in bloſſom. Mr. Mackay brought me a bunch of flowers of a pink colour, and a yellow button, encircled with ſix leaves of a light purple. The change in the appearance of nature was as ſudden as it was pleaſing, for a few days only were paſſed away ſince the ground was covered with ſnow. On the 25th the river was cleared of the ice.

I now found that the death of the man called the White Partridge, had deranged all the plans which I had ſettled with the Indians for the ſpring hunting. They had aſſembled at ſome diſtance from the fort, and ſent an embaſſy to me, to demand rum to drink, that they might have an opportunity of crying for their deceaſed brother. It would be conſidered as an extreme degradation in an Indian to weep when ſober, but a ſtate of intoxication ſanctions all irregularities. On my refuſal, they threatened to go to war, which, from motives of intereſt as well as humanity, we did our utmoſt to diſcourage; and as a ſecond meſſage

was

was brought by perſons of ſome weight among theſe people, and on whom I could depend, I thought it prudent to comply with the demand, on an expreſs condition, that they would continue peaceably at home. 1793. May.

The month of April being now paſt, in the early part of which I was moſt buſily employed in trading with the Indians, I ordered our old canoes to be repaired with bark, and added four new ones to them, when with the furs and proviſions I had purchaſed, ſix canoes were loaded and diſpatched on the 8th of May for Fort Chepewyan. I had, however, retained ſix of the men who agreed to accompany me on my projected voyage of diſcovery. I alſo engaged my hunters, and cloſed the buſineſs of the year for the company by writing my public and private diſpatches.

Having aſcertained, by various obſervations, the latitude of this place to be 56. 9. North, and longitude 117. 35. 15. Weſt:—on the 9th day of May, I found, that my acrometer was one hour forty-ſix minutes ſlow to apparent time; the mean going of it I had found to be twenty-two ſeconds ſlow in twenty-four hours. Having ſettled this point, the canoe was put into the water: her dimenſions were twenty-five feet long within, excluſive of the curves of ſtem and ſtern, twenty-ſix inches hold, and four feet nine inches beam. At the ſame time ſhe was ſo light, that two men could carry her on a good road three or four miles without reſting. In this ſlender veſſel, we ſhipped proviſions, goods for preſents, arms, ammunition, and baggage, to the weight of three thouſand pounds, and an equipage of ten people; viz. Alexander Mackay, Joſeph Landry, Charles

1793. May. Charles Ducette,* François Beaulieux, Baptiſt Biſſon, François Courtois, and Jacques Beauchamp, with two Indians as hunters and interpreters. One of them, when a boy, was uſed to be ſo idle, that he obtained the reputable name of Cancre, which he ſtill poſſeſſes. With theſe perſons I embarked at ſeven in the evening. My winter interpreter, with another perſon, whom I left here to take care of the fort, and ſupply the natives with ammunition during the ſummer, ſhed tears on the reflection of thoſe dangers which we might encounter in our expedition, while my own people offered up their prayers that we might return in ſafety from it.

* Joſeph Landry and Charles Ducette were with me in my former voyage.

CHAPTER III.

Proceed on the voyage of diſcovery. Beautiful ſcenery. The canoe too heavily laden. The country in a ſtate of combuſtion. Meet with an hunting party. State of the river, &c. Meet with Indians. See the tracks of bears, and one of their dens. Sentiment of an Indian. Junction of the Bear River. Appearance of the country. State of the river. Obſerve a fall of timber. Abundance of animals. See ſome bears. Come in ſight of the rocky mountains. The canoe receives an injury and is repaired. Navigation dangerous. Rapids and falls. Succeſſion of difficulties and dangers.

1793. May.

WE began our voyage with a courſe South by Weſt againſt a ſtrong current one mile and three quarters, South-Weſt by South one mile, and landed before eight on an iſland for the night. Thurſday 9.

The weather was clear and pleaſant, though there was a keenneſs in the air; and at a quarter paſt three in the morning we continued our voyage, ſteering South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt by South one mile and a quarter, South three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt by South one quarter of a mile, South-Weſt by Weſt one mile, South-Weſt by South three miles, South by Weſt three quarters of a Friday 10.

1793. May. mile, and South-Weſt one mile. The canoe being ſtrained from its having been very heavily laden, became ſo leaky, that we were obliged to land, unload, and gum it. As this circumſtance took place about twelve, I had an opportunity of taking an altitude, which made our latitude 55. 58. 48.

When the canoe was repaired we continued our courſe, ſteering South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and an half, when I had the misfortune to drop my pocket-compaſs into the water; Weſt half a mile, Weſt-South-Weſt four miles and an half. Here, the banks are ſteep and hilly, and in ſome parts undermined by the river. Where the earth has given way, the face of the cliffs diſcovers numerous ſtrata, conſiſting of reddiſh earth and ſmall ſtones, bitumen, and a greyiſh earth, below which, near the water-edge, is a red ſtone. Water iſſues from moſt of the banks, and the ground on which it ſpreads is covered with a thin white ſcurf, or particles of a ſaline ſubſtance: there are ſeveral of theſe ſalt ſprings. At half paſt ſix in the afternoon the young men landed, when they killed an elk and wounded a buffalo. In this ſpot we formed our encampment for the night.

From the place which we quitted this morning, the Weſt ſide of the river diſplayed a ſucceſſion of the moſt beautiful ſcenery I had ever beheld. The ground riſes at intervals to a conſiderable height, and ſtretching inwards to a conſiderable diſtance: at every interval or pauſe in the riſe, there is a very gently-aſcending ſpace or lawn, which is alternate with abrupt precipices to the ſummit of the whole, or, at leaſt as far as the eye could diſtinguiſh. This magnificent theatre of nature has all the decorations which the trees and animals of the country can afford it:

groves

groves of poplars in every ſhape vary the ſcene; and their intervals are enlivened with vaſt herds of elks and buffaloes: the former chooſing the ſteeps and uplands, and the latter preferring the plains. At this time the buffaloes were attended with their young ones who were friſking about them; and it appeared that the elks would ſoon exhibit the ſame enlivening circumſtance. The whole country diſplayed an exuberant verdure; the trees that bear a bloſſom were advancing faſt to that delightful appearance, and the velvet rind of their branches reflecting the oblique rays of a riſing or ſetting ſun, added a ſplendid gaiety to the ſcene, which no expreſſions of mine are qualified to deſcribe. The Eaſt ſide of the river conſiſts of a range of high land covered with the white ſpruce and the ſoft birch, while the banks abound with the alder and the willow. The water continued to riſe, and the current being proportionably ſtrong, we made a greater uſe of ſetting poles than paddles. 1793. May.

The weather was overcaſt. With a ſtrong wind a-head, we embarked at four in the morning, and left all the freſh meat behind us, but the portion which had been aſſigned to the kettle; the canoe being already too heavily laden. Our courſe was Weſt-South-Weſt one mile, where a ſmall river flowed in from the Eaſt, named *Quiſcatina Sepy*, or River with the High Banks; Weſt half a mile, South half a mile, South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt one mile and a quarter, South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, South-South-Weſt half a mile, and Weſt by South a mile and an half. Here I took a meridian altitude, which gave 55. 56. 3. North latitude. We then proceeded Weſt three miles and an half, Weſt-South-Weſt, where the whole plain was on fire, one mile, Saturday 11.

1793. May. Weſt one mile, and the wind ſo ſtrong a-head, that it occaſioned the canoe to take in water, and otherwiſe impeded our progreſs. Here we landed to take time, with the mean of three altitudes, which made the watch ſlow, 1. 42. 10. apparent time.

We now proceeded Weſt-South-Weſt, one mile and a quarter, where we found a chief of the Beaver Indians on an hunting party. I remained, however, in my canoe, and though it was getting late, I did not chooſe to encamp with theſe people, leſt the friends of my hunters might diſcourage them from proceeding on the voyage. We, therefore, continued our courſe, but ſeveral Indians kept company with us, running along the bank and converſing with my people, who were ſo attentive to them, that they drove the canoe on a ſtony flat, ſo that we were under the neceſſity of landing to repair the damages, and put up for the night, though very contrary to my wiſhes. My hunters obtained permiſſion to proceed with ſome of theſe people to their lodges, on the promiſe of being back by the break of day; though I was not without ſome apprehenſion reſpecting them. The chief, however, and another man, as well as ſeveral people from the lodges, joined us, before we had completed the repair of the canoe; and they made out a melancholy ſtory, that they had neither ammunition or tobacco ſufficient for their neceſſary ſupply during the ſummer. I accordingly referred him to the Fort, where plenty of thoſe articles were left in the care of my interpreter, by whom they would be abundantly furniſhed, if they were active and induſtrious in purſuing their occupations. I did not fail, on this occaſion, to magnify the advantages of the preſent expedition; obſerving, at the ſame time, that its ſucceſs would depend on the fidelity and conduct

conduct of the young men who were retained by me to hunt. The chief alſo propoſed to borrow my canoe, in order to tranſport himſelf and family acroſs the river: ſeveral plauſible reaſons, it is true, ſuggeſted themſelves for reſiſting his propoſition; but when I ſtated to him, that, as the canoe was intended for a voyage of ſuch conſequence, no woman could be permitted to be embarked in it, he acquieſced in the refuſal. It was near twelve at night when he took his leave, after I had gratified him with a preſent of tobacco. 1793. May.

Some of the Indians paſſed the night with us, and I was informed by them, that, according to our mode of proceeding, we ſhould, in ten days, get as far as the rocky mountains. The young men now returned, to my great ſatisfaction, and with the appearance of contentment: though I was not pleaſed when they dreſſed themſelves in the clothes which I had given them before we left the Fort, as it betrayed ſome latent deſign. Sunday 12.

At four in the morning we proceeded on our voyage, ſteering Weſt three miles, including one of our courſe yeſterday, North-Weſt by North four miles, Weſt two miles and an half, North-Weſt by Weſt a mile and an half, North by Eaſt two miles, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile, and North-North-Weſt three miles. After a continuation of our courſe where to the North for a mile and an half, we landed for the night on an iſland ſeveral of the Indians viſited us, but unattended by their women, who remained in their camp, which was at ſome diſtance from us.

The land on both ſides of the river, during the two laſt days, is very much elevated, but particularly in the latter part of it, and, on the Weſtern ſide,

1793. May. side, preſents in different places, white, ſteep, and lofty cliffs. Our view being confined by theſe circumſtances, we did not ſee ſo many animals as on the 10th. Between theſe lofty boundaries, the river becomes narrow, and in a great meaſure free from iſlands; for we had paſſed only four: the ſtream, indeed, was not more than from two hundred to three hundred yards broad; whereas before theſe cliffs preſſed upon it, its breadth was twice that extent and beſprinkled with iſlands. We killed an elk, and fired ſeveral ſhots at animals from the canoe.

The greater part of this band being Rocky Mountain Indians, I endeavoured to obtain ſome intelligence of our intended route, but they all pleaded ignorance, and uniformly declared, that they knew nothing of the country beyond the firſt mountain: at the ſame time they were of opinion, that, from the ſtrength of the current and the rapids, we ſhould not get there by water; though they did not heſitate to expreſs their ſurpriſe at the expedition we had already made.

I inquired, with ſome anxiety, after an old man who had already given me an account of the country beyond the limits of his tribe, and was very much diſappointed at being informed, that he had not been ſeen for upwards of a moon. This man had been at war on another large river beyond the Rocky Mountain, and deſcribed to me a fork of it between the mountains; the Southern branch of which he directed me to take: from thence, he ſaid, there was a carrying-place of about a day's march for a young man to get to the other river. To prove the truth of his relation, he conſented, that his ſon, who had been with him

him in thoſe parts, ſhould accompany me; and he accordingly ſent him to the Fort ſome days before my departure; but the preceding night he deſerted with another young man, whoſe application to attend me as a hunter, being refuſed, he perſuaded the other to leave me. I now thought it right to repeat to them what I had ſaid to the chief of the firſt band, reſpecting the advantages which would be derived from the voyage, that the young men might be encouraged to remain with me; as without them I ſhould not have attempted to proceed. 1793. May.

The firſt object that preſented itſelf to me this morning was the young man whom I have already mentioned, as having ſeduced away my intended guide. At any other time or place I ſhould have chaſtiſed him for his paſt conduct, but in my ſituation it was neceſſary to paſs over his offence, leſt he ſhould endeavour to exerciſe the ſame influence over thoſe who were ſo eſſential to my ſervice. Of the deſerter he gave no ſatisfactory account, but continued to expreſs his wiſh to attend me in his place, for which he did not poſſeſs any neceſſary qualifications. Monday 13.

The weather was cloudy, with an appearance of rain; and the Indians preſſed me with great earneſtneſs to paſs the day with them, and hoped to prolong my ſtay among them by aſſuring me that the winter yet lingered in the rocky mountains: but my object was to loſe no time, and having given the chief ſome tobacco for a ſmall quantity of meat, we embarked at four, when my young men could not conceal their chagrin at parting with their friends, for ſo long a period as the voyage threatened to occupy. When I had aſſured them that in three moons we ſhould return to them, we proceeded on our courſe,

Weſt

1793. May. Weſt-North-Weſt half a mile, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile and an half, Weſt by North three miles, North-Weſt by Weſt two miles and an half, South-Weſt by Weſt half a mile, South-South-Weſt a mile and an half, and South-Weſt a mile and a half. Here I had a meridian altitude, which gave 56. 17. 44, North latitude.

The laſt courſe continued a mile and an half, South by Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt by South three miles and an half, and Weſt-South-Weſt two miles and an half. Here the land lowered on both ſides, with an increaſe of wood, and diſplayed great numbers of animals. The river alſo widened from three to five hundred yards, and was full of iſlands and flats. Having continued our courſe three miles, we made for the ſhore at ſeven, to paſs the night.

At the place from whence we proceeded this morning, a river falls in from the North; there are alſo ſeveral iſlands, and many rivulets on either ſide, which are too ſmall to deſerve particular notice. We perceived along the river tracks of large bears, ſome of which were nine inches wide, and of a proportionate length. We ſaw one of their dens, or winter quarters, called *watee*, in an iſland, which was ten feet deep, five feet high, and ſix feet wide; but we had not yet ſeen one of thoſe animals. The Indians entertain great apprehenſion of this kind of bear, which is called the griſly bear, and they never venture to attack it but in a party of at leaſt three or four. Our hunters, though they had been much higher than this part of our voyage, by land, knew nothing of the river. One of them mentioned, that having been engaged in a war expedition, his party on their return made their canoes at ſome diſtance below

below us. The wind was North throughout the day, and at times blew with conſiderable violence. 1793. May.

The apprehenſions which I had felt reſpecting the young men were not altogether groundleſs, for the eldeſt of them told me that his uncle had laſt night addreſſed him in the following manner:—" My nephew, your departure makes my heart painful. The white people may be ſaid to rob us of you. They are about to conduct you into the midſt of our enemies, and you may never more return to us. Were you not with the Chief*, I know not what I ſhould do, but he requires your attendance, and you muſt follow him."

The weather was clear, and the air ſharp, when we embarked at half paſt four. Our courſe was South by Weſt one mile and an half, South-Weſt by South half a mile, South-Weſt. We here found it neceſſary to unload, and gum the canoe, in which operation we loſt an hour; when we proceeded on the laſt courſe one mile and an half. I now took a meridian altitude, which gave 56. 11. 19. North latitude, and continued to proceed Weſt-South-Weſt two miles and an half. Here the Bear River, which is of a large appearance, falls in from the Eaſt; Weſt three miles and an half, South-South-Weſt one mile and an half, and South-Weſt four miles and an half, when we encamped upon an iſland about ſeven in the evening. Tueſday 14.

During the early part of the day, the current was not ſo ſtrong as we

* Theſe people, as well as all the natives on this ſide of Lake Winipic, give the mercantile agent that diſtinguiſhed appellation.

1793. May. had generally found it, but towards the evening it became very rapid, and was broken by numerous iſlands. We were gratified, as uſual, with the ſight of animals. The land on the Weſt ſide is very irregular, but has the appearance of being a good beaver country; indeed we ſaw ſome of thoſe animals in the river. Wood is in great plenty, and ſeveral rivulets added their ſtreams to the main river. A gooſe was the only article of proviſion which we procured to day. Smoke was ſeen, but at a great diſtance before us.

Wedneſ. 15. The rain prevented us from continuing our route till paſt ſix in the morning, when our courſe was South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile; at which time we paſſed a river on the left, Weſt by South two miles and an half. The bank was ſteep, and the current ſtrong. The laſt courſe continued one mile and an half, Weſt-South-Weſt two miles, where a river flowed in from the right, Weſt by South one mile and an half, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile, and Weſt by North two miles. Here the land takes the form of an high ridge, and cut our courſe, which was Weſt for three miles, at right angles. We now completed the voyage of this day.

In the preceding night the water roſe upwards of two inches, and had riſen in this proportion ſince our departure. The wind, which was Weſt-South-Weſt, blew very hard throughout the day, and with the ſtrength of the current, greatly impeded our progreſs. The river, in this part of it, is full of iſlands; and the land, on the South or left ſide, is thick with wood. Several rivulets alſo fall in from that quarter. At the entrance of the laſt river which we paſſed, there was a quantity of wood,

wood, which had been cut down by axes, and ſome by the beaver. This fall, however, was not made, in the opinion of my people, by any of the Indians with whom we were acquainted. 1793. May.

The land to the right is of a very irregular elevation and appearance, compoſed in ſome places of clay, and rocky cliffs, and others exhibiting ſtratas of red, green, and yellow colours. Some parts, indeed, offer a beautiful ſcenery, in ſome degree ſimilar to that which we paſſed on the ſecond day of our voyage, and equally enlivened with the elk and the buffalo, who were feeding in great numbers, and unmoleſted by the hunter. In an iſland which we paſſed, there was a large quantity of white birch, whoſe bark might be employed in the conſtruction of canoes.

The weather being clear, we reimbarked at four in the morning, and proceeded Weſt by North three miles. Here the land again appeared as if it run acroſs our courſe, and a conſiderable river diſcharged itſelf by various ſtreams. According to the Rocky Mountain Indian, it is called the Sinew River. This ſpot would be an excellent ſituation for a fort or factory, as there is plenty of wood, and every reaſon to believe that the country abounds in beaver. As for the other animals, they are in evident abundance, as in every direction the elk and the buffalo are ſeen in poſſeſſion of the hills and the plains. Our courſe continued Weſt-North-Weſt three miles and an half, North-Weſt one mile and an half, South-Weſt by Weſt two miles; (the latitude was by obſervation 56. 16. 54.) North, Weſt by North half a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt three quarters of a mile; a ſmall river appearing on the right, North-Weſt one mile and an half, Weſt by North half a mile, Weſt by South one mile and an half, Weſt one mile; and at ſeven we formed our encampment. Thurſday 16.

1793. May. Mr. Mackay, and one of the young men, killed two elks, and mortally wounded a buffalo, but we only took a part of the fleſh of the former. The land above the ſpot where we encamped, ſpreads into an extenſive plain, and ſtretches on to a very high ridge, which, in ſome parts, preſents a face of rock, but is principally covered with verdure, and varied with the poplar and white birch tree. The country is ſo crowded with animals as to have the appearance, in ſome places, of a ſtall-yard, from the ſtate of the ground, and the quantity of dung which is ſcattered over it. The ſoil is black and light. We this day ſaw two griſly and hideous bears.

Friday 17. It froze during the night, and the air was ſharp in the morning, when we continued our courſe Weſt-North-Weſt three miles and an half, South-Weſt by South two miles and an half, South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and an half, Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile and a quarter, and South-Weſt by South one mile and an half. At two in the afternoon the rocky mountains appeared in ſight, with their ſummits covered with ſnow, bearing South-Weſt by South: they formed a very agreeable object to every perſon in the canoe, as we attained the view of them much ſooner than we expected. A ſmall river was ſeen on our right, and we continued our progreſs South-Weſt by South ſix miles, when we landed at ſeven, which was our uſual hour of encampment.

Mr. Mackay, who was walking along the ſide of the river, diſcharged his piece at a buffalo, when it burſt near the muzzle, but without any miſchievous conſequences. On the high grounds, which were on the oppoſite ſide of the river, we ſaw a buffalo tearing up and down with great fury, but could not diſcern the cauſe of his impetuous motions; my hunters

hunters conjectured that he had been wounded with an arrow by ſome of the natives. We aſcended ſeveral rapids in the courſe of the day, and ſaw one bear. 1793. May.

It again froze very hard during the night, and at four in the morning we continued our voyage, but we had not proceeded two hundred yards, before an accident happened to the canoe, which did not, however, employ more than three quarters of an hour to complete the repair. We then ſteered South by Weſt one mile and three quarters, South-Weſt by South three miles, South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a quarter, Weſt by South three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, Weſt by South one mile, South by Weſt one mile and an half, South-South-Weſt, where there is a ſmall run of water from the right, three miles and an half, when the canoe ſtruck on the ſtump of a tree, and unfortunately where the banks were ſo ſteep that there was no place to unload, except a ſmall ſpot, on which we contrived to diſpoſe the lading in the bow, which lightened the canoe ſo as to raiſe the broken part of it above the ſurface of the water; by which contrivance we reached a convenient ſituation. It required, however, two hours to complete the repair, when the weather became dark and cloudy, with thunder, lightning, and rain; we, however, continued the laſt courſe half a mile, and at ſix in the evening we were compelled by the rain to land for the night. Saturday 18.

About noon we had landed on an iſland where there were eight lodges of laſt year. The natives had prepared bark here for five canoes, and there is a road along the hills where they had paſſed. Branches were cut and broken along it; and they had alſo ſtripped off the bark of the trees, to get the interior rind, which forms a part of their food.

The

1793. May. The current was very ſtrong through the whole of the day, and the coming up along ſome of the banks was rendered very dangerous, from the continual falling of large ſtones, from the upper parts of them. This place appears to be a particular paſs for animals acroſs the river, as there are paths leading to it on both ſides, every ten yards.

In the courſe of the day we ſaw a ground hog, and two cormorants. The earth alſo appeared in ſeveral places to have been turned up by the bears, in ſearch of roots.

Sunday 19. It rained very hard in the early part of the night, but the weather became clear towards the morning, when we embarked at our uſual hour. As the current threatened to be very ſtrong, Mr. Mackay, the two hunters, and myſelf, went on ſhore, in order to lighten the canoe, and aſcended the hills, which are covered with cypreſs, and but little encumbered with underwood. We found a beaten path, and before we had walked a mile fell in with an herd of buffaloes, with their young ones; but I would not ſuffer the Indians to fire on them, from an apprehenſion that the report of their fowling pieces would alarm the natives that might be in the neighbourhood; for we were at this time ſo near the mountains, as to juſtify our expectation of ſeeing ſome of them. We, however, ſent our dog after the herd, and a calf was ſoon ſecured by him. While the young men were ſkinning the animal, we heard two reports of fire-arms from the canoe, which we anſwered, as it was a ſignal for my return: we then heard another, and immediately haſtened down the hill, with our veal, through a very cloſe wood. There we met one of the men, who informed

informed us that the canoe was at a ſmall diſtance below, at the foot of a very ſtrong rapid, and that as ſeveral waterfalls appeared up the river, we ſhould be obliged to unload and carry. I accordingly haſtened to the canoe, and was greatly diſpleaſed that ſo much time had been loſt, as I had given previous directions that the river ſhould be followed as long as it was practicable. The laſt Indians whom we ſaw had informed us that at the firſt mountain there was a conſiderable ſucceſſion of rapids, caſcades, and falls, which they never attempted to aſcend; and where they always paſſed over land the length of a day's march. My men imagined that the carrying place was at a ſmall diſtance below us, as a path appeared to aſcend an hill, where there were ſeveral lodges, of the laſt year's conſtruction. The account which had been given me of the rapids, was perfectly correct: though by croſſing to the other ſide, I muſt acknowledge with ſome riſk, in ſuch an heavy-laden canoe, the river appeared to me to be practicable, as far as we could ſee: the traverſe, therefore, was attempted, and proved ſucceſsful. We now towed the canoe along an iſland, and proceeded without any conſiderable difficulty till we reached the extremity of it, when the line could be no longer employed; and in endeavouring to clear the point of the iſland, the canoe was driven with ſuch violence on a ſtony ſhore, as to receive conſiderable injury. We now employed every exertion in our power to repair the breach that had been made, as well as to dry ſuch articles of our loading as more immediately required it: we then tranſported the whole acroſs the point, when we reloaded, and continued our courſe about three quarters of a mile. We could now proceed no further on this ſide of the water, and the traverſe was rendered extremely dangerous, not only from the ſtrength of the current, but by the caſcades juſt

1793. May.

below

1793. May. below us, which, if we had got among them, would have involved us and the canoe in one common deſtruction. We had no other alternative than to return by the ſame courſe we came, or to hazard the traverſe, the river on this ſide being bounded by a range of ſteep, over-hanging rocks, beneath which the current was driven on with reſiſtleſs impetuoſity from the caſcades. Here are ſeveral iſlands of ſolid rock, covered with a ſmall portion of verdure, which have been worn away by the conſtant force of the current, and occaſionally, as I preſume, of ice, at the water's edge, ſo as to be reduced in that part to one fourth the extent of the upper ſurface; preſenting, as it were, ſo many large tables, each of which was ſupported by a pedeſtal of a more circumſcribed projection. They are very elevated for ſuch a ſituation, and afford an aſylum for geeſe, which were at this time breeding on them. By croſſing from one to the other of theſe iſlands, we came at length to the main traverſe, on which we ventured, and were ſucceſsful in our paſſage. Mr. Mackay, and the Indians, who obſerved our manœuvres from the top of a rock, were in continual alarm for our ſafety, with which their own, indeed, may be ſaid to have been nearly connected: however, the dangers that we encountered were very much augmented by the heavy loading of the canoe.

When we had effected our paſſage, the current on the Weſt ſide was almoſt equally violent with that from whence we had juſt eſcaped, but the craggy bank being ſomewhat lower, we were enabled, with a line of ſixty fathoms, to tow the canoe, till we came to the foot of the moſt rapid caſcade we had hitherto ſeen. Here we unloaded, and carried every thing over a rocky point of an hundred and twenty paces. When the canoe

canoe was reloaded, I, with thoſe of my people who were not immediately employed, aſcended the bank, which was there, and indeed, as far as we could ſee it, compoſed of clay, ſtone, and a yellow gravel. My preſent ſituation was ſo elevated, that the men, who were coming up a ſtrong point could not hear me, though I called to them with the utmoſt ſtrength of my voice, to lighten the canoe of part of its lading. And here I could not but reflect, with infinite anxiety, on the hazard of my enterprize: one falſe ſtep of thoſe who were attached to the line, or the breaking of the line itſelf, would have at once conſigned the canoe, and every thing it contained, to inſtant deſtruction: it, however, aſcended the rapid in perfect ſecurity, but new dangers immediately preſented themſelves, for ſtones, both ſmall and great, were continually rolling from the bank, ſo as to render the ſituation of thoſe who were dragging the canoe beneath it extremely perilous; beſides, they were at every ſtep in danger, from the ſteepneſs of the ground, of falling into the water: nor was my ſolicitude diminiſhed by my being neceſſarily removed at times from the ſight of them. 1793. May.

In our paſſage through the woods, we came to an incloſure, which had been formed by the natives for the purpoſe of ſetting ſnares for the elk, and of which we could not diſcover the extent. After we had travelled for ſome hours through the foreſt, which conſiſted of the ſpruce, birch, and the largeſt poplars I had ever ſeen, we ſunk down upon the river, where the bank is low, and near the foot of a mountain; between which, and an high ridge, the river flows in a channel of about one hundred yards broad; though, at a ſmall diſtance below, it ruſhes on between perpendicular rocks, where it is not much more than half that

1798. May. breadth. Here I remained, in great anxiety, expecting the arrival of the canoe, and after ſome time I ſent Mr. Mackay with one of the Indians down the river in ſearch of it, and with the other I went up it to examine what we might expect in that quarter. In about a mile and a half I came to a part where the river waſhes the feet of lofty precipices, and preſented, in the form of rapids and caſcades, a ſucceſſion of difficulties to our navigation. As the canoe did not come in ſight we returned, and from the place where I had ſeparated with Mr. Mackay, we ſaw the men carrying it over a ſmall rocky point. We met them at the entrance of the narrow channel already mentioned; their difficulties had been great indeed, and the canoe had been broken, but they had perſevered with ſucceſs, and having paſſed the carrying-place, we proceeded with the line as far as I had already been, when we croſſed over and encamped on the oppoſite beach; but there was no wood on this ſide of the water, as the adjacent country had been entirely overrun by fire. We ſaw ſeveral elks feeding on the edge of the oppoſite precipice, which was upwards of three hundred feet in height.

Our courſe to-day was about South-South-Weſt two miles and an half, South-Weſt half a mile, South-Weſt by South one mile and an half, South-by Weſt half a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, and Weſt one mile and an half. There was a ſhower of hail, and ſome rain from flying clouds. I now diſpatched a man with an Indian to viſit the rapids above, when the latter ſoon left him to purſue a beaver, which was ſeen in the ſhallow water on the inſide of a ſtony iſland; and though Mr. Mackay, and the other Indian joined him, the animal at length eſcaped from their purſuit. Several others were ſeen in the courſe of the day, which I by no means expected,

expected, as the banks are almoſt every where ſo much elevated above the channel of the river. Juſt as the obſcurity of the night drew on, the man returned with an account that it would be impracticable to paſs ſeveral points, as well as the ſuper-impending promontories. 1793. May.

The weather was clear with a ſharp air, and we renewed our voyage at a quarter paſt four, on a courſe South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile. We now, with infinite difficulty paſſed along the foot of a rock, which, fortunately, was not an hard ſtone, ſo that we were enabled to cut ſteps in it for the diſtance of twenty feet; from which, at the hazard of my life, I leaped on a ſmall rock below, where I received thoſe who followed me on my ſhoulders. In this manner four of us paſſed and dragged up the canoe, in which attempt we broke her. Very luckily, a dry tree had fallen from the rock above us, without which we could not have made a fire, as no wood was to be procured within a mile of the place. When the canoe was repaired, we continued towing it along the rocks to the next point, when we embarked, as we could not at preſent make any further uſe of the line, but got along the rocks of a round high iſland of ſtone, till we came to a ſmall ſandy bay. As we had already damaged the canoe, and had every reaſon to think that ſhe ſoon would riſk much greater injury, it became neceſſary for us to ſupply ourſelves with bark, as our proviſion of that material article was almoſt exhauſted; two men were accordingly ſent to procure it, who ſoon returned with the neceſſary ſtore. Monday 20.

Mr. Mackay, and the Indians who had been on ſhore, ſince we broke the canoe, were prevented from coming to us by the rugged and im-

1793. May. paſſable ſtate of the ground. We, therefore, again reſumed our courſe with the aſſiſtance of poles, with which we puſhed onwards till we came beneath a precipice, where we could not find any bottom; ſo that we were again obliged to have recourſe to the line, the management of which was rendered not only difficult but dangerous, as the men employed in towing were under the neceſſity of paſſing on the outſide of trees that grew on the edge of the precipice. We, however, ſurmounted this difficulty, as we had done many others, and the people who had been walking over land now joined us. They alſo had met with their obſtacles in paſſing the mountain.

It now became neceſſary for us to make a traverſe, where the water was ſo rapid, that ſome of the people ſtripped themſelves to their ſhirts that they might be the better prepared for ſwimming, in caſe any accident happened to the canoe, which they ſeriouſly apprehended; but we ſucceeded in our attempt without any other inconvenience, except that of taking in water. We now came to a caſcade, when it was thought neceſſary to take out part of the lading. At noon we ſtopped to take an altitude, oppoſite to a ſmall river that flowed in from the left: while I was thus engaged, the men went on ſhore to faſten the canoe, but as the current was not very ſtrong, they had been negligent in performing this office; it proved, however, ſufficiently powerful to ſheer her off, and if it had not happened that one of the men, from abſolute fatigue had remained and held the end of the line, we ſhould have been deprived of every means of proſecuting our voyage, as well as of preſent ſubſiſtence. But notwithſtanding the ſtate of my mind on ſuch an alarming circumſtance, and an intervening cloud that interrupted me,

me, the altitude which I took has been ſince proved to be tolerably correct, and gave 56. North latitude. Our laſt courſe was South-South-Weſt two miles and a quarter. 1793. May.

We now continued our toilſome and perilous progreſs with the line Weſt by North, and as we proceeded the rapidity of the current increaſed, ſo that in the diſtance of two miles we were obliged to unload four times, and carry every thing but the canoe: indeed, in many places, it was with the utmoſt difficulty that we could prevent her from being daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks by the violence of the eddies. At five we had proceeded to where the river was one continued rapid. Here we again took every thing out of the canoe, in order to tow her up with the line, though the rocks were ſo ſhelving as greatly to increaſe the toil and hazard of that operation. At length, however, the agitation of the water was ſo great, that a wave ſtriking on the bow of the canoe broke the line, and filled us with inexpreſſible diſmay, as it appeared impoſſible that the veſſel could eſcape from being daſhed to pieces, and thoſe who were in her from periſhing. Another wave, however, more propitious than the former, drove her out of the tumbling water, ſo that the men were enabled to bring her aſhore, and though ſhe had been carried over rocks by theſe ſwells which left them naked a moment after, the canoe had received no material injury. The men were, however, in ſuch a ſtate from their late alarm, that it would not only have been unavailing but imprudent to have propoſed any further progreſs at preſent, particularly as the river above us, as far as we could ſee, was one white ſheet of foaming water.

CHAP.

CHAPTER IV.

Continuation of difficulties and dangers. Diſcontents among the people. State of the river and its banks. Volcanic chaſms in the earth. Diſpatch various perſons to diſcover ways acroſs the mountain. Obſtacles preſent themſelves on all ſides. Preparations made to attempt the mountain. Account of the aſcent with the canoe and baggage. The trees that are found there. Arrive at the river. Extraordinary circumſtances of it. Curious hollows in the rocks. Prepare the canoe. Renew our progreſs up the river. The ſtate of it. Leave ſome tokens of amity for the natives. The weather very cold. Loſt a book of my obſervations for ſeveral days. Continue to proceed up the river. Send a letter down the current in a rum-keg. Came to the forks, and proceed up the Eaſtern branch. Circumſtances of it.

1793. May. THAT the diſcouragements, difficulties, and dangers, which had hitherto attended the progreſs of our enterprize, ſhould have excited a wiſh in ſeveral of thoſe who were engaged in it to diſcontinue the purſuit, might be naturally expected; and indeed it began to be muttered on all ſides that there was no alternative but to return.

Inſtead of paying any attention to theſe murmurs, I deſired thoſe who had uttered them to exert themſelves in gaining an aſcent of the hill,

hill, and encamp there for the night. In the mean time I ſet off with one of the Indians, and though I continued my examination of the river almoſt as long as there was any light to aſſiſt me, I could ſee no end of the rapids and caſcades: I was, therefore, perfectly ſatisfied, that it would be impracticable to proceed any further by water. We returned from this reconnoitring excurſion very much fatigued, with our ſhoes worn out and wounded feet; when I found that, by felling trees on the declivity of the firſt hill, my people had contrived to aſcend it. 1793. May.

From the place where I had taken the altitude at noon, to the place where we made our landing, the river is not more than fifty yards wide, and flows between ſtupendous rocks, from whence huge fragments ſometimes tumble down, and falling from ſuch an height, daſh into ſmall ſtones, with ſharp points, and form the beach between the rocky projections. Along the face of ſome of theſe precipices, there appears a ſtratum of a bituminous ſubſtance which reſembles coal; though while ſome of the pieces of it appeared to be excellent fuel, others reſiſted, for a conſiderable time, the action of fire, and did not emit the leaſt flame. The whole of this day's courſe would have been altogether impracticable, if the water had been higher, which muſt be the caſe at certain ſeaſons. We ſaw alſo ſeveral encampments of the Kniſteneaux along the river, which muſt have been formed by them on their war excurſions: a decided proof of the ſavage, blood-thirſty diſpoſition of that people; as nothing leſs than ſuch a ſpirit could impel them to encounter the difficulties of this almoſt inacceſſible country, whoſe natives are equally unoffending and defenceleſs.

Mr.

1793. May. Mr. Mackay informed me, that in paſſing over the mountains, he obſerved ſeveral chaſms in the earth that emitted heat and ſmoke, which diffuſed a ſtrong ſulphureous ſtench. I ſhould certainly have viſited this phænomenon, if I had been ſufficiently qualified as a naturaliſt, to have offered ſcientific conjectures or obſervations thereon.

Tueſday 21. It rained in the morning, and did not ceaſe till about eight, and as the men had been very fatigued and diſheartened, I ſuffered them to continue their reſt till that hour. Such was the ſtate of the river, as I have already obſerved, that no alternative was left us; nor did any means of proceeding preſent themſelves to us, but the paſſage of the mountain over which we were to carry the canoe as well as the baggage. As this was a very alarming enterprize, I diſpatched Mr. Mackay with three men and the two Indians to proceed in a ſtraight courſe from the top of the mountain, and to keep the line of the river till they ſhould find it navigable. If it ſhould be their opinion, that there was no practicable paſſage in that direction, two of them were inſtructed to return in order to make their report; while the others were to go in ſearch of the Indian carrying-place. While they were engaged in this excurſion, the people who remained with me were employed in gumming the canoe, and making handles for the axes. At noon I got an altitude, which made our latititude 56. o. 8. At three o'clock had time, when my watch was ſlow 1. 31. 32. apparent time.

At ſun-ſet, Mr. Mackay returned with one of the men, and in about two hours was followed by the others. They had penetrated thick woods, aſcended hills and ſunk into vallies, till they got beyond the rapids,

rapids, which, according to their calculation, was a diſtance of three leagues. The two parties returned by different routes, but they both agreed, that with all its difficulties, and they were of a very alarming nature, the outward courſe was that which muſt be preferred. Unpromiſing, however, as the account of their expedition appeared, it did not ſink them into a ſtate of diſcouragement; and a kettle of wild rice, ſweetened with ſugar, which had been prepared for their return, with their uſual regale of rum, ſoon renewed that courage which diſdained all obſtacles that threatened our progreſs: and they went to reſt, with a full determination to ſurmount them on the morrow. I ſat up, in the hope of getting an obſervation of Jupiter and his firſt ſatellite, but the cloudy weather prevented my obtaining it. 1793. May.

At break of day we entered on the extraordinary journey which was to occupy the remaining part of it. The men began, without delay, to cut a road up the mountain, and as the trees were but of ſmall growth, I ordered them to fell thoſe which they found convenient, in ſuch a manner, that they might fall parallel with the road, but, at the ſame time, not ſeparate them entirely from the ſtumps, ſo that they might form a kind of railing on either ſide. The baggage was now brought from the waterſide to our encampment. This was likewiſe from the ſteep ſhelving of the rocks, a very perilous undertaking, as one falſe ſtep of any of the people employed in it, would have been inſtantly followed by falling headlong into the water. When this important object was attained, the whole of the party proceeded with no ſmall degree of apprehenſion, to fetch the canoe, which, in a ſhort time, was alſo brought to the encampment; and, as ſoon as we had recovered from our fatigue, we Wedneſ. 22.

1793. May. advanced with it up the mountain, having the line doubled and faſtened ſucceſſively as we went on to the ſtumps; while a man at the end of it, hauled it round a tree, holding it on and ſhifting it as we proceeded; ſo that we may be ſaid, with ſtrict truth, to have warped the canoe up the mountain: indeed by a general and moſt laborious exertion, we got every thing to the ſummit by two in the afternoon. At noon, the latitude was 56. 0. 47 North. At five, I ſent the men to cut the road onwards, which they effected for about a mile, when they returned.

The weather was cloudy at intervals, with ſhowers and thunder. At about ten, I obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's ſecond ſatellite; time by the achrometer 8. 32. 20. by which I found the longitude to be 120. 29. 30. Weſt from Greenwich.

Thurſday 23. The weather was clear at four this morning, when the men began to carry. I joined Mr. Mackay, and the two Indians in the labour of cutting a road. The ground continued riſing gently till noon, when it began to decline; but though on ſuch an elevated ſituation, we could ſee but little, as mountains of a ſtill higher elevation and covered with ſnow, were ſeen far above us in every direction. In the afternoon the ground became very uneven; hills and deep defiles alternately preſented themſelves to us. Our progreſs, however, exceeded my expectation, and it was not till four in the afternoon that the carriers overtook us. At five, in a ſtate of fatigue that may be more readily conceived than expreſſed, we encamped near a rivulet or ſpring that iſſued from beneath a large maſs of ice and ſnow.

Our

Our toilſome journey of this day I compute at about three miles; along the firſt of which the land is covered with plenty of wood, conſiſting of large trees, encumbered with little underwood, through which it was by no means difficult to open a road, by following a well-beaten elk path: for the two ſucceeding miles we found the country overſpread with the trunks of trees, laid low by fire ſome years ago; among which large copſes had ſprung up of a cloſe growth, and intermixed with briars, ſo as to render the paſſage through them painful and tedious. The ſoil in the woods is light and of a duſky colour; that in the burned country is a mixture of ſand and clay with ſmall ſtones. The trees are ſpruce, red-pine, cypreſs, poplar, white birch, willow, alder, arrow-wood, red-wood, liard, ſervice-tree, bois-picant, &c. I never ſaw any of the laſt kind before. It riſes to about nine feet in height, grows in joints without branches, and is tufted at the extremity. The ſtem is of an equal ſize from the bottom to the top, and does not exceed an inch in diameter; it is covered with ſmall prickles, which caught our trowſers, and working through them, ſometimes found their way to the fleſh. The ſhrubs are, the gooſeberry, the currant, and ſeveral kinds of briars. 1793. May.

We continued our very laborious journey, which led us down ſome ſteep hills, and through a wood of tall pines. After much toil and trouble in bearing the canoe through the difficult paſſages which we encountered, at four in the afternoon we arrived at the river, ſome hundred yards above the rapids or falls, with all our baggage. I compute the diſtance of this day's progreſs to be about four miles; indeed I ſhould have meaſured the whole of the way, if I had not been obliged to engage perFriday 24.

1798. May. ſonally in the labour of making the road. But after all, the Indian carrying way, whatever may be its length, and I think it cannot exceed ten miles, will always be found more ſafe and expeditious than the paſſage which our toil and perſeverance formed and ſurmounted.

Thoſe of my people who viſited this place on the 21ſt, were of opinion that the water had riſen very much ſince that time. About two hundred yards below us the ſtream ruſhed with an aſtoniſhing but ſilent velocity, between perpendicular rocks, which are not more than thirty-five yards aſunder: when the water is high, it runs over thoſe rocks, in a channel three times that breadth, where it is bounded by far more elevated precipices. In the former are deep round holes, ſome of which are full of water, while others are empty, in whoſe bottom are ſmall round ſtones, as ſmooth as marble. Some of theſe natural cylinders would contain two hundred gallons. At a ſmall diſtance below the firſt of theſe rocks, the channel widens in a kind of zig-zag progreſſion; and it was really awful to behold with what infinite force the water drives againſt the rocks on one ſide, and with what impetuous ſtrength it is repelled to the other: it then falls back, as it were, into a more ſtrait but rugged paſſage, over which it is toſſed in high, foaming, half-formed billows, as far as the eye could follow it.

The young men informed me that this was the place where their relations had told me that I ſhould meet with a fall equal to that of Niagara: to exculpate them, however, from their apparent miſinformation, they declared that their friends were not accuſtomed to utter falſehoods, and that the fall had probably been deſtroyed by the force of the water. It is, however,

ever, very evident that thoſe people had not been here, or did not adhere to the truth. By the number of trees which appeared to have been felled with axes, we diſcovered that the Kniſteneaux, or ſome tribes who are known to employ that inſtrument, had paſſed this way. We paſſed through a ſnare encloſure, but ſaw no animals, though the country was very much interſected by their tracks. 1793. May.

It rained throughout the night, and till twelve this day; while the buſi- Saturday 25.
neſs of preparing great and ſmall poles, and putting the canoe in order, &c. cauſed us to remain here till five in the afternoon. I now attached a knife, with a ſteel, flint, beads, and other trifling articles to a pole, which I erected, and left as a token of amity to the natives. When I was making this arrangement, one of my attendants, whom I have already deſcribed under the title of the Cancre, added to my aſſortment a ſmall round piece of green wood, chewed at one end in the form of a bruſh, which the Indians uſe to pick the marrow out of bones. This he informed me was an emblem of a country abounding in animals. The water had riſen during our ſtay here one foot and an half perpendicular height.

We now embarked, and our courſe was North-Weſt one mile and three quarters. There were mountains on all ſides of us, which were covered with ſnow: one in particular, on the South ſide of the river, roſe to a great height. We continued to proceed Weſt three quarters of a mile, North-Weſt one mile, and Weſt-South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, when we encamped for the night. The Cancre killed a ſmall elk.

The

1793. May. Sunday 26. The weather was clear and ſharp, and between three and four in the morning we renewed our voyage, our firſt courſe being Weſt by South three miles and an half, when the men complained of the cold in their fingers, as they were obliged to puſh on the canoe with the poles. Here a ſmall river flowed in from the North. We now continued to ſteer Weſt-South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt a mile and an half, and Weſt two miles, when we found ourſelves on a parallel with a chain of mountains on both ſides the river, running South and North. The river, both yeſterday and the early part of to-day, was from four to eight hundred yards wide, and full of iſlands, but was at this time diminiſhed to about two hundred yards broad, and free from iſlands, with a ſmooth but ſtrong current. Our next courſe was South-Weſt two miles, when we encountered a rapid, and ſaw an encampment of the Kniſteneaux. We now proceeded North-Weſt by Weſt one mile, among iſlands, South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile, veered to South-Weſt through iſlands three miles and an half, and South by Eaſt half a mile. Here a river poured in on the left, which was the moſt conſiderable that we had ſeen ſince we had paſſed the mountain. At ſeven in the evening we landed and encamped.

Though the ſun had ſhone upon us throughout the day, the air was ſo cold that the men, though actively employed, could not reſiſt it without the aid of their blanket coats. This circumſtance might in ſome degree be expected from the ſurrounding mountains, which were covered with ice and ſnow; but as they are not ſo high as to produce the extreme cold which we ſuffered, it muſt be more particularly attributed

buted to the high ſituation of the country itſelf, rather than to the local elevation of the mountains, the greateſt height of which does not exceed fifteen hundred feet; though in general they do not riſe to half that altitude. But as I had not been able to take an exact meaſurement, I do not preſume upon the accuracy of my conjecture. Towards the bottom of theſe heights, which were clear of ſnow, the trees were putting forth their leaves, while thoſe in their middle region ſtill retained all the characteriſtics of winter, and on their upper parts there was little or no wood. 1793. May.

* The weather was clear, and we continued our voyage at the uſual hour, when we ſucceſſively found ſeveral rapids and points to impede our progreſs. At noon our latitude was 56. 5. 54. North. The Indians killed a ſtag; and one of the men who went to fetch it was very much endangered by the rolling down of a large ſtone from the heights above him. Monday 27.

The day was very cloudy. The mountains on both ſides of the river ſeemed to have ſunk, in their elevation, during the voyage of yeſterday. To-day they reſumed their former altitude, and run ſo cloſe on either ſide of the channel, that all view was excluded of every thing but themſelves. This part of the current was not broken by iſlands; but in the afternoon we approached ſome caſcades, which obliged us to carry our canoe and its lading for ſeveral hundred yards. Here we obſerved an encampment Tueſday 28.

* From this day, to the 4th of June the courſes of my voyage are omitted, as I loſt the book that contained them. I was in the habit of ſometimes indulging myſelf with a ſhort doze in the canoe, and I imagine that the branches of the trees bruſhed my book from me, when I was in ſuch a ſituation, which renders the account of theſe few days leſs diſtinct than uſual.

of

1793. May. of the natives, though ſome time had elapſed ſince it had been inhabited. The greater part of the day was divided between heavy ſhowers and ſmall rain; and we took our ſtation on the ſhore about ſix in the evening, about three miles above the laſt rapid.

Wedneſ. 29. The rain was ſo violent throughout the whole of this day, that we did not venture to proceed. As we had almoſt expended the contents of a rum-keg, and this being a day which allowed of no active employment, I amuſed myſelf with the experiment of encloſing a letter in it, and diſpatching it down the ſtream, to take its fate. I according introduced a written account of all our hardſhips, &c. carefully encloſed in bark, into the ſmall barrel by the bung-hole, which being carefully ſecured, I conſigned this epiſtolatory cargo to the mercy of the current.

Thurſd. 30. We were alarmed this morning at break of day, by the continual barking of our dog, who never ceaſed from running backwards and forwards in the rear of our ſituation: when, however, the day advanced, we diſcovered the cauſe of our alarm to proceed from a wolf, who was parading a ridge a few yards behind us, and had been moſt probably allured by the ſcent of our ſmall portion of freſh meet. The weather was cloudy, but it did not prevent us from renewing our progreſs at a very early hour. A conſiderable river appeared from the left, and we continued our courſe till ſeven in the evening, when we landed at night where there was an Indian encampment.

Friday 31. The morning was clear and cold, and the current very powerful. On croſſing the mouth of a river that flowed in from the right of us, we were

were very much endangered; indeed all the rivers which I have lately ſeen, appear to overflow their natural limits, as it may be ſuppoſed, from the melting of the mountain ſnow. The water is almoſt white, the bed of the river being of lime-ſtone. The mountains are one ſolid maſs of the ſame materials, but without the leaſt ſhade of trees, or decoration of foliage. At nine the men were ſo cold that we landed, in order to kindle a fire, which was conſidered as a very uncommon circumſtance at this ſeaſon; a ſmall quantity of rum, however, ſerved as an adequate ſubſtitute; and the current being ſo ſmooth as to admit of the uſe of paddles, I encouraged them to proceed without any further delay. In a ſhort time an extenſive view opened upon us, diſplaying a beautiful ſheet of water, that was heightened by the calmneſs of the weather, and a ſplendid ſun. Here the mountains, which were covered with wood, opened on either ſide, ſo that we entertained the hope of ſoon leaving them behind us. When we had got to the termination of this proſpect, the river was barred with rocks, forming caſcades and ſmall iſlands. To proceed onwards, we were under the neceſſity of clearing a narrow paſſage of the drift wood, on the left ſhore. Here the view convinced us that our late hopes were without foundation, as there appeared a ridge or chain of mountains, running South and North as far as the eye could reach. 1793. May.

On advancing two or three miles, we arrived at the fork, one branch running about Weſt-North-Weſt, and the other South-South-Eaſt. If I had been governed by my own judgment, I ſhould have taken the former, as it appeared to me to be the moſt likely to bring us neareſt to the part where I wiſhed to fall on the Pacific Ocean, but the old man,

1793. May. whom I have already mentioned as having been frequently on war expeditions in this country, had warned me not, on any account, to follow it, as it was ſoon loſt in various branches among the mountains, and that there was no great river that ran in any direction near it; but by following the latter, he ſaid, we ſhould arrive at a carrying-place to another large river, that did not exceed a day's march, where the inhabitants build houſes, and live upon iſlands. There was ſo much apparent truth in the old man's narrative, that I determined to be governed by it; for I did not entertain the leaſt doubt, if I could get into the other river, that I ſhould reach the ocean.

I accordingly ordered my ſteerſman to proceed at once to the Eaſt branch, which appeared to be more rapid than the other, though it did not poſſeſs an equal breadth. Theſe circumſtances diſpoſed my men and Indians, the latter in particular being very tired of the voyage, to expreſs their wiſhes that I ſhould take the Weſtern branch, eſpecially when they perceived the difficulty of ſtemming the current, in the direction on which I had determined. Indeed the ruſh of water was ſo powerful, that we were the greateſt part of the afternoon in getting two or three miles—a very tardy and mortifying progreſs, and which, with the voyage, was openly execrated by many of thoſe who were engaged in it: and the inexpreſſible toil theſe people had endured, as well as the dangers they had encountered, required ſome degree of conſideration; I therefore employed thoſe arguments which were the beſt calculated to calm their immediate diſcontents, as well as to encourage their future hopes, though, at the ſame, time I delivered my ſentiments in ſuch a manner as to convince them that I was determined to proceed.

On

On the 1ſt of June we embarked at ſun-riſe, and towards noon the current began to ſlacken; we then put to ſhore, in order to gum the canoe, when a meridian altitude gave me 55. 42. 16. North latitude. We then continued our courſe, and towards the evening the current began to recover its former ſtrength. Mr. Mackay and the Indians had already diſembarked, to walk and lighten the boat. At ſun-ſet we encamped on a point, being the firſt dry land which had been found on this ſide the river, that was fit for our purpoſe, ſince our people went on ſhore. In the morning we paſſed a large rapid river, that flowed in from the right. 1793. June.

In no part of the North-Weſt did I ſee ſo much beaver-work, within an equal diſtance, as in the courſe of this day. In ſome places they had cut down ſeveral acres of large poplars; and we ſaw alſo a great number of theſe active and ſagacious animals. The time which theſe wonderful creatures allot for their labours, whether in erecting their curious habitations, or providing food, is the whole of the interval between the ſetting and the riſing ſun.

Towards the duſky part of the evening we heard ſeveral diſcharges from the fowling pieces of our people, which we anſwered, to inform them of our ſituation; and ſome time after it was dark, they arrived in an equal ſtate of fatigue and alarm: they were alſo obliged to ſwim acroſs a channel in order to get to us, as we were ſituated on an iſland, though we were ignorant of the circumſtance, till they came to inform us. One of the Indians was poſitive that he heard the diſcharge of fire-arms above our encampment; and on comparing the number of our diſcharges with theirs, there appeared to be ſome foundation for his

1793. June. alarm, as we imagined that we had heard two reports more than they acknowledged; and, in their turn, they declared that they had heard twice the number of thoſe which we knew had proceeded from us. The Indians were therefore certain, that the Kniſteneaux muſt be in our vicinity, on a war expedition, and conſequently, if they were numerous, we ſhould have had no reaſon to expect the leaſt mercy from them in this diſtant country. Though I did not believe that circumſtance, or that any of the natives could be in poſſeſſion of fire-arms, I thought it right, at all events, we ſhould be prepared. Our fuſees were, therefore, primed and loaded, and having extinguiſhed our fire, each of us took his ſtation at the foot of a tree, where we paſſed an uneaſy and reſtleſs night.

The ſucceeding morning being clear and pleaſant, we proceeded at an early hour againſt a rapid current, interſected by iſlands. About eight we paſſed two large trees, whoſe roots having been undermined by the current, had recently fallen into the river; and, in my opinion, the craſh of their fall had occaſioned the noiſe which cauſed our late alarm. In this manner the water ravages the iſlands in theſe rivers, and by driving down great quantities of wood, forms the foundations of others. The men were ſo oppreſſed with fatigue, that it was neceſſary they ſhould encamp at ſix in the afternoon. We, therefore, landed on a ſandy iſland, which is a very uncommon object, as the greater part of the iſlands conſiſt of a bottom of round ſtones and gravel, covered from three to ten feet with mud and old drift-wood. Beaver-work was as frequently ſeen as on the preceding day.

On the 3d of June we renewed our voyage with the riſing ſun. At noon

noon I obtained a meridian altitude, which gave 55. 22. 3. North latitude. I alſo took time, and the watch was ſlow 1. 30. 14. apparent time. According to my calculation, this place is about twenty-five miles South-Eaſt of the fork.* 1798. June.

* I ſhall now proceed with my uſual regularity, which, as I have already mentioned, has been, for ſome days, ſuſpended, from the loſs of my book of obſervation.

CHAP.

CHAPTER V.

Continue our voyage. Heavy fog. The water riſes. Succeſſion of courſes. Progreſſive account of this branch. Leave the canoe to proceed, and aſcend an hill to reconnoitre. Climb a tree to extend my view of the country. Return to the river. The canoe not arrived. Go in ſearch of it. Extreme heat, muſquitoes, &c. Increaſing anxiety reſpecting the canoe. It at length appears. Violent ſtorm. Circumſtances of our progreſs. Forced to haul the canoe up the ſtream by the branches of trees. Succeſſion of courſes. Wild parſnips along the river. Expect to meet with natives. Courſes continued. Fall in with ſome natives. Our intercourſe with them. Account of their dreſs, arms, utenſils, and manners, &c. New diſcouragements and difficulties preſent themſelves.

1793. June. Tueſday 4. WE embarked this morning at four in a very heavy fog. The water had been continually riſing, and, in many places, overflowed its banks. The current alſo was ſo ſtrong, that our progreſs was very tedious, and required the moſt laborious exertions. Our courſe was this day, South-South-Eaſt one mile, South-South-Weſt half a mile, South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt by South one mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile three quarters, South-Eaſt by South half a mile, Eaſt by South a quarter

quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt by North a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt by South a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, North-North-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, to South by Eaſt one mile and an half. We could not find a place fit for an encampment, till nine at night, when we landed on a bank of gravel, of which little more appeared above water than the ſpot we occupied. 1793. June.

This morning we found our canoe and baggage in the water, which had continued riſing during the night. We then gummed the canoe, as we arrived at too late an hour to perform that operation on the preceding evening. This neceſſary buſineſs being completed, we traverſed to the North ſhore, where I diſembarked with Mr. Mackay, and the hunters, in order to aſcend an adjacent mountain, with the hope of obtaining a view of the interior part of the country. I directed my people to proceed with all poſſible diligence, and that, if they met with any accident, or found my return neceſſary, they ſhould fire two guns. They alſo underſtood, that when they ſhould hear the ſame ſignal from me, they were to anſwer, and wait for me, if I were behind them. Wedneſ. 5.

When we had aſcended to the ſummit of the hill, we found that it extended onwards in an even, level country; ſo that, encumbered as we were, with the thick wood, no diſtant view could be obtained; I therefore climbed a very loſty tree, from whoſe top I diſcerned on the right a ridge of mountains covered with ſnow, bearing about North-Weſt; from thence another ridge of high land, whereon no ſnow was viſible,

1793. June. viſible, ſtretched towards the South; between which and the ſnowy hills on the Eaſt ſide, there appeared to be an opening, which we determined to be the courſe of the river.

Having obtained all the ſatisfaction that the nature of the place would admit, we proceeded forward to overtake the canoe, and after a warm walk came down upon the river, when we diſcharged our pieces twice, but received no anſwering ſignal. I was of opinion, that the canoe was before us, while the Indians entertained an oppoſite notion. I, however, croſſed another point of land, and came again to the waterſide about ten. Here we had a long view of the river, which circumſtance excited in my mind, ſome doubts of my former ſentiments. We repeated our ſignals, but without any return; and as every moment now increaſed my anxiety, I left Mr. Mackay and one of the Indians at this ſpot to make a large fire, and ſend branches adrift down the current as notices of our ſituation, if the canoe was behind us; and proceeded with the other Indian acroſs a very long point, where the river makes a conſiderable bend, in order that I might be ſatisfied if the canoe was a-head. Having been accuſtomed, for the laſt fortnight to very cold weather, I found the heat of this day almoſt inſupportable, as our way lay over a dry ſand, which was relieved by no ſhade, but ſuch as a few ſcattered cypreſſes could afford us. About twelve we arrived once more at the river, and the diſcharge of our pieces was as unſucceſsful as it had hitherto been. The water ruſhed before us with uncommon velocity; and we alſo tried the experiment of ſending freſh branches down it. To add to the diſagreeableneſs of our ſituation, the gnats and muſquitoes appeared in ſwarms to torment us. When we returned to our companions, we found that they had not been contented

contented with remaining in the poſition where I had left them, but had been three or four miles down the river, but were come back to their ſtation, without having made any diſcovery of the people on the water. 1793. June.

Various very unpleaſing conjectures at once perplexed and diſtreſſed us: the Indians, who are inclined to magnify evils of any and every kind, had at once conſigned the canoe and every one on board it to the bottom; and were already ſettling a plan to return upon a raft, as well as calculating the number of nights that would be required to reach their home. As for myſelf, it will be eaſily believed, that my mind was in a ſtate of extreme agitation; and the imprudence of my conduct in leaving the people, in ſuch a ſituation of danger and toilſome exertion, added a very painful mortification to the ſevere apprehenſions I already ſuffered: it was an act of indiſcretion which might have put an end to the voyage that I had ſo much at heart, and compelled me at length to ſubmit to the ſcheme which my hunters had already formed for our return.

At half paſt ſix in the evening, Mr. Mackay and the Cancre ſet off to proceed down the river, as far as they could before the night came on, and to continue their journey in the morning to the place where we had encamped the preceding evening. I alſo propoſed to make my excurſion upwards; and, if we both failed of ſucceſs in meeting the canoe, it was agreed that we ſhould return to the place where we now ſeparated.

1793. June.

In this ſituation we had wherewithal to drink in plenty, but with ſolid food we were totally unprovided. We had not ſeen even a partridge throughout the day, and the tracks of rein-deer that we had diſcovered, were of an old date. We were, however, preparing to make a bed of the branches of trees, where we ſhould have had no other canopy than that afforded us by the heavens, when we heard a ſhot, and ſoon after another, which was the notice agreed upon, if Mr. Mackay and the Indian ſhould ſee the canoe: that fortunate circumſtance was alſo confirmed by a return of the ſignal from the people. I was, however, ſo fatigued from the heat and exerciſe of the day, as well as incommoded from drinking ſo much cold water, that I did not wiſh to remove till the following morning; but the Indian made ſuch bitter complaints of the cold and hunger which he ſuffered, that I complied with his ſolicitations to depart; and it was almoſt dark when we reached the canoe, barefooted, and drenched with rain. But theſe inconveniences affected me very little, when I ſaw myſelf once more ſurrounded with my people. They informed me, that the canoe had been broken; and that they had this day experienced much greater toil and hardſhips than on any former occaſion. I thought it prudent to affect a belief of every repreſentation that they made, and even to comfort each of them with a conſolatory dram: for, however difficult the paſſage might have been, it was too ſhort to have occupied the whole day, if they had not relaxed in their exertions. The rain was accompanied with thunder and lightning.

It appeared from the various encampments which we had ſeen, and from ſeveral paddles we had found, that the natives frequent this part of the

the country at the latter end of the ſummer and the fall. The courſe to day was nearly Eaſt-South-Eaſt two miles and an half, South by Weſt one mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile and an half, Eaſt two miles, and South-Eaſt by South one mile. 1793. June.

At half paſt four this morning we continued our voyage, our courſes being South-Eaſt by South one mile, Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles. The whole of this diſtance we proceeded by hauling the canoe from branch to branch. The current was ſo ſtrong, that it was impoſſible to ſtem it with the paddles; the depth was too great to receive any aſſiſtance from the poles, and the bank of the river was ſo cloſely lined with willows and other trees, that it was impoſſible to employ the line. As it was paſt twelve before we could find a place that would allow of our landing, I could not get a meridian altitude. We occupied the reſt of the day in repairing the canoe, drying our cloaths, and making paddles and poles to replace thoſe which had been broken or loſt. Thurſday 6.

The morning was clear and calm; and ſince we had been at this ſtation the water had riſen two inches; ſo that the current became ſtill ſtronger; and its velocity had already been ſo great as to juſtify our deſpair in getting up it, if we had not been ſo long accuſtomed to ſurmount it. I laſt night obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite, but inadvertently went to bed, without committing the exact time to writing: if my memory is correct, it was 8. 18. 10. by the time-piece. The canoe, which had been little better than a wreck, being now repaired, we proceeded Eaſt two miles and a Friday 7.

1793. June. quarter, South-South-Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, when we landed to take an altitude for time. We continued our route at South-Eaſt by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, and landed again to determine the latitude, which is 55. 2. 51. To this I add, 2. 45. Southing, which will make the place of taking altitude for time 55. 5. 36. with which I find that my time-piece was ſlow 1. 32. 23. apparent time; and made the longitude obtained 122. 35. 50. Weſt of Greenwich.

From this place we proceeded Eaſt by South four miles andan half, Eaſt-South-Eaſt one mile and an half, in which ſpace there falls in a ſmall river from the Eaſt; Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt a mile and an half, Eaſt a quarter of a mile, and encamped at ſeven o'clock. Mr. Mackay and the hunters walked the greateſt part of the day, and in the courſe of their excurſion killed a porcupine.* Here we found the bed of a very large bear quite freſh. During the day ſeveral Indian encampments were ſeen, which were of a late erection. The current had alſo loſt ſome of its impetuoſity during the greater part of the day.

Saturday 8. It rained and thundered through the night, and at four in the morning we again encountered the current. Our courſe was Eaſt a quarter of a mile, round to South by Eaſt along a very high white ſandy bank on the Eaſt ſhore, three quarters of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile and a quarter, South-Eaſt two miles, with a ſlack current; South-Eaſt by

* We had been obliged to indulge our hunters with ſitting idle in the canoe, leſt their being compelled to ſhare in the labour of navigating it ſhould diſguſt and drive them from us. We, therefore, employed them as much as poſſible on ſhore, as well to procure proviſions as to lighten the canoe.

Eaſt

1793. June.

Eaſt two miles and a quarter, Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt by South four miles and an half, South-Eaſt one mile and an half, South-South-Weſt half a mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt by South one mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, when the mountains were in full view in this direction, and Eaſtward. For the three laſt days we could only ſee them at ſhort intervals and long diſtances; but till then, they were continually in ſight on either ſide, from our entrance into the fork. Thoſe to the left were at no great diſtance from us.

For the laſt two days we had been anxiouſly looking out for the carrying-place, but could not diſcover it, and our only hope was in ſuch information as we ſhould be able to procure from the natives. All that remained for us to do, was to puſh forwards till the river ſhould be no longer navigable: it had now, indeed, overflowed its banks, ſo that it was eight at night before we could diſcover a place to encamp. Having found plenty of wild parſneps, we gathered the tops, and boiled them with pemmican for our ſupper.

Sunday 9.

The rain of this morning terminated in an heavy miſt at half paſt five, when we embarked and ſteered South-Eaſt one mile and an half, when it veered North-North-Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, Eaſt-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt three

quarters

1793. June. quarters of a mile, Eaſt by South half a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, when it veered to South-South-Eaſt half a mile, then back to Eaſt (when a blue mountain, clear of ſnow, appeared a-head) one mile and an half; North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt by North one mile, when it veered to South-Eaſt half a mile, then on to North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, and back to North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, South by Weſt a quarter of a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt to North-North-Eaſt half a mile, South-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, and Eaſt by North half a mile: here we perceived a ſmell of fire; and in a ſhort time heard people in the woods, as if in a ſtate of great confuſion, which was occaſioned, as we afterwards underſtood, by their diſcovery of us. At the ſame time this unexpected circumſtance produced ſome little diſcompoſure among ourſelves, as our arms were not in a ſtate of preparation, and we were as yet unable to aſcertain the number of the party. I conſidered, that if there were but few it would be needleſs to purſue them, as it would not be probable that we ſhould overtake them in theſe thick woods; and if they were numerous, it would be an act of great imprudence to make the attempt, at leaſt during their preſent alarm. I therefore ordered my people to ſtrike off to the oppoſite ſide, that we might ſee if any of them had ſufficient courage to remain; but, before we were half over the river, which, in this part, is not more than an hundred yards wide, two men appeared on a riſing ground over againſt us, brandiſhing their ſpears, diſplaying their bows and arrows, and accompanying their hoſtile geſtures with loud vociferations. My interpreter did not heſitate to aſſure them, that they might diſpel their apprehenſions, as we were white people, who meditated no injury, but were, on the contrary, deſirous of demonſtrating every

every mark of kindneſs and friendſhip. They did not, however, ſeem diſpoſed to confide in our declarations, and actually threatened, if we came over before they were more fully ſatisfied of our peaceable intentions, that they would diſcharge their arrows at us. This was a decided kind of conduct which I did not expect; at the ſame time I readily complied with their propoſition, and after ſome time had paſſed in hearing and anſwering their queſtions, they conſented to our landing, though not without betraying very evident ſymptoms of fear and diſtruſt. They, however, laid aſide their weapons, and when I ſtepped forward and took each of them by the hand, one of them, but with a very tremulous action, drew his knife from his ſleeve, and preſented it to me as a mark of his ſubmiſſion to my will and pleaſure. On our firſt hearing the noiſe of theſe people in the woods, we diſplayed our flag, which was now ſhewn to them as a token of friendſhip. They examined us, and every thing about us, with a minute and ſuſpicious attention. They had heard, indeed, of white men, but this was the firſt time that they had ever ſeen an human being of a complexion different from their own. The party had been here but a few hours; nor had they yet erected their ſheds; and, except the two men now with us, they had all fled, leaving their little property behind them. To thoſe which had given us ſuch a proof of their confidence, we paid the moſt conciliating attentions in our power. One of them I ſent to recal his people, and the other, for very obvious reaſons, we kept with us. In the mean time the canoe was unloaded, the neceſſary baggage carried up the hill, and the tents pitched. 1793. June.

Here I determined to remain till the Indians became ſo familiarized with us, as to give all the intelligence which we imagined might be obtained

1793. June. tained from them. In fact, it had been my intention to land where I might moſt probably diſcover the carrying-place, which was our more immediate object, and undertake marches of two or three days, in different directions, in ſearch of another river. If unſucceſsful in this attempt, it was my purpoſe to continue my progreſs up the preſent river, as far as it was navigable, and if we did not meet with natives to inſtruct us in our further progreſs, I had determined to return to the fork, and take the other branch, with the hope of better fortune.

It was about three in the afternoon when we landed, and at five the whole party of Indians were aſſembled. It conſiſted only of three men, three women, and ſeven or eight boys and girls. With their ſcratched legs, bleeding feet, and diſhevelled hair, as in the hurry of their flight they had left their ſhoes and leggins behind them, they diſplayed a moſt wretched appearance: they were conſoled, however, with beads, and other trifles, which ſeemed to pleaſe them; they had pemmican alſo given them to eat, which was not unwelcome, and in our opinion, at leaſt, ſuperior to their own proviſion, which conſiſted entirely of dried fiſh.

When I thought that they were ſufficiently compoſed, I ſent for the men to my tent, to gain ſuch information reſpecting the country as I concluded it was in their power to afford me. But my expectations were by no means ſatisfied: they ſaid that they were not acquainted with any river to the Weſtward, but that there was one from whence they were juſt arrived, over a carrying-place of eleven days march, which they repreſented as being a branch only of the river before us. Their iron-

work

work they obtained from the people who inhabit the bank of that river, and an adjacent lake, in exchange for beaver ſkins, and dreſſed mooſe ſkins. They repreſented the latter as travelling, during a moon, to get to the country of other tribes, who live in houſes, with whom they traffic for the ſame commodities; and that theſe alſo extend their journies in the ſame manner to the ſea coaſt, or, to uſe their expreſſion, the Stinking Lake, where they trade with people like us, that come there in veſſels as big as iſlands. They added, that the people to the Weſtward, as they have been told, are very numerous. Thoſe who inhabit the other branch they ſtated as conſiſting of about forty families, while they themſelves did not amount to more than a fourth of that number; and were almoſt continually compelled to remain in their ſtrong holds, where they ſometimes periſhed with cold and hunger, to ſecure themſelves from their enemies, who never failed to attack them whenever an opportunity preſented itſelf. 1793. June.

This account of the country, from a people who I had every reaſon to ſuppoſe were well acquainted with every part of it, threatened to diſconcert the project on which my heart was ſet, and in which my whole mind was occupied. It occurred to me, however, that from fear, or other motives, they might be tardy in their communication; I therefore aſſured them that, if they would direct me to the river which I deſcribed to them, I would come in large veſſels, like thoſe that their neighbours had deſcribed, to the mouth of it, and bring them arms and ammunition in exchange for the produce of their country; ſo that they might be able to defend themſelves againſt their enemies, and no longer remain in that abject, diſtreſſed, and fugitive ſtate in which they then lived. I

1793. June. added alſo, that in the mean time, if they would, on my return, accompany me below the mountains, to a country which was very abundant in animals, I would furniſh them, and their companions, with every thing they might want; and make peace between them and the Beaver Indians. But all theſe promiſes did not appear to advance the object of my inquiries, and they ſtill perſiſted in their ignorance of any ſuch river as I had mentioned, that diſcharged itſelf into the ſea.

In this ſtate of perplexity and diſappointment, various projects preſented themſelves to my mind, which were no ſooner formed than they were diſcovered to be impracticable, and were conſequently abandoned. At one time I thought of leaving the canoe, and every thing it contained, to go over land, and purſue that chain of connexion by which theſe people obtain their iron-work; but a very brief courſe of reflection convinced me that it would be impoſſible for us to carry proviſions for our ſupport through any conſiderable part of ſuch a journey, as well as preſents, to ſecure us a kind reception among the natives, and ammunition for the ſervice of the hunters, and to defend ourſelves againſt any act of hoſtility. At another time my ſolicitude for the ſucceſs of the expedition incited a wiſh to remain with the natives, and go to the ſea by the way they had deſcribed; but the accompliſhment of ſuch a journey, even if no accident ſhould interpoſe, would have required a portion of time which it was not in my power to beſtow. In my preſent ſtate of information, to proceed further up the river was conſidered as a fruitleſs waſte of toilſome exertion; and to return unſucceſsful, after all our labour, ſufferings, and dangers, was an idea too painful to indulge. Beſides, I could not yet abandon the hope that the Indians might not yet be ſufficiently

ficiently compoſed and confident, to diſcloſe their real knowledge of the country freely and fully to me. Nor was I altogether without my doubts reſpecting the fidelity of my interpreter, who being very much tired of the voyage, might be induced to withhold thoſe communications which would induce me to continue it. I therefore continued my attentions to the natives, regaled them with ſuch proviſions as I had, indulged their children with a taſte of ſugar, and determined to ſuſpend my converſation with them till the following morning. On my expreſſing a deſire to partake of their fiſh, they brought me a few dried trout, well cured, that had been taken in the river which they lately left. One of the men alſo brought me five beaver ſkins, as a preſent. 1793. June.

The ſolicitude that poſſeſſed my mind interrupted my repoſe; when the dawn appeared I had already quitted my bed, and was waiting with impatience for another conference with the natives. The ſun, however, had riſen before they left their leafy bowers, whither they had retired with their children, having moſt hoſpitably reſigned their beds, and the partners of them, to the ſolicitations of my young men. Monday 10.

I now repeated my inquiries, but my perplexity was not removed by any favourable variation in their anſwers. About nine, however, one of them, ſtill remaining at my fire, in converſation with the interpreters, I underſtood enough of his language to know that he mentioned ſomething about a great river, at the ſame time pointing ſignificantly up that which was before us. On my inquiring of the interpreter reſpecting that expreſſion, I was informed that he knew of a large river that runs towards the midday ſun, a branch of which flowed near the ſource of that which we

1793. June. were now navigating; and that there were only three ſmall lakes, and as many carrying-places, leading to a ſmall river, which diſcharges itſelf into the great river, but that the latter did not empty itſelf into the ſea. The inhabitants, he ſaid, built houſes, lived on iſlands, and were a numerous and warlike people. I deſired him to deſcribe the road to the other river, by delineating it with a piece of coal, on a ſtrip of bark, which he accompliſhed to my ſatisfaction. The opinion that the river did not diſcharge itſelf into the ſea, I very confidently imputed to his ignorance of the country.

My hopes were now renewed, and an object preſented itſelf which awakened my utmoſt impatience. To facilitate its attainment, one of the Indians was induced, by preſents, to accompany me as a guide to the firſt inhabitants, which we might expect to meet on the ſmall lakes in our way. I accordingly reſolved to depart with all expedition, and while my people were making every neceſſary preparation, I employed myſelf in writing the following deſcription of the natives around me:

They are low in ſtature, not exceeding five feet ſix or ſeven inches; and they are of that meagre appearance which might be expected in a people whoſe life is one ſucceſſion of difficulties, in procuring ſubſiſtence. Their faces are round, with high cheek bones; and their eyes, which are ſmall, are of a dark brown colour; the cartilage of their noſe is perforated, but without any ornaments ſuſpended from it; their hair is of a dingy black, hanging looſe and in diſorder over their ſhoulders, but irregularly cut in the front, ſo as not to obſtruct the ſight; their beards are eradicated, with the exception of a few ſtraggling hairs, and their complexion is a ſwarthy yellow.

Their

Their dreſs conſiſts of robes made of the ſkins of the beaver, the ground hog, and the rein-deer, dreſſed in the hair, and of the mooſe-ſkin without it. All of them are ornamented with a fringe, while ſome of them have taſſels hanging down the ſeams; thoſe of the ground hog are decorated on the fur ſide with the tails of the animal, which they do not ſeparate from them. Their garments they tie over the ſhoulders, and faſten them round the middle with a belt of green ſkin, which is as ſtiff as horn. Their leggins are long, and, if they were topped with a waiſtband, might be called trowſers: they, as well as their ſhoes, are made of dreſſed mooſe, elk, or rein-deer ſkin. The organs of generation they leave uncovered. 1793. June.

The women differ little in their dreſs from the men, except in the addition of an apron, which is faſtened round the waiſt, and hangs down to the knees. They are in general of a more luſty make than the other ſex, and taller in proportion, but infinitely their inferiors in cleanlineſs. A black artificial ſtripe croſſes the face beneath the eye, from ear to ear, which I firſt took for ſcabs, from the accumulation of dirt on it. Their hair, which is longer than that of the men, is divided from the forehead to the crown, and drawn back in long plaits behind the ears. They have alſo a few white beads, which they get where they procure their iron: they are from a line to an inch in length, and are worn in their ears, but are not of European manufacture. Theſe, with bracelets made of horn and bone, compoſe all the ornaments which decorate their perſons. Necklaces of the griſly or white bear's claws, are worn excluſively by the men.

Their

1793. June. Their arms conſiſt of bows made of cedar, ſix feet in length, with a ſhort iron ſpike at one end, and ſerve occaſionally as a ſpear. Their arrows are well made, barbed, and pointed with iron, flint, ſtone, or bone; they are feathered, and from two to two feet and an half in length. They have two kinds of ſpears, but both are double edged, and of well poliſhed iron; one of them is about twelve inches long, and two wide; the other about half the width, and two thirds of the length; the ſhafts of the firſt are eight feet in length, and the latter ſix. They have alſo ſpears made of bone. Their knives conſiſt of pieces of iron, ſhaped and handled by themſelves. Their axes are ſomething like our adze, and they uſe them in the ſame manner as we employ that inſtrument. They were, indeed, furniſhed with iron in a manner that I could not have ſuppoſed, and plainly proved to me that their communication with thoſe, who communicate with the inhabitants of the ſea coaſt, cannot be very difficult, and from their ample proviſion of iron weapons, the means of procuring it muſt be of a more diſtant origin than I had at firſt conjectured.

They have ſnares made of green ſkin, which they cut to the ſize of ſturgeon twine, and twiſt a certain number of them together; and though when completed they do not exceed the thickneſs of a cod-line, their ſtrength is ſufficient to hold a mooſe deer: they are from one and an half to two fathoms in length. Their nets and fiſhing lines are made of willow-bark and nettles; thoſe made of the latter are finer and ſmoother than if made with hempen thread. Their hooks are ſmall bones, fixed in pieces of wood ſplit for that purpoſe, and tied round with fine watape, which has been particularly deſcribed in the former voyage.

Their

Their kettles are alſo made of watape, which is ſo cloſely woven that they never leak, and they heat water in them, by putting red-hot ſtones into it. There is one kind of them, made of ſpruce-bark, which they hang over the fire, but at ſuch a diſtance as to receive the heat without being within reach of the blaze; a very tedious operation. They have various diſhes of wood and bark; ſpoons of horn and wood, and buckets; bags of leather and net-work, and baſkets of bark, ſome of which hold their fiſhing-tackle, while others are contrived to be carried on the back. They have a brown kind of earth in great abundance, with which they rub their clothes, not only for ornament but utility, as it prevents the leather from becoming hard after it has been wetted. They have ſpruce bark in great plenty, with which they make their canoes, an operation that does not require any great portion of ſkill or ingenuity, and is managed in the following manner.—The bark is taken off the tree the whole length of the intended canoe, which is commonly about eighteen feet, and is ſewed with watape at both ends; two laths are then laid, and fixed along the edge of the bark which forms the gunwale; in theſe are fixed the bars, and againſt them bear the ribs or timbers, that are cut to the length to which the bark can be ſtretched; and, to give additional ſtrength, ſtrips of wood are laid between them: to make the whole water-tight, gum is abundantly employed. Theſe veſſels carry from two to five people. Canoes of a ſimilar conſtruction were uſed by the Beaver Indians within theſe few years, but they now very generally employ thoſe made of the bark of the birch tree, which are by far more durable. Their paddles are about ſix feet long, and about one foot is occupied by the blade, which is in the ſhape of an heart.

1793. June.

1798. June. Previous to our departure, the natives had caught a couple of trout, of about ſix pounds weight, which they brought me, and I paid them with beads. They likewiſe gave me a net, made of nettles, the ſkin of a mooſe-deer, dreſſed, and a white horn in the ſhape of a ſpoon, which reſembles the horn of the buffalo of the Copper-Mine River; but their deſcription of the animal to which it belongs does not anſwer to that. My young men alſo got two quivers of excellent arrows, a collar of white bear's claws, of a great length, horn bracelets, and other articles, for which they received an ample remuneration.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VI.

Continue the voyage. State of the river. Succeſſion of courſes. Sentiment of the guide. Conical mountain. Continuation of courſes. Leave the main branch. Enter another. Deſcription of it. Saw beaver. Enter a lake. Arrive at the upper ſource of the Unjigah, or Peace River. Land, and croſs to a ſecond lake. Local circumſtances. Proceed to a third lake. Enter a river. Encounter various difficulties. In danger of being loſt. The circumſtances of that ſituation deſcribed. Alarm and diſſatisfaction among the people. They are at length compoſed. The canoe repaired. Roads cut through woods. Paſs moraſſes. The guide deſerts. After a ſucceſſion of difficulties, dangers, and toilſome marches, we arrive at the great river.

1793. June. Monday 10.

AT ten we were ready to embark. I then took leave of the Indians, but encouraged them to expect us in two moons, and expreſſed an hope that I ſhould find them on the road with any of their relations whom they might meet. I alſo returned the beaver ſkins to the man who had preſented them to me, deſiring him to take care of them till I came back; when I would purchaſe them of him. Our guide expreſſed much leſs concern about the undertaking in which he had engaged, than his companions, who appeared to be affected with great ſolicitude for his ſafety.

1793. June. We now puſhed off the canoe from the bank, and proceeded Eaſt half a mile, when a river flowed in from the left, about half as large as that which we were navigating. We continued the ſame courſe three quarters of a mile, when we miſſed two of our fowling pieces, which had been forgotten, and I ſent their owners back for them, who were abſent on this errand upwards of an hour. We now proceeded North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, North-Eaſt by North three quarters of a mile, when the current ſlackened: there was a verdant ſpot on the left, where, from the remains of ſome Indian timber-work, it appeared, that the natives have frequently encamped. Our next courſe was Eaſt one mile, and we ſaw a ridge of mountains covered with ſnow to the South-Eaſt. The land on our right was low and marſhy for three or four miles, when it roſe into a range of heights that extended to the mountains. We proceeded Eaſt-South-Eaſt a mile and an half, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, Eaſt by South half a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South-Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt a mile and a quarter, South-South-Eaſt half a mile, North-North-Eaſt a mile and an half: here a river flowed in from the left, which was about one-fourth part as large as that which received its tributary waters. We then continued Eaſt by South half a mile, to the foot of the mountain on the South of the above river. The courſe now veered ſhort, South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, Eaſt by South a quarter of a mile, South half a mile, South-Eaſt by South half a mile, South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, Eaſt by South a quarter of a mile, veered to Weſt-North-Weſt a quarter of a mile, South-Weſt one eighth of a mile, Eaſt South-Eaſt one quarter of a mile, Eaſt one ſixth of a mile, South-South-Weſt one twelfth of a mile,

Eaſt

East South-East one eighth of a mile, North-East by East one third of a mile, East by North one twelfth of a mile, North-East by East one third of a mile, East one fixteenth of a mile, South-East one twelfth of a mile, North-East by East one twelfth of a mile, East one eighth of a mile, and East-South-East half a mile, when we landed at feven o'clock and encamped. During the greateft part of the diftance we came to-day, the river runs clofe under the mountains on the left. 1798. June.

The morning was clear and cold. On my interpreter's encouraging the guide to difpel all apprehenfion, to maintain his fidelity to me, and not to defert in the night, "How is it poffible for me," he replied, "to "leave the lodge of the Great Spirit!—When he tells me that he has no "further occafion for me, I will then return to my children." As we proceeded, however, he foon loft, and with good reafon, his exalted notions of me. Tuefday 11.

At four we continued our voyage, fteering Eaft by South a mile and an half, Eaft by Eaft half a mile. A river appeared on the left, at the foot of a mountain which, from its conical form, my young Indian called the Beaver Lodge Mountain. Having proceeded South-South-Eaft half a mile, another river appeared from the right. We now came in a line with the beginning of the mountains we faw yefterday: others of the fame kind ran parallel with them on the left fide of the river, which was reduced to the breadth of fifteen yards, and with a moderate current.

We now fteered Eaft-North-Eaft one eighth of a mile, South-Eaft by

1793. June. South one eighth of a mile, East-South-East one ſixth of a mile, South-Weſt one eighth of a mile, East-South-East one eighth of a mile, South-South-East one ſixth of a mile, North-East by East one twelfth of a mile, East-South-East half a mile, South-Weſt by Weſt one third of a mile, South-South-East one eighth of a mile, South-South-Weſt one quarter of a mile, North-East one ſixth of a mile, South by Weſt one fourth of a mile, East three quarters of a mile, and North-East one quarter of a mile. Here the mountain on the left appeared to be compoſed of a ſucceſſion of round hills, covered with wood almoſt to their ſummits, which were white with ſnow, and crowned with withered trees. We now ſteered East, in a line with the high lands on the right five miles; North one twelfth of a mile, North-East by North one eighth of a mile, South by East one ſixteenth of a mile, North-East by North one fourth of a mile, where another river fell in from the right; North-East by East one ſixth of a mile, East two miles and an half, South one twelfth of a mile, North-East half a mile, South-East one third of a mile, East one mile and a quarter, South-South-Weſt one ſixteenth of a mile, North-East by East half a mile, East one mile and three quarters, South and South-Weſt by Weſt half a mile, North-East half a mile, South one third of a mile, North-East by North one ſixth of a mile, East by South one fourth of a mile, South one eighth of a mile, South-East three quarters of a mile. The canoe had taken in ſo much water, that it was neceſſary for us to land here, in order to ſtop the leakage, which occaſioned the delay of an hour and a quarter, North-East a quarter of a mile, East-North-East a quarter of a mile, South-East by South a ſixteenth of a mile, East by South a twelfth of a mile, North-East one ſixth of a mile, East-South-East one ſixteenth of a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, North-East a

quarter

quarter of a mile, Eaſt by South half a mile, South-South-Eaſt one twelfth of a mile, Eaſt half a mile, North-Eaſt by North a quarter of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, North-Eaſt by North one twelfth of a mile, where a ſmall river flowed in from the left, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one twelfth of a mile, South by Eaſt a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt one eighth of a mile, Eaſt one twelfth of a mile, North-Eaſt by North a quarter of a mile, South half a mile, South-Eaſt by South one eighth of a mile, North-Eaſt one fourth of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt, and South-Eaſt by South one third of a mile, Eaſt-South-Eaſt, and North-North-Eaſt one third of a mile, and South by Weſt, Eaſt and Eaſt-North-Eaſt one eighth of a mile. 1793. June.

Here we quitted the main branch, which, according to the information of our guide, terminates at a ſhort diſtance, where it is ſupplied by the ſnow which covers the mountains. In the ſame direction is a valley which appears to be of very great depth, and is full of ſnow, that riſes nearly to the height of the land, and forms a reſervoir of itſelf ſufficient to furniſh a river, whenever there is a moderate degree of heat. The branch which we left was not, at this time, more than ten yards broad, while that which we entered was ſtill leſs. Here the current was very trifling, and the channel ſo meandering, that we ſometimes found it difficult to work the canoe forward. The ſtraight courſe from this to the entrance of a ſmall lake or pond, is about Eaſt one mile. This entrance by the river into the lake was almoſt choked up by a quantity of drift-wood, which appeared to me to be an extraordinary circumſtance; but I afterwards found that it falls down from the mountains. The water, however, was ſo high, that the country

was

1793. June. was entirely overflowed, and we paſſed with the canoe among the branches of trees. The principal wood along the banks is ſpruce, intermixed with a few white birch, growing on detached ſpots, the intervening ſpaces being covered with willow and alder. We advanced about a mile in the lake, and took up our ſtation for the night at an old Indian encampment. Here we expected to meet with natives, but were diſappointed; but our guide encouraged us with the hope of ſeeing ſome on the morrow. We ſaw beaver in the courſe of the afternoon, but did not diſcharge our pieces, from the fear of alarming the inhabitants; there were alſo ſwans in great numbers, with geeſe and ducks, which we did not diſturb for the ſame reaſon. We obſerved alſo the tracks of mooſe-deer that had croſſed the river; and wild parſneps grew here in abundance, which have been already mentioned as a grateful vegetable. Of birds, we ſaw blue jays, yellow birds, and one beautiful humming-bird: of the firſt and laſt, I had not ſeen any ſince I had been in the North-Weſt.

The weather was the ſame as yeſterday, and we proceeded between three and four in the morning. We took up the net which we had ſet the preceding evening, when it contained a trout, one white fiſh, one carp, and three jub. The lake is about two miles in length, Eaſt by South, and from three to five hundred yards wide. This I conſider as the higheſt and Southernmoſt ſource of the Unjigah, or Peace River, latitude, 54. 24. North, longitude 121. Weſt of Greenwich, which, after a winding courſe through a vaſt extent of country, receiving many large rivers in its progreſs, and paſſing through the Slave Lake, empties itſelf into the Frozen Ocean, in 70. North latitude, and about 135 Weſt longitude.

We

We landed and unloaded, where we found a beaten path leading over a low ridge of land of eight hundred and ſeventeen paces in length to another ſmall lake. The diſtance between the two mountains at this place is about a quarter of a mile, rocky precipices preſenting themſelves on both ſides. A few large ſpruce trees and liards were ſcattered over the carrying-place. There were alſo willows along the ſide of the water, with plenty of graſs and weeds. The natives had left their old canoes here, with baſkets hanging on the trees, which contained various articles. From the latter I took a net, ſome hooks, a goat's-horn, and a kind of wooden trap, in which, as our guide informed me, the ground-hog is taken. I left, however, in exchange, a knife, ſome fire-ſteels, beads, awls, &c. Here two ſtreams tumble down the rocks from the right, and loſe themſelves in the lake which we had left; while two others fall from the oppoſite heights, and glide into the lake which we were approaching; this being the higheſt point of land dividing theſe waters, and we are now going with the ſtream. This lake runs in the ſame courſe as the laſt, but is rather narrower, and not more than half the length. We were obliged to clear away ſome floating drift-wood to get to the carrying-place, over which is a beaten path of only an hundred and ſeventy-five paces long. The lake empties itſelf by a ſmall river, which, if the channel were not interrupted by large trees that had fallen acroſs it, would have admitted of our canoe with all its lading: the impediment, indeed, might have been removed by two axe-men in a few hours. On the edge of the water, we obſerved a large quantity of thick, yellow, ſcum or froth, of an acrid taſte and ſmell. 1793. June.

We

1793. June. We embarked on this lake, which is in the ſame courſe, and about the ſame ſize as that which we had juſt left, and from whence we paſſed into a ſmall river, that was ſo full of fallen wood, as to employ ſome time, and require ſome exertion, to force a paſſage. At the entrance, it afforded no more water than was juſt ſufficient to bear the canoe; but it was ſoon increaſed by many ſmall ſtreams which came in broken rills down the rugged ſides of the mountains, and were furniſhed, as I ſuppoſe, by the melting of the ſnow. Theſe acceſſory ſtreamlets had all the coldneſs of ice. Our courſe continued to be obſtructed by banks of gravel, as well as trees which had fallen acroſs the river. We were obliged to force our way through the one, and to cut through the other, at a great expence of time and trouble. In many places the current was alſo very rapid and meandering. At four in the afternoon, we ſtopped to unload and carry, and at five we entered a ſmall round lake of about one third of a mile in diameter. From the laſt lake to this is, I think, in a ſtraight line, Eaſt by South ſix miles, though it is twice that diſtance by the winding of the river. We again entered the river, which ſoon ran with great rapidity, and ruſhed impetuouſly over a bed of flat ſtones. At half paſt ſix we were ſtopped by two large trees that lay acroſs the river, and it was with great difficulty that the canoe was prevented from driving againſt them. Here we unloaded and formed our encampment.

The weather was cloudy and raw, and as the circumſtances of this day's voyage had compelled us to be frequently in the water, which was cold as ice, we were almoſt in a benumbed ſtate. Some of the people who had gone aſhore to lighten the canoe, experienced great difficulty

ficulty in reaching us, from the rugged ſtate of the country; it was, indeed, almoſt dark when they arrived. We had no ſooner landed than I ſent two men down the river to bring me ſome account of its circumſtances, that I might form a judgment of the difficulties which might await us on the morrow; and they brought back a fearful detail of rapid currents, fallen trees, and large ſtones. At this place our guide manifeſted evident ſymptoms of diſcontent: he had been very much alarmed in going down ſome of the rapids with us, and expreſſed an anxiety to return. He ſhewed us a mountain, at no great diſtance, which he repreſented as being on the other ſide of a river, into which this empties itſelf. 1793. June.

At an early hour of this morning the men began to cut a road, in order to carry the canoe and lading beyond the rapid; and by ſeven they were ready. That buſineſs was ſoon effected, and the canoe reladen, to proceed with the current which ran with great rapidity. In order to lighten her, it was my intention to walk with ſome of the people; but thoſe in the boat with great earneſtneſs requeſted me to embark, declaring, at the ſame time, that, if they periſhed, I ſhould periſh with them. I did not then imagine in how ſhort a period their apprehenſion would be juſtified. We accordingly puſhed off, and had proceeded but a very ſhort way when the canoe ſtruck, and notwithſtanding all our exertions, the violence of the current was ſo great as to drive her ſideways down the river, and break her by the firſt bar, when I inſtantly jumped into the water, and the men followed my example; but before we could ſet her ſtraight, or ſtop her, we came to deeper water, ſo that we were obliged to re-embark with the utmoſt precipitation. One of the men Thurſday 13.

1793. June. who was not ſufficiently active, was left to get on ſhore in the beſt manner in his power. We had hardly regained our ſituations when we drove againſt a rock which ſhattered the ſtern of the canoe in ſuch a manner, that it held only by the gunwales, ſo that the ſteerſman could no longer keep his place. The violence of this ſtroke drove us to the oppoſite ſide of the river, which is but narrow, when the bow met with the ſame fate as the ſtern. At this moment the foreman ſeized on ſome branches of a ſmall tree in the hope of bringing up the canoe, but ſuch was their elaſticity that, in a manner not eaſily deſcribed, he was jerked on ſhore in an inſtant, and with a degree of violence that threatened his deſtruction. But we had no time to turn from our own ſituation to inquire what had befallen him; for, in a few moments, we came acroſs a caſcade which broke ſeveral large holes in the bottom of the canoe, and ſtarted all the bars, except one behind the ſcooping ſeat. If this accident, however, had not happened, the veſſel muſt have been irretrievably overſet. The wreck becoming flat on the water, we all jumped out, while the ſteerſman, who had been compelled to abandon his place, and had not recovered from his fright, called out to his companions to ſave themſelves. My peremptory commands ſuperſeded the effects of his fear, and they all held faſt to the wreck; to which fortunate reſolution we owed our ſafety, as we ſhould otherwiſe have been daſhed againſt the rocks by the force of the water, or driven over the caſcades. In this condition we were forced ſeveral hundred yards, and every yard on the verge of deſtruction; but, at length, we moſt fortunately arrived in ſhallow water and a ſmall eddy, where we were enabled to make a ſtand, from the weight of the canoe reſting on the ſtones, rather than from any exertions of our exhauſted ſtrength. For though our efforts were ſhort, they were puſhed to the utmoſt,

utmoſt, as life or death depended on them. This alarming ſcene, with all its terrors and dangers, occupied only a few minutes; and in the preſent ſuſpenſion of it, we called to the people on ſhore to come to our aſſiſtance, and they immediately obeyed the ſummons. The foreman, however, was the firſt with us; he had eſcaped unhurt from the extraordinary jerk with which he was thrown out of the boat, and juſt as we were beginning to take our effects out of the water, he appeared to give his aſſiſtance. The Indians, when they ſaw our deplorable ſituation, inſtead of making the leaſt effort to help us, ſat down and gave vent to their tears. I was on the outſide of the canoe, where I remained till every thing was got on ſhore, in a ſtate of great pain from the extreme cold of the water; ſo that at length, it was with difficulty I could ſtand, from the benumbed ſtate of my limbs. 1793. June.

The loſs was conſiderable and important, for it conſiſted of our whole ſtock of balls, and ſome of our furniture; but theſe conſiderations were forgotten in the impreſſions of our miraculous eſcape. Our firſt inquiry was after the abſent man, whom in the firſt moment of danger, we had left to get on ſhore, and in a ſhort time his appearance removed our anxiety. We had, however, ſuſtained no perſonal injury of conſequence, and my bruiſes ſeemed to be in the greater proportion.

All the different articles were now ſpread out to dry. The powder had fortunately received no damage, and all my inſtruments had eſcaped. Indeed, when my people began to recover from their alarm, and to enjoy a ſenſe of ſafety, ſome of them, if not all, were by no means ſorry for

1793. June. our late misfortune, from the hope that it muſt put a period to our voyage, particularly as we were without a canoe, and all the bullets ſunk in the river. It did not, indeed, ſeem poſſible to them that we could proceed under theſe circumſtances. I liſtened, however, to the obſervations that were made on the occaſion without replying to them, till their panic was diſpelled, and they had got themſelves warm and comfortable, with an hearty meal, and rum enough to raiſe their ſpirits.

I then addreſſed them, by recommending them all to be thankful for their late very narrow eſcape. I alſo ſtated, that the navigation was not impracticable in itſelf, but from our ignorance of its courſe; and that our late experience would enable us to purſue our voyage with greater ſecurity. I brought to their recollection, that I did not deceive them, and that they were made acquainted with the difficulties and dangers they muſt expect to encounter, before they engaged to accompany me. I alſo urged the honour of conquering diſaſters, and the diſgrace that would attend them on their return home, without having attained the object of the expedition. Nor did I fail to mention the courage and reſolution which was the peculiar boaſt of the North men; and that I depended on them, at that moment, for the maintenance of their character. I quieted their apprehenſion as to the loſs of the bullets, by bringing to their recollection that we ſtill had ſhot from which they might be manufactured. I at the ſame time acknowledged the difficulty of reſtoring the wreck of the canoe, but confided in our ſkill and exertion to put it in ſuch a ſtate as would carry us on to where we might procure bark, and build a new one. In ſhort, my harangue

rangue produced the deſired effect, and a very general aſſent appeared to go wherever I ſhould lead the way. 1793. June.

Various opinions were offered in the preſent poſture of affairs, and it was rather a general wiſh that the wreck ſhould be abandoned, and all the lading carried to the river, which our guide informed us was at no great diſtance, and in the vicinity of woods where he believed there was plenty of bark. This project ſeemed not to promiſe that certainty to which I looked in my preſent operations; beſides, I had my doubts reſpecting the views of my guide, and conſequently could not confide in the repreſentation he made to me. I therefore diſpatched two of the men at nine in the morning, with one of the young Indians, for I did not venture to truſt the guide out of my ſight, in ſearch of bark, and to endeavour, if it were poſſible, in the courſe of the day, to penetrate to the great river, into which that before us diſcharges itſelf in the direction which the guide had communicated. I now joined my people in order to repair, as well as circumſtances would admit, our wreck of a canoe, and I began to ſet them the example.

At noon I had an altitude, which gave 54. 23. North latitude. At four in the afternoon I took time, with the hope that in the night I might obtain an obſervation of Jupiter, and his ſatellites, but I had not a ſufficient horizon, from the propinquity of the mountains. The reſult of my calculation for time was 1. 38. 28. ſlow apparent time.

It now grew late, and the people who had been ſent on the excurſion already mentioned, were not yet returned; about ten o'clock, however,

1793. June. however, I heard a man halloo, and I very gladly returned the ſignal. In a ſhort time our young Indian arrived with a ſmall roll of indifferent bark: he was oppreſſed with fatigue and hunger, and his clothes torn to rags: he had parted with the other two men at ſun-ſet, who had walked the whole day, in a dreadful country, without procuring any good bark, or being able to get to the large river. His account of the river, on whoſe banks we were, could not be more unfavourable or diſcouraging; it had appeared to him to be little more than a ſucceſſion of falls and rapids, with occaſional interruptions of fallen trees.

Our guide became ſo diſſatisfied and troubled in mind, that we could not obtain from him any regular account of the country before us. All we could collect from him was, that the river into which this empties itſelf is but a branch of a large river, the great fork being at no great diſtance from the confluence of this; and that he knew of no lake, or large body of ſtill water, in the vicinity of theſe rivers. To this account of the country, he added ſome ſtrange, fanciful, but terrifying deſcriptions of the natives, ſimilar to thoſe which were mentioned in the former voyage.

We had an eſcape this day, which I muſt add to the many inſtances of good fortune which I experienced in this perilous expedition. The powder had been ſpread out, to the amount of eighty pounds weight, to receive the air; and, in this ſituation, one of the men careleſsly and compoſedly walked acroſs it with a lighted pipe in his mouth, but without any ill conſequence reſulting from ſuch an act of criminal negligence. I need not add that one ſpark might have put a period to all my anxiety and ambition.

I obſerved

I obſerved ſeveral trees and plants on the banks of this river, which I had not ſeen to the North of the latitude 52. ſuch as the cedar, maple, hemlock, &c. At this time the water roſe faſt, and paſſed on with the rapidity of an arrow ſhot from a bow. 1793. June.

The weather was fine, clear, and warm, and at an early hour of the morning we reſumed our repair of the canoe. At half paſt ſeven our two men returned hungry and cold, not having taſted food, or enjoyed the leaſt repoſe for twenty-four hours, with their clothes torn into tatters, and their ſkin lacerated, in paſſing through the woods. Their account was the ſame as that brought by the Indian, with this exception, that they had reaſon to think they ſaw the river, or branch which our guide had mentioned; but they were of opinion that from the frequent obſtructions in this river, we ſhould have to carry the whole way to it, through a dreadful country, where much time and labour would be required to open a paſſage through it. Friday 14.

Diſcouraging as theſe accounts were, they did not, however, interrupt for a moment the taſk in which we were engaged, of repairing the canoe; and this work we contrived to complete by the concluſion of the day. The bark which was brought by the Indian, with ſome pieces of oil-cloth, and plenty of gum, enabled us to put our ſhattered veſſel in a condition to anſwer our preſent purpoſes. The guide, who has been mentioned as manifeſting continual ſigns of diſſatisfaction, now aſſumed an air of contentment, which I attributed to a ſmoke that was viſible in the direction of the river; as he naturally expected, if we ſhould fall in with any natives, which was now very probable, from ſuch a circumſtance, that

1793. June. that he ſhould be releaſed from a ſervice which he had found ſo irkſome and full of danger. I had an obſervation at noon, which made our latitude 54. 23. 43. North. I alſo took time, and found it ſlow apparent time 1. 38. 44.

Saturday 15. The weather continued the ſame as the preceding day, and according to the directions which I had previouſly given, my people began at a very early hour to open a road, through which we might carry a part of our lading; as I was fearful of riſquing the whole of it in the canoe, in its preſent weak ſtate, and in a part of the river which is full of ſhoals and rapids. Four men were employed to conduct her, lightened as ſhe was of twelve packages. They paſſed ſeveral dangerous places, and met with various obſtructions, the current of the river being frequently ſtopped by rafts of drift wood, and fallen trees, ſo that after fourteen hours hard labour we had not made more than three miles. Our courſe was South-Eaſt by Eaſt, and as we had not met with any accident, the men appeared to feel a renewed courage to continue their voyage. In the morning, however, one of the crew, whoſe name was Beauchamp, peremptorily refuſed to embark in the canoe. This being the firſt example of abſolute diſobedience which had yet appeared during the courſe of our expedition, I ſhould not have paſſed it over without taking ſome very ſevere means to prevent a repetition of it; but as he had the general character of a ſimple fellow, among his companions, and had been frightened out of what little ſenſe he poſſeſſed, by our late dangers, I rather preferred to conſider him as unworthy of accompanying us, and to repreſent him as an object of ridicule and contempt for his puſillanimous behaviour; though, in fact, he was a very uſeful, active, and laborious man.

At

At the cloſe of the day we aſſembled round a blazing fire; and the whole party, being enlivened with the uſual beverage which I ſupplied on theſe occaſions, forgot their fatigues and apprehenſions; nor did they fail to anticipate the pleaſure they ſhould enjoy in getting clear of their preſent difficulties, and gliding onwards with a ſtrong and ſteady ſtream, which our guide had deſcribed as the characteriſtic of the large river we ſoon expected to enter. 1793. June.

The fine weather continued, and we began our work, as we had done the preceding day; ſome were occupied in opening a road, others were carrying, and the reſt employed in conducting the canoe. I was of the firſt party, and ſoon diſcovered that we had encamped about half a mile above ſeveral falls, over which we could not attempt to run the canoe, lightened even as ſhe was. This circumſtance rendered it neceſſary that the road ſhould be made ſufficiently wide to admit the canoe to paſs; a tedious and toilſome work. In running her down a rapid above the falls, an hole was broken in her bottom, which occaſioned a conſiderable delay, as we were deſtitute of the materials neceſſary for her effectual reparation. On my being informed of this misfortune, I returned, and ordered Mr. Mackay, with two Indians, to quit their occupation in making the road, and endeavour to penetrate to the great river, according to the direction which the guide had communicated, without paying any attention to the courſe of the river before us. Sunday 16.

When the people had repaired the canoe in the beſt manner they were able, we conducted her to the head of the falls; ſhe was then unloaded and taken out of the water, when we carried her for a conſiderable diſ-

1793. June. tance through a low, ſwampy country. I appointed four men to this laborious office, which they executed at the peril of their lives, for the canoe was now become ſo heavy, from the additional quantity of bark and gum neceſſary to patch her up, that two men could not carry her more than an hundred yards, without being relieved; and as their way lay through deep mud, which was rendered more difficult by the roots and proſtrate trunks of trees, they were every moment in danger of falling; and beneath ſuch a weight, one falſe ſtep might have been attended with fatal conſequences. The other two men and myſelf followed as faſt as we could, with the lading. Thus did we toil till ſeven o'clock in the evening, to get to the termination of the road that had been made in the morning. Here Mr. Mackay and the Indian joined us, after having been at the river, which they repreſented as rather large. They had alſo obſerved, that the lower part of the river before us was ſo full of fallen wood, that the attempt to clear a paſſage through it, would be an unavailing labour. The country through which they had paſſed was moraſs, and almoſt impenetrable wood. In paſſing over one of the embarras, our dog, which was following them, fell in, and it was with very great difficulty that he was ſaved, as the current had carried him under the drift. They brought with them two geeſe, which had been ſhot in the courſe of their expedition. To add to our perplexities and embarraſſments, we were perſecuted by muſquitoes and ſand-flies, through the whole of the day.

The extent of our journey was not more than two miles South-Eaſt; and ſo much fatigue and pain had been ſuffered in the courſe of it, that my people, as might be expected, looked forward to a continuance of it with diſcouragement and diſmay. I was, indeed, informed that murmurs

murs prevailed among them, of which, however, I took no notice. When we were aſſembled together for the night, I gave each of them a dram, and in a ſhort time they retired to the repoſe which they ſo much required. We could diſcover the termination of the mountains at a conſiderable diſtance on either ſide of us, which, according to my conjecture, marked the courſe of the great river. On the mountains to the Eaſt there were ſeveral fires, as their ſmokes were very viſible to us. Exceſſive heat prevailed throughout the day. 1793. June.

Having ſat up till twelve laſt night, which had been my conſtant practice ſince we had taken our preſent guide, I awoke Mr. Mackay to watch him in turn. I then laid down to reſt, and at three I was awakened to be informed that he had deſerted. Mr. Mackay, with whom I was diſpleaſed on this occaſion, and the Cancre, accompanied by the dog, went in ſearch of him, but he had made his eſcape: a deſign which he had for ſome time meditated, though I had done every thing in my power to induce him to remain with me. Monday 17.

This misfortune did not produce any relaxation in our exertions. At an early hour of the morning we were all employed in cutting a paſſage of three quarters of a mile, through which we carried our canoe and cargo, when we put her into the water with her lading, but in a very ſhort time were ſtopped by the drift-wood, and were obliged to land and carry. In ſhort, we purſued our alternate journies, by land and water, till noon, when we could proceed no further, from the various ſmall unnavigable channels into which the river branched in every direction; and no other mode of getting forward now remained for us, but

1793. June. by cutting a road acroſs a neck of land. I accordingly diſpatched two men to aſcertain the exact diſtance, and we employed the interval of their abſence in unloading and getting the canoe out of the water. It was eight in the evening when we arrived at the bank of the great river. This journey was three quarters of a mile Eaſt-North-Eaſt, through a continued ſwamp, where, in many places, we waded up to the middle of our thighs. Our courſe in the ſmall river was about South-Eaſt by Eaſt three miles. At length we enjoyed, after all our toil and anxiety, the inexpreſſible ſatisfaction of finding ourſelves on the bank of a navigable river, on the Weſt ſide of the firſt great range of mountains.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VII.

Rainy night. Proceed on the great river. Circumſtances of it. Account of courſes. Come to rapids. Obſerve ſeveral ſmokes. See a flight of white ducks. Paſs over a carrying-place with the canoe, &c. The difficulties of that paſſage. Abundance of wild onions. Re-embark on the river. See ſome of the natives. They deſert their camp and fly into the woods. Courſes continued. Kill a red deer, &c. Circumſtances of the river. Arrive at an Indian habitation. Deſcription of it. Account of a curious machine to catch fiſh. Land to procure bark for the purpoſe of conſtructing a new canoe. Conceal a quantity of pemmican for proviſion on our return. Succeſſion of courſes. Meet with ſome of the natives. Our intercourſe with them. Their information reſpecting the river, and the country. Deſcription of thoſe people.

1793. June. Tueſday 18.

IT rained throughout the night and till ſeven in the morning; nor was I ſorry that the weather gave me an excuſe for indulging my people with that additional reſt, which their fatigues, during the laſt three days, rendered ſo comfortable to them. Before eight, however, we were on the water, and driven on by a ſtrong current, when we ſteered Eaſt-South-Eaſt half a mile, South-Weſt by South half a mile, South-South-Eaſt half a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, went round to North-Weſt half a mile,

1793. June. mile, backed South-South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-South-Weſt half a mile, South by Eaſt a quarter of a mile, and South-Weſt by South three quarters of a mile. Here the water had fallen conſiderably, ſo that ſeveral mud and ſand-banks were viſible. There was alſo an hill ahead, Weſt-South-Weſt.

The weather was ſo hazy that we could not ſee acroſs the river, which is here about two hundred yards wide. We now proceeded South by Weſt one third of a mile, when we ſaw a conſiderable quantity of beaver work along the banks, North-North-Weſt, half a mile, South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and an half, South-South-Weſt one third of a mile, Weſt by South one third of a mile, South by Eaſt half a mile. Mountains roſe on the left, immediately above the river, whoſe ſummits were covered with ſnow; South-Weſt half a mile, South a quarter of a mile, South-Eaſt one third of a mile, South-South-Weſt half a mile. Here are ſeveral iſlands, we then veered to Weſt by South a third of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a ſixth of a mile. On the right, the land is high, rocky, and covered with wood, Weſt South-Weſt one mile, a ſmall river running in from the South-Eaſt, South-Weſt half a mile, South three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, South by Weſt half a mile. Here a rocky point protrudes from the left, and narrows the river to an hundred yards; South-Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt by South one eighth of a mile. The current now was very ſtrong, but perfectly ſafe, South-Eaſt by South an eighth of a mile, Weſt by North one third of a mile, South by Weſt a twelfth of a mile, South-Weſt one fourth of a mile. Here the high land terminates on one ſide of the river, while rocks riſe to a conſiderable height immediately above the other, and the channel widens

to

to an hundred and fifty yards, Weſt by South one mile. The river now narrows again between rocks of a moderate height, North-North-Eaſt an eighth of a mile, veered to South-Weſt an eighth of a mile, South and South-Weſt half a mile. The country appeared to be low, as far as I could judge of it from the canoe, as the view is confined by woods at the diſtance of about an hundred yards from the banks. Our courſe continued Weſt by North two miles, North half a mile, North-Weſt a quarter of a mile, South-Weſt two miles, North-Weſt three quarters of a mile; when a ridge of high land appeared in this direction, Weſt one mile. A ſmall river flowed in from the North, South a quarter of a mile, North-Weſt half a mile, South-South-Weſt two miles and an half, South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile; a rivulet loſt itſelf in the main ſtream, Weſt-North-Weſt half a mile. Here the current ſlackened, and we proceeded South-South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, when it veered gradually to Weſt North-Weſt half a mile; the river being full of iſlands. We proceeded due North, with little current, the river preſenting a beautiful ſheet of water for a mile and an half, South-Weſt by Weſt one mile, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile, when it veered round to South-Eaſt one mile, Weſt by North one mile, South-Eaſt one mile, Weſt by North three quarters of a mile, South one eighth of a mile, when we came to an Indian cabin of late erection. Here was the great fork, of which our guide had informed us, and it appeared to be the largeſt branch from the South-Eaſt. It is about half a mile in breadth, and aſſumes the form of a lake. The current was very ſlack, and we got into the middle of the channel, when we ſteered Weſt, and ſounded in ſixteen feet water. A ridge of high land now ſtretched on, as it were, acroſs our preſent direction:

1793. June.

1793. June. direction: this courſe was three miles. We then proceeded Weſt-South-Weſt two miles, and ſounded in twenty-four feet water. Here the river narrowed and the current increaſed. We then continued our courſe North-North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, a ſmall river falling in from the North-Eaſt. It now veered to South by Weſt one mile and a quarter, Weſt-South-Weſt four miles and an half, Weſt by North one mile and a quarter, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile, Weſt a mile and a quarter: the land was high on both ſides, and the river narrowed to an hundred and fifty, or two hundred yards; North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt by South two miles and an half: here its breadth again increaſed; South by Weſt one mile, Weſt-South-Weſt half a mile, South-Weſt by South three miles, South-South-Eaſt one mile, with a ſmall river running in from the left, South with a ſtrong current one mile, then Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt one mile, South-South-Eaſt a mile and an half; the four laſt diſtances being a continual rapid; South-Weſt by Weſt one mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt a mile and an half, Eaſt-South-Eaſt one mile, where a ſmall river flowed in on the right; South-Weſt by South two miles and an half, when another ſmall river appeared from the ſame quarter; South by Eaſt half a mile, and South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a quarter: here we landed for the night. When we had paſſed the laſt river we obſerved ſmoke riſing from it, as if produced by fires that had been freſh lighted; I therefore concluded that there were natives on its banks; but I was unwilling to fatigue my people, by pulling back againſt the current in order to go in ſearch of them.

This river appeared, from its high water-mark, to have fallen no more than one foot, while the ſmaller branch, from a ſimilar meaſurement, had ſunk

ſunk two feet and an half. On our entering it, we ſaw a flock of ducks which were entirely white, except the bill and part of the wings. The weather was cold and raw throughout the day, and the wind South-Weſt. We ſaw ſmoke riſing in columns from many parts of the woods, and I ſhould have been more anxious to ſee the natives, if there had been any perſon with me who could have introduced me to them; but as that object could not be then attained without conſiderable loſs of time, I determined to purſue the navigation while it continued to be ſo favourable, and to wait till my return, if no very convenient opportunity offered in the mean time, to engage in an intercourſe with them. 1793. June.

The morning was foggy, and at three we were on the water. At half paſt that hour, our courſe was Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, a ſmall river flowing in from the right. We then proceeded South by Eaſt half a mile, and South-South-Weſt a mile and an half. During the laſt diſtance, clouds of thick ſmoke roſe from the woods, that darkened the atmoſphere, accompanied with a ſtrong odour of the gum of cypreſs and the ſpruce-fir. Our courſes continued to be South-Weſt a mile and a quarter, North-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-South-Eaſt a mile and a quarter, Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt one mile, Weſt by South three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by South three quarters of a mile, South by Weſt half a mile, Weſt by South three quarters of a mile, South by Weſt two miles and an half. In the laſt courſe there was an iſland, and it appeared to me, that the main channel of the river had formerly been on the other ſide of it. The banks were here compoſed of high white cliffs, crowned with pinnacles in very groteſque ſhapes. We continued to ſteer South-Eaſt by South a mile and an half, South by Eaſt Wedneſ. 19.

1793. June. half a mile, Eaſt one mile and a quarter, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South-South-Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt one mile and a quarter, South by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt a mile and an half, South-South-Eaſt three miles, and South-Weſt three quarters of a mile. In the laſt courſe the rocks contracted in ſuch a manner on both ſides of the river, as to afford the appearance of the upper part of a fall or cataract. Under this apprehenſion we landed on the left ſhore, where we found a kind of foot-path, imperfectly traced, through which we conjectured that the natives occaſionally paſſed with their canoes and baggage. On examining the courſe of the river, however, there did not appear to be any fall as we expected; but the rapids were of a conſiderable length and impaſſable for a light canoe. We had therefore no alternative but to widen the road ſo as to admit the paſſage of our canoe, which was now carried with great difficulty; as from her frequent repairs, and not always of the uſual materials, her weight was ſuch, that ſhe cracked and broke on the ſhoulders of the men who bore her. The labour and fatigue of this undertaking, from eight till twelve, beggars all deſcription, when we at length conquered this afflicting paſſage, of about half a mile, over a rocky and moſt rugged hill. Our courſe was South-South-Weſt. Here I took a meridian altitude which gave me 53. 42. 20. North latitude. We, however, loſt ſome time to put our canoe in a condition to carry us onwards. Our courſe was South a quarter of a mile to the next carrying-place; which was nothing more than a rocky point about twice the length of the canoe. From the extremity of this point to the rocky and almoſt perpendicular bank that roſe on the oppoſite ſhore, is not more than forty or fifty yards. The great body of water, at the ſame time tumbling in ſucceſſive caſcades along

the

the firſt carrying-place, rolls through this narrow paſſage in a very turbid current, and full of whirlpools. On the banks of the river there was great plenty of wild onions, which when mixed up with our pemmican was a great improvement of it; though they produced a phyſical effect on our appetites, which was rather inconvenient to the ſtate of our proviſions. 1703. June.

Here we embarked, and ſteered South-Eaſt by Eaſt three quarters of a mile. We now ſaw a ſmoke on the ſhore; but before we could reach land the natives had deſerted their camp, which appeared to be erected for no more than two families. My two Indians were inſtantly diſpatched in ſearch of them, and, by following their tracks, they ſoon overtook them; but their language was mutually unintelligible; and all attempts to produce a friendly communication were fruitleſs. They no ſooner perceived my young men than they prepared their bows and arrows, and made ſigns for them not to advance; and they thought it prudent to deſiſt from proceeding, though not before the natives had diſcharged five arrows at them, which, however, they avoided, by means of the trees. When they returned with this account, I very much regretted that I had not accompanied them; and as theſe people could not be at any very great diſtance, I took Mr. Mackay, and one of the Indians with me in order to overtake them; but they had got ſo far that it would have been imprudent in me to have followed them. My Indians, who, I believe, were terrified at the manner in which theſe natives received them, informed me, that, beſides their bows, arrows, and ſpears, they were armed with long knives, and that they accompanied their ſtrange antics with menacing actions and loud ſhoutings. On my return, I found my people indulging their curioſity in examining the bags

1793. June. and baſkets which the natives had left behind them. Some of them contained their fiſhing tackle, ſuch as nets, lines, &c. others of a ſmaller ſize were filled with a red earth, with which they paint themſelves. In ſeveral of the bags there were alſo ſundry articles of which we did not know the uſe. I prevented my men from taking any of them; and for a few articles of mere curioſity, which I took myſelf, I left ſuch things in exchange as would be much more uſeful to their owners.

At four we left this place, proceeding with the ſtream South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, Eaſt-South-Eaſt one mile, South three quarters of a mile, South-South-Weſt one mile, South by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile, South-South-Weſt two miles, South-South-Eaſt three miles and a quarter, Eaſt by North one mile, South-South-Eaſt one mile and a quarter, with a rapid, South-South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South one mile and an half, South-Eaſt one mile and a quarter, South three quarters of a mile, and South-South-Eaſt one mile and an half. At half paſt ſeven we landed for the night, where a ſmall river flowed in from the right. The weather was ſhowery, accompanied with ſeveral loud claps of thunder. The banks were overſhadowed by lofty firs, and wide-ſpreading cedars.

Thurſday 20. The morning was foggy, and at half paſt four we proceeded with a South wind, South-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles, South-South-Eaſt two miles and an half, and South-South-Weſt two miles. The fog was ſo thick, that we could not ſee the length of our canoe, which rendered our progreſs dangerous, as we might have come ſuddenly upon a caſcade or violent rapid. Our next courſe was Weſt-North-Weſt two miles and an half, which

which comprehended a rapid. Being close in with the left bank of the river, we perceived two red deer at the very edge of the water: we killed one of them, and wounded the other, which was very small. We now landed, and the Indians followed the wounded animal, which they soon caught, and would have shot another in the woods, if our dog, who followed them, had not disturbed it. From the number of their tracks it appeared that they abounded in this country. They are not so large as the elk of the Peace River, but are the real red deer, which I never saw in the North, though I have been told that they are to be found in great numbers in the plains along the Red, or Assiniboin River. The bark had been stripped off many of the spruce trees, and carried away, as I presumed, by the natives, for the purpose of covering their cabins. We now got the venison on board, and continued our voyage South-West one mile, South a mile and an half, and West one mile. Here the country changed its appearance; the banks were but of a moderate height, from whence the ground continued gradually rising to a considerable distance, covered with poplars and cypresses, but without any kind of underwood. There are also several low points which the river, that is here about three hundred yards in breadth, sometimes overflows, and are shaded with the liard, the soft birch, the spruce, and the willow. For some distance before we came to this part of the river, our view was confined within very rugged, irregular, and lofty banks, which were varied with the poplar, different kinds of spruce fir, small birch trees, cedars, alders, and several species of the willow. Our next course was South-West by West six miles, when we landed at a deserted house, which was the only Indian habitation of this kind that I had seen on this side of Mechili-

1793. June.

1793. June. Mechilimakina. It was about thirty feet long and twenty wide, with three doors, three feet high by one foot and an half in breadth. From this and other circumſtances, it appears to have been conſtructed for three families. There were alſo three fire-places, at equal diſtances from each other; and the beds were on either ſide of them. Behind the beds was a narrow ſpace, in the form of a manger, and ſomewhat elevated, which was appropriated to the purpoſe of keeping fiſh. The wall of the houſe, which was five feet in height, was formed of very ſtrait ſpruce timbers, brought cloſe together, and laid into each other at the corners. The roof was ſupported by a ridge pole, reſting on two upright forks of about ten feet high; that and the wall ſupport a certain number of ſpars, which are covered with ſpruce bark; and the whole attached and ſecured by the fibres of the cedar. One of the gable ends is cloſed with ſplit boards; the other with poles. Large rods are alſo fixed acroſs the upper part of the building, where fiſh may hang and dry. To give the walls additional ſtrength, upright poſts are fixed in the ground, at equal diſtances, both within and without, of the ſame height as the wall, and firmly attached with bark fibres. Openings appear alſo between the logs in the wall, for the purpoſe, as I conjectured, of diſcharging their arrows at a beſieging enemy; they would be needleſs for the purpoſe of giving light, which is ſufficiently afforded by fiſſures between the logs of the building, ſo that it appeared to be conſtructed merely for a ſummer habitation. There was nothing further to attract our attention in or about the houſe, except a large machine, which muſt have rendered the taking off the roof abſolutely neceſſary, in order to have introduced it. It was of a cylindrical form, fifteen feet long, and four feet and an half in diameter; one end was ſquare,

like

like the head of a caſk, and a conical machine was fixed inwards to the other end, of ſimilar dimenſions: at the extremity of which was an opening of about ſeven inches diameter. This machine was certainly contrived to ſet in the river, to catch large fiſh; and very well adapted to that purpoſe; as when they are once in, it muſt be impoſſible for them to get out, unleſs they ſhould have ſtrength ſufficient to break through it. It was made of long pieces of ſplit wood, rounded to the ſize of a ſmall finger, and placed at the diſtance of an inch aſunder, on ſix hoops; to this was added a kind of boot of the ſame materials, into which it may be ſuppoſed that the fiſh are driven, when they are to be taken out. The houſe was left in ſuch apparent order as to mark the deſign of its owners to return thither. It anſwered in every particular the deſcription given us by our late guide, except that it was not ſituated on an iſland. 1793. June.

We left this place, and ſteered South by Eaſt one mile and a quarter when we paſſed where there had been another houſe, of which the ridge-pole and ſupporters alone remained: the ice had probably carried away the body of it. The bank was at this time covered with water, and a ſmall river flowed in on the left. On a point we obſerved an erection that had the appearance of a tomb; it was in an oblong form, covered, and very neatly walled with bark. A pole was fixed near it, to which, at the height of ten or twelve feet, a piece of bark was attached, which was probably a memorial, or ſymbol of diſtinction. Our next courſe was South by Weſt two miles and an half, when we ſaw an houſe on an iſland, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile and three quarters, in which we obſerved another iſland, with an houſe upon it. A river alſo flowed from the right, and the land was high and rocky, and wooded with the epinette.

Our

1793. June. Our canoe was now become ſo crazy, that it was a matter of abſolute neceſſity to conſtruct another; and as from the appearance of the country there was reaſon to expect that bark was to be found, we landed at eight, with the hope of procuring it. I accordingly diſpatched four men with that commiſſion, and at twelve they returned with a ſufficient quantity to make the bottom of a canoe of five fathom in length, and four feet and an half in height. At noon I had an obſervation, which gave me 53. 17. 28. North latitude.

We now continued our voyage South-Eaſt by South one mile and an half, Eaſt-South-Eaſt one mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt two miles, South-Eaſt by South one mile, South-Eaſt ſix miles, and Eaſt-North-Eaſt. Here the river narrows between ſteep rocks, and a rapid ſucceeded, which was ſo violent that we did not venture to run it. I therefore ordered the loading to be taken out of the canoe, but ſhe was now become ſo heavy that the men preferred running the rapid to the carrying her overland. Though I did not altogether approve of their propoſition, I was unwilling to oppoſe it. Four of them undertook this hazardous expedition, and I haſtened to the foot of the rapid with great anxiety, to wait the event, which turned out as I expected. The water was ſo ſtrong, that although they kept clear of the rocks, the canoe filled, and in this ſtate they drove half way down the rapid, but fortunately ſhe did not overſet; and having got her into an eddy, they emptied her, and in an half-drowned condition arrived ſafe on ſhore. The carrying-place is about half a mile over, with an Indian path acroſs it. Mr. Mackay, and the hunters, ſaw ſome deer on an iſland above the rapid; and had that diſcovery been made before the

departure

departure of the canoe, there is little doubt but we ſhould have added a conſiderable quantity of veniſon to our ſtock of proviſions. Our veſſel was in ſuch a wretched condition, as I have already obſerved, that it occaſioned a delay of three hours to put her in a condition to proceed. At length we continued our former courſe, Eaſt-North-Eaſt a mile and an half, when we paſſed an extenſive Indian encampment; Eaſt-South-Eaſt one mile, where a ſmall river appeared on the left; South-Eaſt by South one mile and three quarters, Eaſt by South half a mile, Eaſt by North one mile, and ſaw another houſe on an iſland; South half a mile, Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt half a mile, where the cliffs of white and red clay appeared like the ruins of ancient caſtles. Our canoe now veered gradually to Eaſt-North-Eaſt one mile and an half, when we landed in a ſtorm of rain and thunder, where we perceived the remains of Indian houſes. It was impoſſible to determine the wind in any part of the day, as it came a-head in all our directions. 1793. June.

As I was very ſenſible of the difficulty of procuring proviſions in this country, I thought it prudent to guard againſt any poſſibility of diſtreſs of that kind on our return; I therefore ordered ninety pounds weight of pemmican to be buried in an hole, ſufficiently deep to admit of a fire over it without doing any injury to our hidden treaſure, and which would, at the ſame time, ſecure it from the natives of the country, or the wild animals of the woods. Friday 21.

The morning was very cloudy, and at four o'clock we renewed our voyage, ſteering South by Eaſt one mile and a quarter, Eaſt-South-Eaſt half a mile, South by Eaſt one mile and an half, Eaſt half a mile, South-

1793. June. East two miles, where a large river flowed in from the left, and a ſmaller one from the right. We then continued South by Weſt three quarters of a mile, Eaſt by South a mile and an half, South three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South by Eaſt half a mile, South-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, South-Eaſt by South half a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, the cliffs of blue and yellow clay, diſplaying the ſame groteſque ſhapes as thoſe which we paſſed yeſterday, South-South-Eaſt a mile and an half, South by Eaſt two miles. The latitude by obſervation was 52. 47. 51. North.

Here we perceived a ſmall new canoe, that had been drawn up to the edge of the woods, and ſoon after another appeared, with one man in it, which came out of a ſmall river. He no ſooner ſaw us than he gave the whoop, to alarm his friends, who immediately appeared on the bank, armed with bows and arrows, and ſpears. They were thinly habited, and diſplayed the moſt outrageous antics. Though they were certainly in a ſtate of great apprehenſion, they manifeſted by their geſtures that they were reſolved to attack us, if we ſhould venture to land. I therefore ordered the men to ſtop the way of the canoe, and even to check her drifting with the current, as it would have been extreme folly to have approached theſe ſavages before their fury had in ſome degree ſubſided. My interpreters, who underſtood their language, informed me that they threatened us with inſtant death if we drew nigh the ſhore; and they followed the menace by diſcharging a volley of arrows, ſome of which fell ſhort of the canoe, and others paſſed over it, ſo that they fortunately did us no injury. As we had been carried by the current below the ſpot where the Indians were, I ordered my people to paddle

to

to the oppoſite ſide of the river, without the leaſt appearance of confuſion, ſo that they brought me abreaſt of them. My interpreters, while we were within hearing, had done every thing in their power to pacify them, but in vain. We alſo obſerved that they had ſent off a canoe with two men, down the river, as we concluded, to communicate their alarm, and procure aſſiſtance. This circumſtance determined me to leave no means untried that might engage us in a friendly intercourſe with them, before they acquired additional ſecurity and confidence, by the arrival of their relations and neighbours, to whom their ſituation would be ſhortly notified. 1793. June.

I therefore formed the following adventurous project, which was happily crowned with ſucceſs. I left the canoe, and walked by myſelf along the beach, in order to induce ſome of the natives to come to me, which I imagined they might be diſpoſed to do, when they ſaw me alone, without any apparent poſſibility of receiving aſſiſtance from my people, and would conſequently imagine that a communication with me was not a ſervice of danger. At the ſame time, in order to poſſeſs the utmoſt ſecurity of which my ſituation was ſuſceptible, I directed one of the Indians to ſlip into the woods, with my gun and his own, and to conceal himſelf from their diſcovery; he alſo had orders to keep as near me as poſſible, without being ſeen; and if any of the natives ſhould venture acroſs, and attempt to ſhoot me from the water, it was his inſtructions to lay him low: at the ſame time he was particularly enjoined not to fire till I had diſcharged one or both of the piſtols that I carried in my belt. If, however, any of them were to land, and approach my perſon, he was immediately to join me. In the mean time

1793. June. my other interpreter aſſured them that we entertained the moſt friendly diſpoſition, which I confirmed by ſuch ſignals as I conceived would be comprehended by them. I had not, indeed, been long at my ſtation, and my Indian in ambuſh behind me, when two of the natives came off in a canoe, but ſtopped when they had got within an hundred yards of me. I made ſigns for them to land, and as an inducement, diſplayed looking glaſſes, beads, and other alluring trinkets. At length, but with every mark of extreme apprehenſion, they approached the ſhore, ſtern foremoſt, but would not venture to land. I now made them a preſent of ſome beads, with which they were going to puſh off, when I renewed my entreaties, and, after ſome time, prevailed on them to come aſhore, and ſit down by me. My hunter now thought it right to join me, and created ſome alarm in my new acquaintance. It was, however, ſoon removed, and I had the ſatisfaction to find that he, and theſe people perfectly underſtood each other. I inſtructed him to ſay every thing that might tend to ſooth their fears and win their confidence. I expreſſed my wiſh to conduct them to our canoe, but they declined my offer; and when they obſerved ſome of my people coming towards us, they requeſted me to let them return; and I was ſo well ſatisfied with the progreſs I had made in my intercourſe with them, that I did not heſitate a moment in complying with their deſire. During their ſhort ſtay, they obſerved us, and every thing about us, with a mixture of admiration and aſtoniſhment. We could plainly diſtinguiſh that their friends received them with great joy on their return, and that the articles which they carried back with them were examined with a general and eager curioſity; they alſo appeared to hold a conſultation, which laſted about a quarter of an hour, and the reſult was, an invitation to come

come over to them, which was cheerfully accepted. Nevertheleſs, on our landing, they betrayed evident ſigns of confuſion, which aroſe, probably from the quickneſs of our movements, as the proſpect of a friendly communication had ſo cheered the ſpirits of my people, that they paddled acroſs the river with the utmoſt expedition. The two men, however, who had been with us, appeared, very naturally, to poſſeſs the greateſt ſhare of courage on the occaſion, and were ready to receive us on our landing; but our demeanor ſoon diſpelled all their apprehenſions, and the moſt familiar communication took place between us. When I had ſecured their confidence, by the diſtribution of trinkets among them, and treated the children with ſugar, I inſtructed my interpreters to collect every neceſſary information in their power to afford me. 1793. June.

According to their account, this river, whoſe courſe is very extenſive, runs towards the mid-day ſun; and that at its mouth, as they had been informed, white people were building houſes. They repreſented its current to be uniformly ſtrong, and that in three places it was altogether impaſſable, from the falls and rapids, which poured along between perpendicular rocks that were much higher, and more rugged, than any we had yet ſeen, and would not admit of any paſſage over them. But beſides the dangers and difficulties of the navigation, they added, that we ſhould have to encounter the inhabitants of the country, who were very numerous. They alſo repreſented their immediate neighbours as a very malignant race, who lived in large ſubterraneous receſſes: and when they were made to underſtand that it was our deſign to proceed to the ſea, they diſſuaded us from proſecuting our intention, as we ſhould

1793. June. should certainly become a ſacrifice to the ſavage ſpirit of the natives. Theſe people they deſcribed as poſſeſſing iron, arms, and utenſils, which they procured from their neighbours to the Weſtward, and were obtained by a commercial progreſs from people like ourſelves, who brought them in great canoes.

Such an account of our ſituation, exaggerated as it might be in ſome points, and erroneous in others, was ſufficiently alarming, and awakened very painful reflections; nevertheleſs it did not operate on my mind ſo as to produce any change in my original determination. My firſt object, therefore, was to perſuade two of theſe people to accompany me, that they might ſecure for us a favourable reception from their neighbours. To this propoſition they aſſented, but expreſſed ſome degree of diſſatisfaction at the immediate departure, for which we were making preparation; but when we were ready to enter the canoe, a ſmall one was ſeen doubling the point below, with three men in it. We thought it prudent to wait for their arrival, and they proved to be ſome of their relations, who had received the alarm from the meſſengers, which I have already mentioned as having been ſent down the river for that purpoſe, and who had paſſed on, as we were afterwards informed, to extend the notice of our arrival. Though theſe people ſaw us in the midſt of their friends, they diſplayed the moſt menacing actions, and hoſtile poſtures. At length, however, this wild, ſavage ſpirit appeared to ſubſide, and they were perſuaded to land. One of them, who was a middle aged perſon, whoſe agitations had been leſs frequent than thoſe of his companions, and who was treated with particular reſpect by them all, inquired who we were, whence we came, whither we were going, and what was the motive of

our

our coming into that country. When his friends had ſatisfied him as far as they were able, reſpecting us, he inſtantly adviſed us to delay our departure for that night, as their relations below, having been by this time alarmed by the meſſengers, who had been ſent for that purpoſe, would certainly oppoſe our paſſage, notwithſtanding I had two of their own people with me. He added, that they would all of them be here by ſun-ſet, when they would be convinced, as he was, that we were good people, and meditated no ill deſigns againſt them. 1793. June.

Such were the reaſons which this Indian urged in favour of our remaining till the next morning; and they were too well founded for me to heſitate in complying with them; beſides, by prolonging my ſtay till the next morning, it was probable that I might obtain ſome important intelligence reſpecting the country through which I was to paſs, and the people who inhabited it. I accordingly ordered the canoe to be unloaded, taken out of the water, and gummed. My tent was alſo pitched, and the natives were now become ſo familiar, that I was obliged to let them know my wiſh to be alone and undiſturbed.

My firſt application to the native whom I have already particularly mentioned, was to obtain from him ſuch a plan of the river as he ſhould be enabled to give me; and he complied with this requeſt with a degree of readineſs and intelligence that evidently proved it was by no means a new buſineſs to him. In order to acquire the beſt information he could communicate, I aſſured him, if I found his account correct, that I ſhould either return myſelf, or ſend others to them, with ſuch articles as they appeared to want: particularly arms and ammunition, with which they would be able to prevent their enemies from invading

1793. June. vading them. I obtained, however, no addition to what I already knew, but that the country below us, as far as he was acquainted with it, abounded in animals, and that the river produced plenty of fiſh.

Our canoe was now become ſo weak, leaky, and unmanageable, that it became a matter of abſolute neceſſity to conſtruct a new one; and I had been informed, that if we delayed that important work till we got further down the river, we ſhould not be able to procure bark. I therefore diſpatched two of my people, with an Indian, in ſearch of that neceſſary material. The weather was ſo cloudy that I could not get an obſervation.*

I paſſed the reſt of the day in converſing with theſe people: they conſiſted of ſeven families, containing eighteen men; they were clad in leather, and had ſome beaver and rabbit-ſkin blankets. They had not been long arrived in this part of the country, where they propoſed to paſs the ſummer, to catch fiſh for their winter proviſion: for this purpoſe they were preparing machines ſimilar to that which we found in the firſt Indian houſe we ſaw and deſcribed. The fiſh which they take in them are large, and only viſit this part of the river at certain ſeaſons. Theſe people differ very little, if at all, either in their appearance, language, or manners, from the Rocky-Mountain Indians. The men whom I ſent in ſearch of bark, returned with a certain quantity of it, but of a very indifferent kind. We were not gratified with the arrival of any of the natives whom we expected from a lower part of the river.

* The obſervation, already mentioned, I got on my return.

CHAPTER VIII.

Renew our voyage, accompanied by two of the natives. Account of courſes. State of the river. Arrive at a ſubterranean houſe. See ſeveral natives. Brief deſcription of them. Account of our conference with them. Saw other natives. Deſcription of them. Their conduct, &c. The account which they gave of the country. The narrative of a female priſoner. The perplexities of my ſituation. Specimen of the language of two tribes. Change the plan of my journey. Return up the river. Succeſſion of dangers and difficulties. Land on an iſland to build another canoe.

1793. June. Saturday 22.

AT ſix in the morning we proceeded on our voyage, with two of the Indians, one of them in a ſmall pointed canoe, made after the faſhion of the Eſquimaux, and the other in our own. This precaution was neceſſary in a two-fold point of view, as the ſmall canoe could be ſent ahead to ſpeak to any of the natives that might be ſeen down the river, and, thus divided, would not be eaſy for them both to make their eſcape. Mr. Mackay alſo embarked with the Indian, which ſeemed to afford him great ſatisfaction, and he was thereby enabled to keep us company with diminution of labour.

Our courſes were South-South-Eaſt a mile and an half, South-Eaſt

1793. June. half a mile, South by Eaſt four miles and an half, South-Eaſt by South half a mile, South by Weſt half a mile, South-Eaſt by Eaſt one mile, South-South-Weſt a mile and an half, South by Eaſt one mile and a quarter. The country, on the right, preſented a very beautiful appearance: it roſe at firſt rather abruptly to the height of twenty-five feet, when the precipice was ſucceeded by an inclined plain to the foot of another ſteep; which was followed by another extent of gently-riſing ground: theſe objects, which were ſhaded with groves of fir, preſenting themſelves alternately to a conſiderable diſtance.

We now landed near an houſe, the roof of which alone appeared above ground; but it was deſerted by its inhabitants who had been alarmed at our approach. We obſerved ſeveral men in the ſecond ſteep, who diſplayed the ſame poſtures and menacing actions as thoſe which we have ſo lately deſcribed. Our conductors went to them immediately on an embaſſy of friendſhip, and, after a very vociferous diſcourſe, one of them was perſuaded to come to us, but preſented a very ferocious aſpect: the reſt, who were ſeven in number, ſoon followed his example. They held their bows and arrows in their hands, and appeared in their garments, which were faſtened round the neck, but left the right arm free for action. A cord faſtened a blanket or leather covering under the right armpit, ſo that it hung upon the left ſhoulder, and might be occaſionally employed as a target, that would turn an arrow which was nearly ſpent. As ſoon as they had recovered from their apprehenſions, ten women made their appearance, but without any children, whom, I imagine, they had ſent to a greater diſtance, to be out of the reach of all poſſible danger. I diſtributed a few preſents among them, and left my guides to explain

explain to them the object of my journey, and the friendlineſs of my de- 1793. June.
ſigns, with which they had themſelves been made acquainted; their fears being at length removed, I gave them a ſpecimen of the uſe to which we applied our fire-arms: at the ſame time, I calmed their aſtoniſhment, by the aſſurance, that, though we could at once deſtroy thoſe who did us injury, we could equally protect thoſe who ſhewed us kindneſs. Our ſtay here did not exceed half an hour, and we left theſe people with favourable impreſſions of us.

From this place we ſteered Eaſt by North half a mile, South by Eaſt three quarters of a mile, and South by Weſt a mile and an half, when we landed again on ſeeing ſome of the natives on the high ground, whoſe appearance was more wild and ferocious than any whom we had yet ſeen. Indeed I was under ſome apprehenſion that our guides, who went to conciliate them to us, would have fallen a prey to their ſavage fury. At length, however, they were perſuaded to entertain a more favourable opinion of us, and they approached us one after another, to the number of ſixteen men, and ſeveral women, I ſhook hands with them all, and deſired my interpreters to explain that ſalutation as a token of friendſhip. As this was not a place where we could remain with the neceſſary convenience, I propoſed to proceed further, in ſearch of a more commodious ſpot. They immediately invited us to paſs the night at their lodges, which were at no great diſtance, and promiſed, at the ſame time, that they would, in the morning, ſend two men to introduce us to the next nation, who were very numerous, and ill-diſpoſed towards ſtrangers. As we were puſhing from the ſhore, we were very much ſurpriſed at hearing a woman pronounce ſeveral words

1793. June. in the Kniſteneaux language. She proved to be a Rocky-Mountain native, ſo that my interpreters perfectly underſtood her. She informed us that her country is at the forks of this river, and that ſhe had been taken priſoner by the Kniſteneaux, who had carried her acroſs the mountains. After having paſſed the greateſt part of the ſummer with them, ſhe had contrived to eſcape, before they had reached their own country, and had re-croſſed the mountains, when ſhe expected to meet her own friends: but after ſuffering all the hardſhips incident to ſuch a journey, ſhe had been taken by a war-party of the people with whom ſhe then was, who had driven her relations from the river into the mountains. She had ſince been detained by her preſent huſband, of whom ſhe had no cauſe to complain; nevertheleſs ſhe expreſſed a ſtrong deſire to return to her own people. I preſented her with ſeveral uſeful articles, and deſired her to come to me at the lodges, which ſhe readily engaged to do. We arrived thither before the Indians, and landed, as we had promiſed. It was now near twelve at noon, but on attempting to take an altitude I found the angle too great for my ſextant.

The natives whom we had already ſeen, and ſeveral others, ſoon joined us, with a greater number of women than I had yet ſeen; but I did not obſerve the female priſoner among them. There were thirty-five of them, and my remaining ſtore of preſents was not ſufficient to enable me to be very liberal to ſo many claimants. Among the men I found four of the adjoining nation, and a Rocky-Mountain Indian, who had been with them for ſome time. As he was underſtood by my interpreters, and was himſelf well acquainted with the language of the ſtrangers, I poſſeſſed the means of obtaining every information reſpecting the

the country, which it might be in their power to afford me. For this purpoſe I ſelected an elderly man, from the four ſtrangers, whoſe countenance had prepoſſeſſed me in his favour. I ſtated to theſe people, as I had already done to thoſe from whom I had hitherto derived information, the objects of my voyage, and the very great advantages which they would receive from my ſucceſsful termination of it. They expreſſed themſelves very much ſatisfied at my communication, and aſſured me that they would not deceive me reſpecting the ſubject of my inquiry. An old man alſo, who appeared to poſſeſs the character of a chief, declared his wiſh to ſee me return to his land, and that his two young daughters ſhould then be at my diſpoſal. I now proceeded to requeſt the native, whom I had particularly ſelected, to commence his information, by drawing a ſketch of the country upon a large piece of bark, and he immediately entered on the work, frequently appealing to, and ſometimes aſking the advice of, thoſe around him. He deſcribed the river as running to the Eaſt of South, receiving many rivers, and every ſix or eight leagues encumbered with falls and rapids, ſome of which were very dangerous, and ſix of them impracticable. The carrying-places he repreſented as of great length, and paſſing over hills and mountains. He depicted the lands of three other tribes, in ſucceſſion, who ſpoke different languages. Beyond them he knew nothing either of the river or country, only that it was ſtill a long way to the ſea; and that, as he had heard, there was a lake, before they reached the water, which the natives did not drink. As far as his knowledge of the river extended, the country on either ſide was level, in many places without wood, and abounding in red deer, and ſome of a ſmall fallow kind. Few of the natives, he ſaid, would come to the banks for ſome time; but that at a certain ſeaſon they would arrive there in great numbers,

1793. June.

1793. June. numbers, to fiſh. They now procured iron, braſs, copper, and trinkets, from the Weſtward; but formerly theſe articles were obtained from the lower parts of the river, though in ſmall quantities. A knife was produced which had been brought from that quarter. The blade was ten inches long, and an inch and an half broad, but with a very blunted edge. The handle was of horn. We underſtood that this inſtrument had been obtained from white men, long before they had heard that any came to the Weſtward. One very old man obſerved, that as long as he could remember, he was told of white people to the Southward; and that he had heard, though he did not vouch for the truth of the report, that one of them had made an attempt to come up the river, and was deſtroyed.

Theſe people deſcribe the diſtance acroſs the country as very ſhort to the Weſtern ocean; and, according to my own idea, it cannot be above five or ſix degrees. If the aſſertion of Mr. Mears be correct, it cannot be ſo far, as the inland ſea which he mentions within Nootka, muſt come as far Eaſt as 126 Weſt longitude. They aſſured us that the road was not difficult, as they avoided the mountains, keeping along the low lands between them, many parts of which are entirely free from wood. According to their account, this way is ſo often travelled by them, that their path is viſible throughout the whole journey, which lies along ſmall lakes and rivers. It occupied them, they ſaid, no more than ſix nights, to go to where they meet the people who barter iron, braſs, copper, beads, &c. with them, for dreſſed leather, and beaver, bear, lynx, fox, and marten ſkins. The iron is about eighteen inches of two-inch bar. To this they give an edge at one end, and fix it to an handle at right angles, which they employ as an axe. When the iron is worn

worn down, they fabricate it into points for their arrows and ſpikes. Before they procured iron they employed bone and horn for thoſe purpoſes. The copper and braſs they convert into collars, arm-bands, bracelets, and other ornaments. They ſometimes alſo point their arrows with thoſe metals. They had been informed by thoſe whom they meet to trade with, that the white people, from whom theſe articles are obtained, were building houſes at the diſtance of three days, or two nights journey from the place where they met laſt fall. With this route they all appeared to be well acquainted. 1793. June.

I now requeſted that they would ſend for the female priſoner whom I ſaw yeſterday, but I received only vague and evaſive anſwers: they probably apprehended, that it was our deſign to take her from them. I was, however, very much diſappointed at being prevented from having an interview with her, as ſhe might have given me a correct account of the country beyond the forks of the river, as well as of the paſs, through the mountains, from them.

My people had liſtened with great attention to the relation which had been given me, and it ſeemed to be their opinion, that it would be abſolute madneſs to attempt a paſſage through ſo many ſavage and barbarous nations. My ſituation may, indeed, be more eaſily conceived than expreſſed: I had no more than thirty days proviſion remaining, excluſive of ſuch ſupplies as I might obtain from the natives, and the toil of our hunters, which, however, was ſo precarious as to be matter of little dependence: beſides, our ammunition would ſoon be exhauſted, particularly our ball, of which we had not more than an hundred and fifty,

1793. June. fifty, and about thirty pounds weight of ſhot, which, indeed, might be converted into bullets, though with great waſte.

The more I heard of the river, the more I was convinced it could not empty itſelf into the ocean to the North of what is called the River of the Weſt, ſo that with its windings, the diſtance muſt be very great. Such being the diſcouraging circumſtances of my ſituation, which were now heightened by the diſcontents of my people, I could not but be alarmed at the idea of attempting to get to the diſcharge of ſuch a rapid river, eſpecially when I reflected on the tardy progreſs of my return up it, even if I ſhould meet with no obſtruction from the natives; a circumſtance not very probable, from the numbers of them which would then be on the river; and whom I could have no opportunity of conciliating in my paſſage down, for the reaſons which have been altready mentioned. At all events, I muſt give up every expectation of returning this ſeaſon to Athabaſca. Such were my reflections at this period; but inſtead of continuing to indulge them, I determined to proceed with reſolution, and ſet future events at defiance. At the ſame time I ſuffered myſelf to nouriſh the hope that I might be able to penetrate with more ſafety, and in a ſhorter period, to the ocean by the inland, weſtern communication.

To carry this project into execution I muſt have returned a conſiderable diſtance up the river, which would neceſſarily be attended with a very ſerious inconvenience, if I paſſed over every other; as in a voyage of this kind, a retrograde motion could not fail to cool the ardour, ſlacken the zeal, and weaken the confidence of thoſe, who have no greater inducement in the undertaking, than to follow the conductor of it. Such was the

ſtate

ſtate of my mind at this period, and ſuch the circumſtances by which it was diſtreſſed and diſtracted. 1793. June.

To the people who had given me the foregoing information, I preſented ſome beads, which they preferred to any other articles in my poſſeſſion, and I recompenſed in the ſame manner two of them who communicated to me the following vocabulary in the languages of the Nagailer and Atnah tribes.

	The Nagailer, or Chin-Indians.	The Atnah. or Carrier-Indians.
Eye,	Nah,	Thlouſtin.
Hair,	Thigah,	Cahowdin.
Teeth,	Gough,	Chliough.
Noſe,	Nenzeh,	Piſax.
Head,	Thie,	Scapacay.
Wood,	Dekin,	Shedzay.
Hand,	Lah,	Calietha.
Leg,	Kin,	Squacht.
Tongue,	Thoula,	Dewhasjiſk.
Ear,	Zach,	Ithlinah.
Man,	Dinay,	Scuynlouch.
Woman,	Chiqoui,	Smoſledgenſk.
Beaver,	Zah,	Schugh,
Elk,	Yezey,	Oikoy-Beh.
Dog,	Sleing,	Scacah.
Ground-hog,	Thidnu,	Squaiquais.
Iron,	Thliſitch,	Soucoumang.

1793. June.

	The Nagailer, or Chin-Indians.	The Atnah, or Carrier-Indians.
Fire,	Coun,	Teuck.
Water,	Tou,	Shaweliquoih.
Stone,	Zeh,	Iſhehoineah.
Bow,	Nettuny,	Iſquoinah.
Arrow,	Igah,	Squaili.
Yes,	Neſi,	Amaig.
Plains,	Thoughoud,	Spilela.
Come here,	Andezei,	Thla-elyeh.

The Atnah language has no affinity to any with which I am acquainted; but the Nagailer differs very little from that ſpoken by the Beaver Indians, and is almoſt the ſame as that of the Chepewyans.

We had a thunder-ſtorm with heavy rain; and in the evening when it had ſubſided, the Indians amuſed us with ſinging and dancing, in which they were joined by the young women. Four men now arrived whom we had not yet ſeen; they had left their families at ſome diſtance in the country, and expreſſed a deſire that we ſhould viſit them there.

Sunday 23. After a reſtleſs night, I called the Indians together, from whom I yeſterday received the intelligence which has been already mentioned, in the hope that I might obtain ſome additional information. From their former account they did not make the leaſt deviation; but they informed me further, that where they left this river, a ſmall one from the Weſtward falls into it, which was navigable for their canoes during four days, and

and from thence they ſlept but two nights, to get to the people with whom they trade, and who have wooden canoes much larger than ours, in which they go down a river to the ſea. They continued to inform me, that if I went that way we muſt leave our own canoe behind us; but they thought it probable that thoſe people would furniſh us with another. From thence they ſtated the diſtance to be only one day's voyage with the current to the lake whoſe water is nauſeous, and where they had heard that great canoes came two winters ago, and that the people belonging to them, brought great quantities of goods and built houſes. 1793. June.

At the commencement of this converſation, I was very much ſurpriſed by the following queſtion from one of the Indians: "What," demanded he, "can be the reaſon that you are ſo particular and anxious in your inquiries of us reſpecting a knowledge of this country: do not you white men know every thing in the world?" This interrogatory was ſo very unexpected, that it occaſioned ſome heſitation before I could anſwer it. At length, however, I replied, that we certainly were acquainted with the principal circumſtances of every part of the world; that I knew where the ſea is, and where I myſelf then was, but that I did not exactly underſtand what obſtacles might interrupt me in getting to it; with which, he and his relations muſt be well acquainted, as they had ſo frequently ſurmounted them. Thus I fortunately preſerved the impreſſion in their minds, of the ſuperiority of white people over themſelves.

It was now, however, abſolutely neceſſary that I ſhould come to a final

1793. June. determination which route to take; and no long interval of reflection was employed, before I preferred to go over land: the comparative ſhortneſs and ſecurity of ſuch a journey, were alone ſufficient to determine me. I accordingly propoſed to two of the Indians to accompany me, and one of them readily aſſented to my propoſition.

I now called thoſe of my people about me, who had not been preſent at my conſultation with the natives; and after paſſing a warm eulogium on their fortitude, patience, and perſeverance, I ſtated the difficulties that threatened our continuing to navigate the river, the length of time it would require, and the ſcanty proviſion we had for ſuch a voyage: I then proceeded for the foregoing reaſons to propoſe a ſhorter route, by trying the over-land road to the ſea. At the ſame time, as I knew from experience, the difficulty of retaining guides, and as many circumſtances might occur to prevent our progreſs in that direction, I declared my reſolution not to attempt it, unleſs they would engage, if we could not after all proceed over land, to return with me, and continue our voyage to the diſcharge of the waters, whatever the diſtance might be. At all events, I declared, in the moſt ſolemn manner, that I would not abandon my deſign of reaching the ſea, if I made the attempt alone, and that I did not deſpair of returning in ſafety to my friends.

This propoſition met with the moſt zealous return, and they unanimouſly aſſured me, that they were as willing now as they had ever been, to abide by my reſolutions, whatever they might be, and to follow me wherever I ſhould go. I therefore requeſted them to prepare for an immediate departure, and at the ſame time gave notice to the man who had

had engaged to be our guide, to be in readineſs to accompany us. When our determination to return up the river was made known, ſeveral of the natives took a very abrupt departure; but to thoſe who remained, I gave a few uſeful articles, explaining to them at the ſame time, the advantages that would reſult to them, if their relations conducted me to the ſea, along ſuch a road as they had deſcribed. I had already given a mooſe ſkin to ſome of the women for the purpoſe of making ſhoes, which were now brought us; they were well ſewed but ill ſhaped, and a few beads were conſidered as a ſufficient remuneration for the ſkill employed on them. Mr. Mackay, by my deſire, engraved my name, and the date of the year on a tree. 1793. June.

When we were ready to depart, our guide propoſed, for the ſake of expedition, to go over land to his lodge, that he might get there before us, to make ſome neceſſary preparation for his journey. I did not altogether reliſh his deſign, but was obliged to conſent: I thought it prudent, however, to ſend Mr. Mackay, and the two Indians along with him. Our place of rendezvous, was the ſubterraneous houſe which we paſſed yeſterday.

At ten in the morning we embarked, and went up the current much faſter than I expected with ſuch a crazy veſſel as that which carried us. We met our people at the houſe as had been appointed; but the Indian ſtill continued to prefer going on by land, and it would have been needleſs for me to oppoſe him. He proceeded, therefore, with his former companions, whom I deſired to keep him in good humour by every reaſonable

1793. June. ſonable gratification. They were alſo furniſhed with a few articles that might be of uſe if they ſhould meet with ſtrangers.

In a ſhort time after we had left the houſe, I ſaw a wooden canoe coming down the river, with three natives in it, who, as ſoon as they perceived us, made for the ſhore, and hurried into the woods. On paſſing their veſſel, we diſcovered it to be one of thoſe which we had ſeen at the lodges. A ſevere guſt of wind, with rain, came from the South-South-Eaſt. This we found to be a very prevalent wind in theſe parts. We ſoon paſſed another wooden canoe drawn ſtern foremoſt on the ſhore; a circumſtance which we had not hitherto obſerved. The men worked very hard, and though I imagined we went a-head very faſt, we could not reach the lodges, but landed for the night at nine, cloſe to the encampment of two families of the natives whom we had formerly ſeen at the lodges. I immediately went and ſat down with them, when they gave ſome roaſted fiſh; two of my men who followed me were gratified alſo with ſome of their proviſions. The youngeſt of the two natives now quitted the ſhed, and did not return during the time I remained there. I endeavoured to explain to the other by ſigns, the cauſe of my ſudden return, which he appeared to underſtand. In the mean time my tent was pitched, and on my going to it, I was rather ſurpriſed that he did not follow me, as he had been conſtantly with me during the day and night I had paſſed with his party on going down. We, however, went to reſt in a ſtate of perfect ſecurity; nor had we the leaſt apprehenſion for the ſafety of our people who were gone by land.

We

1793. June. Monday 24. We were in our canoe by four this morning, and paſſed by the Indian hut, which appeared in a ſtate of perfect tranquillity. We ſoon came in ſight of the point where we firſt ſaw the natives, and at eight were much ſurpriſed and diſappointed at ſeeing Mr. Mackay, and our two Indians coming alone from the ruins of an houſe that had been partly carried away by the ice and water, at a ſhort diſtance below the place where we had appointed to meet. Nor was our ſurpriſe and apprehenſion diminiſhed by the alarm which was painted in their countenances. When we had landed, they informed me that they had taken refuge in that place, with the determination to ſell their lives, which they conſidered in the moſt imminent danger, as dear as poſſible. In a very ſhort time after they had left us, they met a party of the Indians, whom we had known at this place, and were probably thoſe whom we had ſeen to land from their canoe. They appeared to be in a ſtate of extreme rage, and had their bows bent, with their arrows acroſs them. The guide ſtopped to aſk them ſome queſtions, which my people did not underſtand, and then ſet off with his utmoſt ſpeed. Mr. Mackay, however, did not leave him till they were both exhauſted with running. When the young man came up, he then ſaid, that ſome treacherous deſign was meditated againſt them, as he was induced to believe from the declaration of the natives, who told him that they were going to do miſchief, but refuſed to name the enemy. The guide then conducted them through very bad ways, as faſt as they could run; and when he was deſired to ſlacken his pace, he anſwered that they might follow him in any manner they pleaſed, but that he was impatient to get to his family, in order to prepare ſhoes, and other neceſſaries, for his journey. They did not, however, think it prudent to quit him, and he would not ſtop till ten at night. On paſſing a

track

1793. June. track that was but lately made, they began to be ſeriouſly alarmed, and on inquiring of the guide where they were, he pretended not to underſtand them. They then all laid down, exhauſted with fatigue, and without any kind of covering: they were cold, wet, and hungry, but dared not light a fire, from the apprehenſion of an enemy. This comfortleſs ſpot they left at the dawn of day, and, on their arrival at the lodges, found them deſerted; the property of the Indians being ſcattered about, as if abandoned for ever. The guide then made two or three trips into the woods, calling aloud, and bellowing like a madman. At length he ſet off in the ſame direction as they came, and had not ſince appeared. To heighten their miſery, as they did not find us at the place appointed, they concluded that we were all deſtroyed, and had already formed their plan to take to the woods, and croſs in as a direct a line as they could proceed, to the waters of the Peace River, a ſcheme which could only be ſuggeſted by deſpair. They intended to have waited for us till noon, and if we did not appear by that time, to have entered without further delay on their deſperate expedition.

This alarm among the natives was a very unexpected as well as perilous event, and my powers of conjecture were exhauſted in ſearching for the cauſe of it. A general panic ſeized all around me, and any further proſecution of the voyage was now conſidered by them as altogether hopeleſs and impracticable. But without paying the leaſt attention to their opinions or ſurmiſes, I ordered them to take every thing out of the canoe, except ſix packages: when that was done, I left four men to take care of the lading, and returned with the others to our camp of laſt night, where I hoped to find the two men, with their families, whom we had

had ſeen there, and to be able to bring them to lodge with us, when I ſhould wait the iſſue of this myſterious buſineſs. This project, however, was diſappointed, for theſe people had quitted their ſheds in the ſilence of the night, and had not taken a ſingle article of their little property with them. 1793. June.

Theſe perplexing circumſtances made a deep impreſſion on my mind, not as to our immediate ſafety, for I entertained not the leaſt apprehenſion of the Indians I had hitherto ſeen, even if their whole force ſhould have been combined to attack us, but theſe untoward events ſeemed to threaten the proſecution of my journey; and I could not reflect on the poſſibility of ſuch a diſappointment but with ſenſations little ſhort of agony. Whatever might have been the wavering diſpoſition of the people on former occaſions, they were now decided in their opinions as to the neceſſity of returning without delay; and when we came back to them, their cry was—"Let us reimbark, and be gone." This, however, was not my deſign, and in a more peremptory tone than I uſually employed, they were ordered to unload the canoe, and take her out of the water. On examining our property, ſeveral articles appeared to be miſſing, which the Indians muſt have purloined; and among them were an axe, two knives, and the young men's bag of medicines. We now took a poſition that was the beſt calculated for defence, got our arms in complete order, filled each man's flaſk of powder, and diſtributed an hundred bullets, which were all that remained, while ſome were employed in melting down ſhot to make more. The weather was ſo cloudy that I had not an opportunity of taking an obſervation.

1793. June. While we were employed in making theſe preparations, we ſaw an Indian in a canoe come down the river, and land at the huts, which he began to examine. On perceiving us he ſtood ſtill, as if in a ſtate of ſuſpenſe, when I inſtantly diſpatched one of my Indians towards him, but no perſuaſions could induce him to have confidence in us; he even threatened that he would haſten to join his friends, who would come and kill us. At the concluſion of this menace he diſappeared. On the return of my young man, with this account of the interview, I pretended to diſcredit the whole, and attributed it to his own apprehenſions and alarms. This, however, he denied, and aſked with a look and tone of reſentment, whether he had ever told me a lie? Though he was but a young man, he ſaid, he had been on war excurſions before he came with me, and that he ſhould no longer conſider me as a wiſe man, which he had hitherto done.

To add to our diſtreſſes we had not an ounce of gum for the reparation of the canoe, and not one of the men had ſufficient courage to venture into the woods to collect it. In this perplexing ſituation I entertained the hope that in the courſe of the night ſome of the natives would return, to take away a part at leaſt of the things which they had left behind them, as they had gone away without the covering neceſſary to defend them from the weather and the flies. I therefore ordered the canoe to be loaded, and dropped to an old houſe, one ſide of which, with its roof, had been carried away by the water; but the three remaining angles were ſufficient to ſhelter us from the woods. I then ordered two ſtrong piquets to be driven into the ground, to which the canoe was faſtened, ſo that if we were hard preſſed we had only to ſtep on board

and

and puſh off. We were under the neceſſity of making a ſmoke to keep off the ſwarms of flies, which would have otherwiſe tormented us; but we did not venture to excite a blaze, as it would have been a mark for the arrows of the enemy. Mr. Mackay and myſelf, with three men kept alternate watch, and allowed the Indians to do as they fancied. I took the firſt watch, and the others laid down in their clothes by us. I alſo placed a centinel at a ſmall diſtance, who was relieved every hour. The weather was cloudy, with ſhowers of rain. 1793. June.

At one I called up the other watch, and laid down to a ſmall portion of broken reſt. At five I aroſe, and as the ſituation which we left yeſterday was preferable to that which we then occupied, I determined to return to it. On our arrival Mr. Mackay informed me that the men had expreſſed their diſſatisfaction to him in a very unreſerved manner, and had in very ſtrong terms declared their reſolution to follow me no further in my propoſed enterprize. I did not appear, however, to have received ſuch communications from him, and continued to employ my whole thoughts in contriving means to bring about a reconciliation with the natives, which alone would enable me to procure guides, without whoſe aſſiſtance it would be impoſſible for me to proceed, when my darling project would end in diſappointment. Tueſday 25.

At twelve we ſaw a man coming with the ſtream upon a raft, and he muſt have diſcovered us before we perceived him, as he was working very hard to get to the oppoſite ſhore, where he ſoon landed, and inſtantly fled into the woods. I now had a meridional altitude, which gave 60. 23. natural horizon, (the angle being more than the ſextant could

1793. June. measure with the artificial horizon,) one mile and an half distant; and the eye five feet above the level of the water, gave 52. 47. 51. North latitude.

While I was thus employed, the men loaded the canoe without having received any orders from me, and as this was the first time they had ventured to act in such a decided manner, I naturally concluded, that they had preconcerted a plan for their return. I thought it prudent, however, to take no notice of this transaction, and to wait the issue of future circumstances. At this moment our Indians perceived a person in the edge of the woods above us, and they were immediately dispatched to discover who it was. After a short absence they returned with a young woman whom we had seen before: her language was not clearly comprehended by us, so that we could not learn from her, at least with any degree of certainty, the cause of this unfortunate alarm that had taken place among the natives. She told us that her errand was to fetch some things which she had left behind her; and one of the dogs whom we found here, appeared to acknowledge her as his mistress. We treated her with great kindness, gave her something to eat, and added a present of such articles as we thought might please her. On her expressing a wish to leave us, we readily consented to her departure, and indulged the hope that her reception would induce the natives to return in peace, and give us an opportunity to convince them, that we had no hostile designs whatever against them. On leaving us, she went up the river without taking a single article of her own, and the dog followed. The wind was changeable throughout the day, and there were several showers in the course of it.

Though

Though a very apparent anxiety prevailed among the people for their departure, I appeared to be wholly inattentive to it, and at eight in the evening I ordered four men to ſtep into the canoe, which had been loaded for ſeveral hours, and drop down to our guard-houſe, and my command was immediately obeyed: the reſt of us proceeded there by land. When I was yet at a conſiderable diſtance from the houſe, and thought it impoſſible for an arrow to reach it, having a bow and quiver in my hand, I very imprudently let fly an arrow, when, to my aſtoniſhment and infinite alarm, I heard it ſtrike a log of the houſe. The men who had juſt landed, imagined that they were attacked by an enemy from the woods. Their confuſion was in proportion to their imaginary danger, and on my arrival I found that the arrow had paſſed within a foot of one of the men; though it had no point, the weapon, incredible as it may appear, had entered an hard, dry log of wood upwards of an inch. But this was not all: for the men readily availed themſelves of this circumſtance, to remark upon the danger of remaining in the power of a people poſſeſſed of ſuch means of deſtruction. Mr. Mackay having the firſt watch, I laid myſelf down in my cloak. 1793. June.

About midnight a ruſtling noiſe was heard in the woods which created a general alarm, and I was awakened to be informed of the circumſtance, but heard nothing. At one I took my turn of the watch, and our dog continued unceaſingly to run backwards and forwards along the ſkirts of the wood in a ſtate of reſtleſs vigilance. At two in the morning the centinel informed me, that he ſaw ſomething like an human figure creeping along on all-fours about fifty paces above us. After ſome time had paſſed in our ſearch, I at length diſcovered that his information Wedneſ. 26.

1793. June. mation was true, and it appeared to me that a bear had occaſioned the alarm; but when day appeared, it proved to be an old, grey-haired, blind man, who had been compelled to leave his hiding-place by extreme hunger, being too infirm to join in the flight of the natives to whom he belonged. When I put my hand on this object of decaying nature, his alarm was ſo great, that I expected it would have thrown him into convulſions. I immediately led him to our fire which had been juſt lighted, and gave him ſomething to eat, which he much wanted, as he had not taſted food for two days. When his hunger was ſatisfied, and he had got warm and compoſed, I requeſted him to acquaint me with the cauſe of that alarm which had taken place reſpecting us among his relations and friends, whoſe regard we appeared to have conciliated but a few days paſt, He replied, that very ſoon after we had left them, ſome natives arrived from above, who informed them that we were enemies; and our unexpected return, in direct contradiction to our own declarations, confirmed them in that opinion. They were now, he ſaid, ſo ſcattered, that a conſiderable time would elapſe, before they could meet again. We gave him the real hiſtory of our return, as well as of the deſertion of our guide, and, at the ſame time, ſtated the impoſſibility of our proceeding, unleſs we procured a native to conduct us. He replied, that if he had not loſt his ſight, he would with the greateſt readineſs have accompanied us on our journey. He alſo confirmed the accounts which we had received of the country, and the route to the Weſtward. I did not neglect to employ every argument in my power, that he might be perſuaded of our friendly diſpoſitions to the inhabitants whereſoever we might meet them.

At

At ſun-riſe we perceived a canoe with one man in it on the oppoſite ſide of the river, and at our requeſt, the blind man called to him to come to us, but he returned no anſwer, and continued his courſe as faſt as he could paddle down the current. He was conſidered as a ſpy by my men, and I was confirmed in that opinion, when I ſaw a wooden canoe drifting with the ſtream cloſe in to the other ſhore, where it was more than probable that ſome of the natives might be concealed. It might, therefore, have been an uſeleſs enterpriſe, or perhaps fatal to the future ſucceſs of our undertaking, if we had purſued theſe people, as they might, through fear, have employed their arms againſt us, and provoked us to retaliate. 1793. June.

The old man informed me, that ſome of the natives whom I had ſeen here were gone up the river, and thoſe whom I ſaw below had left their late ſtation to gather a root in the plains, which, when dried, forms a conſiderable article in their winter ſtock of proviſions. He had a woman, he ſaid, with him, who uſed to ſee us walking along the ſmall adjoining river, but when he called her he received no anſwer, ſo that ſhe had probably fled to join her people. He informed me, alſo, that he expected a conſiderable number of his tribe to come on the upper part of the river to catch fiſh for their preſent ſupport, and to cure them for their winter ſtore; among whom he had a ſon and two brothers.

In conſequence of theſe communications, I deemed it altogether unneceſſary to loſe any more time at this place, and I informed the old man that he muſt accompany me for the purpoſe of introducing us to his friends and relations, and that if we met with his ſon or brothers, I depended upon him to perſuade them, or ſome of their party, to attend us as

1793. June. as guides in our meditated expedition. He expreſſed his wiſhes to be excuſed from this ſervice, and in other circumſtances we ſhould not have inſiſted on it, but, ſituated as we were, we could not yield to his requeſt.

At ſeven in the morning we left this place, which I named Deſerter's River or Creek. Our blind guide was, however, ſo averſe to continuing with us, that I was under the very diſagreeable neceſſity of ordering the men to carry him into the canoe; and this was the firſt act during my voyage, that had the ſemblance of violent dealing. He continued to ſpeak in a very loud tone, while he remained, according to his conjecture, near enough to the camp to be heard, but in a language that our interpreters did not underſtand. On aſking him what he ſaid, and why he did not ſpeak in a language known to us, he replied, that the woman underſtood him better in that which he ſpoke, and he requeſted her, if ſhe heard him, to come for him to the carrying-place, where he expected we ſhould leave him.

At length our canoe was become ſo leaky, that it was abſolutely unfit for ſervice; and it was the unremitting employment of one perſon to keep her clear of water: we, therefore, inquired of the old man where we could conveniently obtain the articles neceſſary to build a new one; and we underſtood from him that, at ſome diſtance up the river, we ſhould find plenty of bark and cedar.

At ten, being at the foot of a rapid, we ſaw a ſmall canoe coming down with two men in it. We thought it would be impoſſible for them to eſcape,

eſcape, and therefore ſtruck off from the ſhore with a deſign to intercept them, directing the old man at the ſame time to addreſs them; but they no ſooner perceived us, than they ſteered into the ſtrength of the current, where I thought that they muſt inevitably periſh; but their attention appeared to be engroſſed by the ſituation of their canoe, and they eſcaped without making us the leaſt reply. 1793. June.

About three in the afternoon we perceived a lodge at the entrance of a conſiderable river on the right, as well as the tracks of people in the mud at the mouth of a ſmall river on the left. As they appeared to be freſh, we landed, and endeavoured to trace them, but without ſucceſs. We then croſſed over to the lodge, which was deſerted, but all the uſual furniture of ſuch buildings remained untouched.

Throughout the whole of this day the men had been in a ſtate of extreme ill-humour, and as they did not chooſe openly to vent it upon me, they diſputed and quarrelled among themſelves. About ſun-ſet the canoe ſtruck upon the ſtump of a tree, which broke a large hole in her bottom; a circumſtance that gave them an opportunity to let looſe their diſcontents without reſerve. I left them as ſoon as we had landed, and aſcended an elevated bank, in a ſtate of mind which I ſcarce wiſh to recollect, and ſhall not attempt to deſcribe. At this place there was a ſubterraneous houſe, where I determined to paſs the night. The water had riſen ſince we had paſſed down, and it was with the utmoſt exertion that we came up ſeveral points in the courſe of the day.

1793. June. Thurſday 27. We embarked at half paſt four, with very favourable weather, and at eight we landed, where there was an appearance of our being able to procure bark; we, however, obtained but a ſmall quantity. At twelve we went on ſhore again, and collected as much as was neceſſary for our purpoſe. It now remained for us to fix on a proper place for building another canoe, as it was impoſſible to proceed with our old one, which was become an abſolute wreck. At five in the afternoon we came to a ſpot well adapted to the buſineſs in which we were about to engage. It was on a ſmall iſland not much encumbered with wood, though there was plenty of the ſpruce kind on the oppoſite land, which was only divided from us by a ſmall channel. We now landed, but before the canoe was unloaded, and the tent pitched, a violent thunder-ſtorm came on, accompanied with rain, which did not ſubſide till the night had cloſed in upon us. Two of our men who had been in the woods for axe-handles, ſaw a deer, and one of them ſhot at it, but unluckily miſſed his aim. A net was alſo prepared and ſet in the eddy at the end of the iſland.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VII.

Make preparations to build a canoe. Engage in that important work. It proceeds with great expedition. The guide who had deſerted arrives with another Indian. He communicates agreeable intelligence. They take an opportunity to quit the iſland. Complete the canoe. Leave the iſland, which was now named the Canoe Iſland. Obliged to put the people on ſhort allowance. Account of the navigation. Difficult aſcent of a rapid. Freſh perplexities. Continue our voyage up the river. Meet the guide and ſome of his friends. Conceal ſome pemmican and other articles. Make preparations for proceeding over land. Endeavour to ſecure the canoe till our return. Proceed on our journey. Various circumſtances of it.

1793. June. Friday 28.

AT a very early hour of the morning every man was employed in making preparations for building another canoe, and different parties went in ſearch of wood, watape, and gum. At two in the afternoon they all returned ſucceſsful, except the collectors of gum, and of that article it was feared we ſhould not obtain here a ſufficient ſupply for our immediate wants. After a neceſſary portion of time allotted for refreſhment, each began his reſpective work. I had an altitude at noon, which made us in 53. 2. 32. North latitude.

1793. June. Saturday 29. The weather continued to be fine. At five o'clock we renewed our labour, and the canoe was got in a ſtate of conſiderable forwardneſs. The conductor of the work, though a good man, was remarkable for the tardineſs of his operations, whatever they might be, and more diſpoſed to eat than to be active; I, therefore, took this opportunity of unfolding my ſentiments to him, and thereby diſcovering to all around me the real ſtate of my mind, and the reſolutions I had formed for my future conduct. After reproaching him for his general inactivity, but particularly on the preſent occaſion, when our time was ſo precious, I mentioned the apparent want of economy both of himſelf and his companions, in the article of proviſions. I informed him that I was not altogether a ſtranger to their late converſations, from whence I drew the concluſion that they wiſhed to put an end to the voyage. If that were ſo, I expreſſed my wiſh that they would be explicit, and tell me at once of their determination to follow me no longer. I concluded, however, by aſſuring him, that whatever plan they had meditated to purſue, it was my fixed and unalterable determination to proceed, in ſpite of every difficulty that might oppoſe, or danger that ſhould threaten me. The man was very much mortified at my addreſſing this remonſtrance particularly to him; and replied, that he did not deſerve my diſpleaſure more than the reſt of them. My object being anſwered, the converſation dropped, and the work went on.

About two in the afternoon one of the men perceived a canoe with two natives in it, coming along the inſide of the iſland, but the water being ſhallow, it turned back, and we imagined that on perceiving us they had taken the alarm; but we were agreeably ſurpriſed on ſeeing them

1793. June.

them come up the outſide of the iſland, when we recogniſed our guide, and one of the natives whom we had already ſeen. The former began immediately to apologize for his conduct, and aſſured me that ſince he had left me, his whole time had been employed in ſearching after his family, who had been ſeized with the general panic, that had been occaſioned by the falſe reports of the people who had firſt fled from us. He ſaid it was generally apprehended by the natives that we had been unfriendly to their relations above, who were expected upon the river in great numbers at this time; and that many of the Atnah or Chin nation, had come up the river to where we had been, in the hope of ſeeing us, and were very much diſpleaſed with him and his friends for having neglected to give them an early notice of our arrival there. He added, that the two men whom we had ſeen yeſterday, or the day before, were juſt returned from their rendezvous, with the natives of the ſea coaſt, and had brought a meſſage from his brother-in-law, that he had a new axe for him, and not to forget to bring a mooſe-ſkin dreſſed in exchange, which he actually had in his canoe. He expected to meet him, he ſaid, at the other end of the carrying-place.

This was as pleaſing intelligence as we had reaſon to expect, and it is almoſt ſuperfluous to obſerve that we ſtood in great need of it. I had a meridian altitude, which gave 53. 3. 7. North latitude. I alſo took time in the fore and afternoon, that gave a mean of 1. 37. 42. Achrometer ſlow apparent time, which, with an obſerved immerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite, made our longitude 122. 48. Weſt of Greenwich.

The

1793. June. The blind old man gave a very favourable account of us to his friends, and they all three were very merry together during the whole of the afternoon. That our guide, however, might not escape from us during the night, I determined to watch him.

Sunday 30. Our strangers conducted themselves with great good-humour throughout the day. According to their information we should find their friends above and below the carrying-place. They mentioned, also, that some of them were not of their tribe, but are allied to the people of the sea coast, who trade with the white men. I had a meridian altitude, that gave 53. 3. 17. North latitude.

July. Monday 1. Last night I had the first watch, when one of my Indians proposed to sit up with me, as he understood, from the old man's conversation, that he intended, in the course of the night, to make his escape. Accordingly at eleven I extinguished my light, and sat quietly in my tent, from whence I could observe the motions of the natives. About twelve, though the night was rather dark, I observed the old man creeping on his hands and knees towards the water-side. We accordingly followed him very quietly to the canoe, and he would have gone away with it, if he had not been interrupted in his design. On upbraiding him for his treacherous conduct, when he had been treated with so much kindness by us, he denied the intention of which we accused him, and declared that his sole object was to assuage his thirst. At length, however, he acknowledged the truth, and when we brought him to the fire, his friends, who now awoke, on being informed of what had passed, reprobated his conduct, and asked him how he could expect that the white people

people would return to this country, if they experienced ſuch ungrateful treatment. The guide ſaid, for his part, he was not a woman, and would never run away through fear. But notwithſtanding this courageous declaration, at one I awakened Mr. Mackay, related to him what had paſſed, and requeſted him not to indulge himſelf in ſleep till I ſhould riſe. It was ſeven before I awoke, and on quitting my tent I was ſurpriſed at not ſeeing the guide and his companion, and my apprehenſions were increaſed when I obſerved that the canoe was removed from its late ſituation. To my inquiries after them, ſome of the men very compoſedly anſwered that they were gone up the river, and had left the old man behind them. Mr. Mackay alſo told me, that while he was buſily employed on the canoe, they had got to the point before he had obſerved their departure. The interpreter now informed me that at the dawn of day the guide had expreſſed his deſign, as ſoon as the ſun was up, to go and wait for us, where he might find his friends. I hoped this might be true; but that my people ſhould ſuffer them to depart without giving me notice, was a circumſtance that awakened very painful reflections in my breaſt. The weather was clear in the forenoon. My obſervation this day gave 53. 3. 32. North latitude. 1793. July.

At five in the afternoon our veſſel was completed, and ready for ſervice. She proved a ſtronger and better boat than the old one, though had it not been for the gum obtained from the latter, it would have been a matter of great difficulty to have procured a ſufficiency of that article to have prevented her from leaking. The remainder of the day was employed by the people in cleaning and refreſhing themſelves, as they had enjoyed no relaxation from their labour ſince we landed on this ſpot.

The

1793. July. The old man having manifeſted for various and probably very fallacious reaſons, a very great averſion to accompany us any further, it did not appear that there was any neceſſity to force his inclination. We now put our arms in order, which was ſoon accompliſhed, as they were at all times a general object of attention.

Tueſday 2. It rained throughout the night, but at half paſt three we were ready to embark, when I offered to conduct the old man where he had ſuppoſed we ſhould meet his friends, but he declined the propoſition. I therefore directed a few pounds of pemmican to be left with him, for his immediate ſupport, and took leave of him and the place, which I named Canoe Iſland. During our ſtay there we had been moſt cruelly tormented by flies, particularly the ſand-fly, which I am diſpoſed to conſider as the moſt tormenting inſect of its ſize in nature. I was alſo compelled to put the people upon ſhort allowance, and confine them to two meals a-day, a regulation peculiarly offenſive to a Canadian voyager. One of theſe meals was compoſed of the dried rows of fiſh, pounded, and boiled in water, thickened with a ſmall quantity of flour, and fattened with a bit of grian. Theſe articles, being brought to the conſiſtency of an haſty pudding, produced a ſubſtantial and not unpleaſant diſh. The natives are very careful of the rows of fiſh, which they dry, and preſerve in baſkets made of bark. Thoſe we uſed were found in the huts of the firſt people who fled from us. During our abode in Canoe Iſland, the water ſunk three perpendicular feet. I now gave the men a dram each, which could not but be conſidered, at this time, as a very comfortable treat. They were, indeed, in high ſpirits, when they perceived the ſuperior excellence of the new veſſel, and reflected that it was the work of their own hands.

At

At eleven we arrived at the rapids, and the foreman, who had not forgotten the fright he ſuffered on coming down it, propoſed that the canoe and lading ſhould be carried over the mountain. I threatened him with taking the office of foreman on myſelf, and ſuggeſted the evident change there was in the appearance of the water ſince we paſſed it, which upon examination had ſunk four feet and an half. As the water did not ſeem ſo ſtrong on the Weſt ſide, I determined to croſs over, having firſt put Mr. Mackay, and our two hunters, on ſhore, to try the woods for game. We accordingly traverſed, and got up cloſe along the rocks, to a conſiderable diſtance, with the paddles, when we could proceed no further without aſſiſtance from the line; and to draw it acroſs a perpendicular rock, for the diſtance of fifty fathoms, appeared to be an inſurmountable obſtacle. The general opinion was to return, and carry on the other ſide; I deſired, however, two of the men to take the line, which was ſeventy fathoms in length, with a ſmall roll of bark, and endeavour to climb up the rocks, from whence they were to deſcend on the other ſide of that which oppoſed our progreſs; they were then to faſten the end of the line to the roll of bark, which the current would bring to us; this being effected, they would be able to draw us up. This was an enterpriſe of difficulty and danger, but it was crowned with ſucceſs; though to get to the water's edge above, the men were obliged to let themſelves down with the line, run round a tree, from the ſummit of the rock. By a repetition of the ſame operation, we at length cleared the rapid, with the additional trouble of carrying the canoe, and unloading at two caſcades. We were not more than two hours getting up this difficult part of the river, including the time employed in repairing an hole which had been broken in the canoe, by the negligence of the ſteerſman. 1793. July.

1793. July. Here we expected to meet with the natives, but there was not the leaſt appearance of them, except that the guide, his companion, and two others, had apparently paſſed the carrying-place. We ſaw ſeveral fiſh leap out of the water, which appeared to be of the ſalmon kind. The old man, indeed, had informed us that this was the ſeaſon when the large fiſh begin to come up the river. Our hunters returned, but had not ſeen the track of any animal. We now continued our journey; the current was not ſtrong, but we met with frequent impediments from the fallen trees, which lay along the banks. We landed at eight in the evening; and ſuffered indeſcribable inconveniences from the flies.

Wedneſ. 3. It had rained hard in the night, and there was ſome ſmall rain in the morning. At four we entered our canoe, and at ten we came to a ſmall river, which anſwered to the deſcription of that whoſe courſe the natives ſaid, they follow in their journies towards the ſea coaſt; we therefore put into it, and endeavoured to diſcover if our guide had landed here; but there were no traces of him or of any others. My former perplexities were now renewed. If I paſſed this river, it was probable that I might miſs the natives; and I had reaſon to ſuſpect that my men would not conſent to return thither. As for attempting the woods, without a guide, to introduce us to the firſt inhabitants, ſuch a determination would be little ſhort of abſolute madneſs. At length, after much painful reflection, I reſolved to come at once to a full explanation with my people, and I experienced a conſiderable relief from this reſolution. Accordingly, after repeating the promiſe they had ſo lately made me, on our putting back up the river, I repreſented to them that this appeared to me to be the ſpot from which the natives took their departure for the

ſea

ſea coaſt, and added, withal, that I was determined to try it; for though our guide had left us, it was poſſible that, while we were making the neceſſary preparations, he or ſome others might appear, to relieve us from our preſent difficulties. I now found, to my great ſatisfaction, that they had not come to any fixed determination among themſelves, as ſome of them immediately aſſented to undertake the woods with me. Others, however, ſuggeſted that it might be better to proceed a few leagues further up the river, in expectation of finding our guide, or procuring another, and that after all we might return hither. This plan I very readily agreed to adopt, but before I left this place, to which I gave the name of the Weſt-Road River, I ſent ſome of the men into the woods, in different directions, and went ſome diſtance up the river myſelf, which I found to be navigable only for ſmall canoes. Two of the men found a good beaten path, leading up an hill juſt behind us, which I imagined to be the great road. 1793. July.

At four in the afternoon we left this place, proceeding up the river; and had not been upon the water more than three quarters of an hour, when we ſaw two canoes coming with the ſtream. No ſooner did the people in them perceive us than they landed, and we went on ſhore at the ſame place with them. They proved to be our guide, and ſix of his relations. He was covered with a painted beaver robe, ſo that we ſcarcely knew him in his fine habiliment. He inſtantly deſired us to acknowledge that he had not diſappointed us, and declared, at the ſame time, that it was his conſtant intention to keep his word. I accordingly gave him a jacket, a pair of trowſers, and an handkerchief, as a reward for his honourable conduct. The ſtrangers examined us with

1793. July. the moſt minute attention, and two of them, as I was now informed, belonged to the people whom we firſt ſaw, and who fled with ſo much alarm from us. They told me, alſo, that they were ſo terrified on that occaſion, as not to approach their huts for two days; and that when they ventured thither, they found the greater part of their property deſtroyed, by the fire running in the ground. According to their account, they were of a different tribe, though I found no difference in their language from that of the Nagailas or Carriers. They are called Naſcutl Denee. Their lodges were at ſome diſtance, on a ſmall lake, where they take fiſh, and if our guide had not gone for them there, we ſhould not have ſeen an human being on the river. They informed me that the road by their habitation is the ſhorteſt, and they propoſed that we ſhould take it.

Tueſday 4. At an early hour this morning, and at the ſuggeſtion of our guide, we proceeded to the landing-place that leads to the ſtrangers lodges. Our great difficulty here was to procure a tempotary ſeparation from our company, in order to hide ſome articles we could not carry with us, and which it would have been imprudent to leave in the power of the natives. Accordingly Mr. Mackay, and one of our Indians embarked with them, and ſoon run out of our ſight. At our firſt hiding-place we left a bag of pemmican, weighing ninety pounds, two bags of wild rice, and a gallon keg of gunpowder. Previous to our putting theſe articles in the ground, we rolled them up in oil cloth, and dreſſed leather. In the ſecond hiding-place, and guarded with the ſame rollers, we hid two bags of Indian corn, or maize, and a bale of different articles of merchandiſe. When we had completed this important object, we proceeded

proceeded till half paſt eight, when we landed at the entrance of a ſmall rivulet, where our friends were waiting for us. 1793. July.

Here it was neceſſary that we ſhould leave our canoe, and whatever we could not carry on our backs. In the firſt place, therefore, we prepared a ſtage, on which the canoe was placed bottom upwards, and ſhaded by a covering of ſmall trees and branches, to keep her from the ſun. We then built an oblong hollow ſquare, ten feet by five, of green logs, wherein we placed every article it was neceſſary for us to leave here, and covered the whole with large pieces of timber.

While we were eagerly employed in this neceſſary buſineſs, our guide and his companions were ſo impatient to be gone, that we could not perſuade the former to wait till we were prepared for our departure, and we had ſome difficulty in perſuading another of the natives to remain, who had undertook to conduct us where the guide had promiſed to wait our arrival.

At noon we were in a ſtate of preparation to enter the woods, an undertaking of which I ſhall not here give any preliminary opinion, but leave thoſe who read it to judge for themſelves.

We carried on our backs four bags and an half of pemmican, weighing from eighty-five to ninety pounds each; a caſe with my inſtruments, a parcel of goods for preſents, weighing ninety pounds, and a parcel containing ammunition of the ſame weight. Each of the Canadians had a burden of about ninety pounds, with a gun, and ſome ammunition.

1793. July. tion. The Indians had about forty-five pounds weight of pemmican to carry, beſides their gun, &c. with which they were very much diſſatisfied, and if they had dared would have inſtantly left us. They had hitherto been very much indulged, but the moment was now arrived when indulgence was no longer practicable. My own load, and that of Mr. Mackay, conſiſted of twenty-two pounds of pemmican, ſome rice, a little ſugar, &c. amounting in the whole to about ſeventy pounds each, beſides our arms and ammunition. I had alſo the tube of my teleſcope ſwung acroſs my ſhoulder, which was a troubleſome addition to my burthen. It was determined that we ſhould content ourſelves with two meals a-day, which were regulated without difficulty, as our proviſions did not require the ceremony of cooking.

In this ſtate of equipment we began our journey, as I have already mentioned, about twelve at noon, the commencement of which was a ſteep aſcent of about a mile; it lay along a well-beaten path, but the country through which it led was rugged and ridgy, and full of wood. When we were in a ſtate of extreme heat, from the toil of our journey, the rain came on, and continued till the evening, and even when it ceaſed the underwood continued its drippings upon us.

About half paſt ſix we arrived at an Indian camp of three fires, where we found our guide, and on his recommendation we determined to remain there for the night. The computed diſtance of this day's journey was about twelve geographical miles; the courſe about Weſt.

At ſun-ſet an elderly man and three other natives joined us from the Weſtward.

Weſtward. The former bore a lance that very much reſembled a ſerjeant's halberd. He had lately received it, by way of barter, from the natives of the Sea-Coaſt, who procured it from the white men. We ſhould meet, he ſaid, with many of his countrymen who had juſt returned from thence. According to his report, it did not require more than ſix days journey, for people who are not heavily laden, to reach the country of thoſe with whom they bartered their ſkins for iron, &c. and from thence it is not quite two day's march to the ſea. They propoſed to ſend two young men on before us, to notify to the different tribes that we were approaching, that they might not be ſurpriſed at our appearance, and be diſpoſed to afford us a friendly reception. This was a meaſure which I could not but approve, and endeavoured by ſome ſmall preſents to prepoſſeſs our couriers in our favour. 1793. July.

Theſe people live but poorly at this ſeaſon, and I could procure no proviſion from them, but a few ſmall, dried fiſh, as I think, of the carp kind. They had ſeveral European articles; and one of them had a ſtrip of fur, which appeared to me to be of the ſea otter. He obtained it from the natives of the coaſt, and exchanged it with me for ſome beads and a braſs croſs.

We retired to reſt in as much ſecurity as if we had been long habituated to a confidence in our preſent aſſociates: indeed, we had no alternative; for ſo great were the fatigues of the day in our mode of travelling, that we were in great need of reſt at night.

We had no ſooner laid ourſelves down to reſt laſt night, than the Friday 5.

natives

1793. July. natives began to ſing, in a manner very different from what I had been accuſtomed to hear among ſavages. It was not accompanied either with dancing, drum, or rattle; but conſiſted of ſoft, plaintive tones, and a modulation that was rather agreeable: it had ſomewhat the air of church muſic. As the natives had requeſted me not to quit them at a very early hour in the morning, it was five before I deſired that the young men, who were to proceed with us, ſhould depart, when they prepared to ſet off: but, on calling to our guide to conduct us, he ſaid, that he did not intend to accompany us any further, as the young men would anſwer our purpoſe as well as himſelf. I knew it would be in vain to remonſtrate with him, and therefore ſubmitted to his caprice without a reply. However, I thought proper to inform him, that one of my people had loſt his dag, or poignard, and requeſted his aſſiſtance in the recovery of it. He aſked me what I would give him to conjure it back again; and a knife was agreed to be the price of his necromantic exertions. Accordingly, all the dags and knives in the place were gathered together, and the natives formed a circle round them; the conjurer alſo remaining in the middle. When this part of the ceremony was arranged, he began to ſing, the reſt joining in the chorus; and after ſome time he produced the poignard which was ſtruck in the ground, and returned it to me.

At ſeven we were ready to depart; when I was ſurpriſed to hear our late guide propoſe, without any ſolicitation on our part, to reſume his office; and he actually conducted us as far as a ſmall lake, where we found an encampment of three families. The young men who had undertaken to conduct us were not well underſtood by my interpreters, who continued to be ſo diſpleaſed with their journey, that they performed this part of their duty

duty with great reluctance. I endeavoured to perſuade an elderly man of this encampment to accompany us to the next tribe, but no inducement of mine could prevail on him to comply with my wiſhes. I was, therefore, obliged to content myſelf with the guides I had already engaged, for whom we were obliged to wait ſome time, till they had provided ſhoes for their journey. I exchanged two halfpence here, one of his preſent Majeſty, and the other of the State of Maſſachuſet's Bay, coined in 1787. They hung as ornaments in children's ears. 1793. July.

My ſituation here was rendered rather unpleaſant by the treatment which my hunters received from theſe people. The former, it appeared, were conſidered as belonging to a tribe who inhabit the mountains, and are the natural enemies of the latter. We had alſo been told by one of the natives, of a very ſtern aſpect, that he had been ſtabbed by a relation of theirs, and pointed to a ſcar as the proof of it. I was, therefore, very glad to proceed on my journey.

Our guides conducted us along the lake through thick woods, and without any path, for about a mile and an half, when we loſt ſight of it. This piece of water is about three miles long and one broad. We then croſſed a creek and entered upon a beaten track, through an open country, ſprinkled with cypreſs trees. At twelve the ſky became black, and an heavy guſt with rain ſhortly followed, which continued for upwards of an hour. When we perceived the approaching ſtorm, we fixed our thin, light oil-cloth to ſcreen us from it. On renewing our march, as the buſhes were very wet, I deſired our guides, they having no bur-

1793. July. dens, to walk in front, and beat them as they went: this taſk they choſe to decline, and accordingly I undertook it. Our road now lay along a lake, and acroſs a creek that ran into it. The guides informed me, that this part of the country abounds in beaver: many traps were ſeen along the road which had been ſet for lynxes and martens. About a quarter of a mile from the place where we had been ſtopped by the rain, the ground was covered with hail, and as we advanced, the hailſtones increaſed in ſize, ſome of them being as big as muſket-balls. In this manner was the ground whitened for upwards of two miles. At five in the afternoon we arrived on the banks of another lake, when it again threatened rain; and we had already been ſufficiently wetted in the courſe of the day, to look with complacency towards a repetition of it: we accordingly fixed our ſhed, the rain continuing with great violence through the remainder of the day: it was, therefore, determined, that we ſhould ſtop here for the night.

In the courſe of the day we paſſed three winter huts; they conſiſted of low walls, with a ridge-pole, covered with the branches of the Canadian balſam-tree. One of my men had a violent pain in his knee, and I aſked the guides to take a ſhare of his burden, as they had nothing to carry but their beaver robes, and bows and arrows, but they could not be made to underſtand a word of my requeſt.

Saturday 6. At four this morning I aroſe from my bed, ſuch as it was. As we muſt have been in a moſt unfortunate predicament, if our guides ſhould have deſerted us in the night, by way of ſecurity, I propoſed to the youngeſt of them to ſleep with me, and he readily conſented. Theſe people

people have no covering but their beaver garments, and that of my companions was a neſt of vermin. I, however, ſpread it under us, and having laid down upon it, we covered ourſelves with my camblet cloak. My companion's hair being greaſed with fiſh-oil, and his body ſmeared with red earth, my ſenſe of ſmelling, as well as that of feeling, threatened to interrupt my reſt; but theſe inconveniences yielded to my fatigue, and I paſſed a night of ſound repoſe. 1793. July.

I took the lead in our march, as I had done yeſterday, in order to clear the branches of the wet which continued to hang upon them. We proceeded with all poſſible expedition through a level country with but little under-wood; the larger trees were of the fir kind. At half paſt eight we fell upon the road, which we firſt intended to have taken from the Great River, and muſt be ſhorter than that which we had travelled. The Weſt-road river was alſo in ſight, winding through a valley. We had not met with any water ſince our encampment of laſt night, and though we were afflicted with violent thirſt, the river was at ſuch a diſtance from us, and the deſcent to it ſo long and ſteep, that we were compelled to be ſatisfied with caſting our longing looks towards it. There appeared to be more water in the river here, than at its diſcharge. The Indian account, that it is navigable for their canoes, is, I believe, perfectly correct.

Our guides now told us, that as the road was very good and well traced, they would proceed to inform the next tribe that we were coming. This information was of a very unpleaſant nature; as it would have been eaſy for them to turn off the road at an hundred yards from us, and,

1793. July. when we had paſſed them, to return home. I propoſed that one of them ſhould remain with us, while two of my people ſhould leave their loads behind and accompany the other to the lodges. But they would not ſtay to hear our perſuaſions, and were ſoon out of ſight.

I now deſired the Cancre to leave his burden, take a ſmall quantity of proviſion, with his arms and blanket, and follow me. I alſo told my men to come on as faſt as they could, and that I would wait for them as ſoon as I had formed an acquaintance with the natives of the country before us. We accordingly followed our guides with all the expedition in our power, but did not overtake them till we came to a family of natives, conſiſting of one man, two women, and ſix children, with whom we found them. Theſe people betrayed no ſigns of fear at our appearance, and the man willingly converſed with my interpreter, to whom he made himſelf more intelligible, than our guides had been able to do. They, however, had informed him of the object of our journey. He pointed out to us one of his wives, who was a native of the ſea coaſt, which was not a very great diſtance from us. This woman was more inclined to corpulency than any we had yet ſeen, was of low ſtature, with an oblong face, grey eyes, and a flattiſh noſe. She was decorated with ornaments of various kinds, ſuch as large blue beads, either pendant from her ears, encircling her neck, or braided in her hair: ſhe alſo wore bracelets of braſs, copper, and horn. Her garments conſiſted of a kind of tunic, which was covered with a robe of matted bark, fringed round the bottom with ſkin of the ſea otter. None of the women whom I had ſeen ſince we croſſed the mountain wore this kind of tunic; their blankets being merely girt round the waiſt. She had learned the language

language of her huſband's tribe, and confirmed his account, that we were at no great diſtance from the ſea. They were on their way, ſhe ſaid, to the great river to fiſh. Age ſeemed to be an object of great veneration among theſe people, for they carried an old woman by turns on their backs who was quite blind and infirm from the very advanced period of her life. 1793. July.

Our people having joined us and reſted themſelves, I requeſted our guides to proceed, when the elder of them told me that he ſhould not go any further, but that theſe people would ſend a boy to accompany his brother, and I began to think myſelf rather fortunate, that we were not deſerted by them all.

About noon we parted, and in two hours we came up with two men and their families: when we firſt ſaw them they were ſitting down, as if to reſt themſelves; but no ſooner did they perceive us than they roſe up and ſeized their arms. The boys who were behind us immediately ran forwards and ſpoke to them, when they laid by their arms and received us as friends. They had been eating green berries and dried fiſh. We had, indeed, ſcarcely joined them, when a woman and a boy came from the river with water, which they very hoſpitably gave us to drink. The people of this party had a very ſickly appearance, which might have been the conſequence of diſeaſe, or that indolence which is ſo natural to them, or of both. One of the women had a tattooed line along the chin, of the ſame length as her mouth.

The lads now informed me that they would go no further, but that theſe

1793. July. theſe men would take their places; and they parted from their families with as little apparent concern, as if they were entire ſtrangers to each other. One of them was very well underſtood by my interpreter, and had reſided among the natives of the ſea coaſt, whom he had left but a ſhort time. According to his information, we were approaching a river, which was neither large nor long, but whoſe banks are inhabited; and that in the bay which the ſea forms at the mouth of it, a great wooden canoe, with white people, arrives about the time when the leaves begin to grow: I preſume in the early part of May.

After we parted with the laſt people, we came to an uneven, hilly, and ſwampy country, through which our way was impeded by a conſiderable number of fallen trees. At five in the afternoon we were overtaken by a heavy ſhower of rain and hail, and being at the ſame time very much fatigued, we encamped for the night near a ſmall creek. Our courſe, till we came to the river, was about South-Weſt ten miles, and then Weſt, twelve or fourteen miles. I thought it prudent, by way of ſecurity, to ſubmit to the ſame inconveniences I have already deſcribed, and ſhared the beaver robe of one of my guides during the night.

Sunday 7. I was ſo buſily employed in collecting intelligence from our conductors, that I laſt night forgot to wind up my time-piece, and it was the only inſtance of ſuch an act of negligence ſince I left Fort Chepewyan, on the 11th of laſt October. At five we quitted our ſtation, and proceeded acroſs two mountains, covered with ſpruce, poplar, white birch, and other trees. We then deſcended into a level country, where we found a good road, through woods of cypreſs. We then came to two

ſmall

small lakes, at the diſtance of about fourteen miles. Courſe about Weſt. Through them the river paſſes, and our road kept in a parallel line with it on a range of elevated ground. On obſerving ſome people before us, our guides haſtened to meet them, and, on their approach, one of them ſtepped forward with an axe in his hand. This party conſiſted only of a man, two women, and the ſame number of children. The eldeſt of the women, who probably was the man's mother, was engaged, when we joined them, in clearing a circular ſpot, of about five feet in diameter, of the weeds that infeſted it; nor did our arrival interrupt her employment, which was ſacred to the memory of the dead. The ſpot to which her pious care was devoted, contained the grave of an huſband, and a ſon, and whenever ſhe paſſed this way, ſhe always ſtopped to pay this tribute of affection. 1793. July.

As ſoon as we had taken our morning allowance, we ſet forwards, and about three we perceived more people before us. After ſome alarm we came up with them. They conſiſted of ſeven men, as many women, and ſeveral children. Here I was under the neceſſity of procuring another guide, and we continued our route on the ſame ſide of the river, till ſix in the evening, when we croſſed it. It was knee deep, and about an hundred yards over. I wiſhed now to ſtop for the night, as we were all of us very much fatigued, but our guide recommended us to proceed onwards to a family of his friends, at a ſmall diſtance from thence, where we arrived at half paſt ſeven. He had gone forward, and procured us a welcome and quiet reception. There being a net hanging to dry, I requeſted the man to prepare and ſet it in the water, which he did with great expedition, and then preſented me with a few ſmall dried fiſh. Our

courſe

1793. July. courſe was South-Weſt about twelve miles, part of which was an extenſive ſwamp, that was ſeldom leſs than knee deep. In the courſe of the afternoon we had ſeveral ſhowers of rain. I had attempted to take an altitude, but it was paſt meridian. The water of the river before the lodge was quite ſtill, and expanded itſelf into the form of a ſmall lake. In many other places, indeed, it had aſſumed the ſame form.

Monday 8. It rained throughout the night, and it was ſeven in the morning before the weather would allow us to proceed. The guide brought me five ſmall boiled fiſh, in a platter made of bark; ſome of them were of the carp kind, and the reſt of a ſpecies for which I am not qualified to furniſh a name. Having dried our clothes, we ſet off on our march about eight, and our guide very cheerfully continued to accompany us; but he was not altogether ſo intelligible as his predeceſſors in our ſervice. We learned from him, however, that this lake, through which the river paſſes, extends to the foot of the mountain, and that he expected to meet nine men, of a tribe which inhabits the North ſide of the river.

In this part of our journey we were ſurpriſed with the appearance of ſeveral regular baſons, ſome of them furniſhed with water, and the others empty; their ſlope from the edge to the bottom formed an angle of about forty-five degrees, and their perpendicular depth was about twelve feet. Thoſe that contained water, diſcovered gravel near their edges, while the empty ones were covered with graſs and herbs, among which we diſcovered muſtard, and mint. There were alſo ſeveral places from whence the water appears to have retired, which are covered with the ſame ſoil and herbage.

We

We now proceeded along a very uneven country, the upper parts of which were covered with poplars, a little under-wood, and plenty of graſs: the intervening vallies were watered with rivulets. From theſe circumſtances, and the general appearance of vegetation, I could not account for the apparent abſence of animals of every kind. 1798. July.

At two in the afternoon we arrived at the largeſt river that we had ſeen, ſince we left our canoe, and which forced its way between and over the huge ſtones that oppoſed its current. Our courſe was about South-South-Weſt ſixteen miles along the river, which might here juſtify the title of a lake. The road was good, and our next courſe, which was Weſt by South, brought us onward ten miles, where we encamped, fatigued and wet, it having rained three parts of the day. This river abounds with fiſh, and muſt fall into the great river, further down than we had extended our voyage.

A heavy and continued rain fell through great part of the night, and as we were in ſome meaſure expoſed to it, time was required to dry our clothes; ſo that it was half paſt ſeven in the morning before we were ready to ſet out. As we found the country ſo deſtitute of game, and foreſeeing the difficulty of procuring proviſions for our return, I thought it prudent to conceal half a bag of pemmican: having ſent off the Indians, and all my people except two, we buried it under the fire-place, as we had done on a former occaſion. We ſoon overtook our party, and continued our route along the river or lake. About twelve I had an altitude, but it was inaccurate from the cloudineſs of the weather. We continued our progreſs till five in the afternoon, when the water began to narrow,

1793. July. and in about half an hour we came to a ferry, where we found a ſmall raft. At this time it began to thunder, and torrents of rain ſoon followed, which terminated our journey for the day. Our courſe was about South, twenty-one miles from the lake already mentioned. We now diſcovered the tops of mountains, covered with ſnow, over very high intermediate land. We killed a whitehead and a grey eagle, and three grey partridges; we ſaw alſo two otters in the river, and ſeveral beaver lodges along it. When the rain ceaſed, we caught a few ſmall fiſh, and repaired the raft for the ſervice of the enſuing day.

Wedneſ. 10. At an early hour of this morning we prepared to croſs the water. The traverſe is about thirty yards, and it required five trips to get us all over. At a ſhort diſtance below, a ſmall river falls in, that comes from the direction in which we were proceeding. It is a rapid for about three hundred yards, when it expands into a lake, along which our road conducted us, and beneath a range of beautiful hills, covered with verdure. At half paſt eight we came to the termination of the lake, where there were two houſes that occupied a moſt delightful ſituation, and as they contained their neceſſary furniture, it ſeemed probable that their owners intended ſhortly to return. Near them were ſeveral graves or tombs, to which the natives are particularly attentive, and never ſuffer any herbage to grow upon them. In about half an hour we reached a place where there were two temporary huts, that contained thirteen men, with whom we found our guide who had preceded us, in order to ſecure a good reception. The buildings were detached from each other, and conveniently placed for fiſhing in the lake. Their inhabitants called themſelves Sloua-cuſs-Dinais, which denomination, as far as my interpreter,

preter could explain it to me, I underſtood to mean Red-fiſh Men. They were much more cleanly, healthy, and agreeable in their appearance, than any of the natives whom we had paſſed; nevertheleſs, I have no doubt that they are the ſame people, from their name alone, which is of the Chepewyan language. My interpreters, however, underſtood very little of what they ſaid, ſo that I did not expect much information from them. Some of them ſaid it was a journey of four days to the ſea, and others were of opinion that it was ſix; and there were among them who extended it to eight; but they all uniformly declared that they had been to the coaſt. They did not entertain the ſmalleſt apprehenſion of danger from us, and, when we diſcharged our pieces, expreſſed no ſenſation but that of aſtoniſhment, which, as may be ſuppoſed, was proportionably encreaſed when one of the hunters ſhot an eagle, at a conſiderable diſtance. At twelve I obtained an altitude, which made our latitude 53. 4. 32. North, being not ſo far South as I expected. 1793. July.

I now went, accompanied by one of my men, an interpreter, and the guide, to viſit ſome huts at the diſtance of a mile. On our arrival the inhabitants preſented us with a diſh of boiled trout, of a ſmall kind. The fiſh would have been excellent if it had not taſted of the kettle, which was made of the bark of the white ſpruce, and of the dried graſs with which it was boiled. Beſides this kind of trout, red and white carp and jub, are the only fiſh I ſaw as the produce of theſe waters.

Theſe people appeared to live in a ſtate of comparative comfort: they take a greater ſhare in the labour of the women, than is common

1793. July. among the ſavage tribes, and are, as I was informed, content with one wife. Though this circumſtance may proceed rather from the difficulty of procuring ſubſiſtence, than any habitual averſion to polygamy.

My preſent guide now informed me, that he could not proceed any further, and I accordingly engaged two of theſe people to ſucceed him in that office; but when they deſired us to proceed on the beaten path without them, as they could not ſet off till the following day, I determined to ſtay that night, in order to accommodate myſelf to their convenience. I diſtributed ſome trifles among the wives and children of the men who were to be our future guides, and returned to my people. We came back by a different way, and paſſed by two buildings, erected between four trees, and about fifteen feet from the ground, which appeared to me to be intended as magazines for winter proviſions. At four in the afternoon, we proceeded with conſiderable expedition, by the ſide of the lake, till ſix, when we came to the end of it: we then ſtruck off through a much leſs beaten track, and at half paſt ſeven ſtopped for the night. Our courſe was about Weſt-South-Weſt thirteen miles, and Weſt ſix miles.

Thurſday 11. I paſſed a moſt uncomfortable night: the firſt part of it I was tormented with flies, and in the latter deluged with rain. In the morning the weather cleared, and as ſoon as our clothes were dried, we proceeded through a moraſs. This part of the country had been laid waſte by fire, and the fallen trees added to the pain and perplexity of our way. An high, rocky ridge ſtretched along our left. Though the rain returned, we continued our progreſs till noon, when our guides took to ſome

ſome trees for ſhelter. We then ſpread our oil-cloth, and, with ſome difficulty, made a fire. About two the rain ceaſed, when we continued our journey through the ſame kind of country which we had hitherto paſſed. At half paſt three we came in ſight of a lake; the land, at the ſame time gradually riſing to a range of mountains whoſe tops were covered with ſnow. We ſoon after obſerved two freſh tracks, which ſeemed to ſurpriſe our guides, but they ſuppoſed them to have been made by the inhabitants of the country who were come into this part of it to fiſh. At five in the afternoon we were ſo wet and cold, (for it had at intervals continued to rain,) that we were compelled to ſtop for the night. We paſſed ſeven rivulets and a creek in this day's journey. As I had hitherto regulated our courſe by the ſun, I could not form an accurate judgment of this route, as we had not been favoured with a ſight of it during the day; but I imagine it to have been nearly in the ſame direction as that of yeſterday. Our diſtance could not have been leſs than fifteen miles. 1793. July.

Our conductors now began to complain of our mode of travelling, and mentioned their intention of leaving us; and my interpreters, who were equally diſſatisfied, added to our perplexity by their conduct. Beſides, theſe circumſtances, and the apprehenſion that the diſtance from the ſea might be greater than I had imagined, it became a matter of real neceſſity that we ſhould begin to diminiſh the conſumption of our proviſions, and to ſubſiſt upon two-thirds of our allowance; a propoſition which was as unwelcome to my people, as it was neceſſary to be put into immediate practice.

At

1793. July. Friday 12. At half paſt five this morning we proceeded on our journey, with cloudy weather, and when we came to the end of the lake ſeveral tracks were viſible that led to the ſide of the water; from which circumſtance I concluded, that ſome of the natives were fiſhing along the banks of it. This lake is not more than three miles long, and about one broad. We then paſſed four ſmaller lakes, the two firſt being on our right, and thoſe which preceded on our left. A ſmall river alſo flowed acroſs our way from the right, and we paſſed it over a beaver-dam. A larger lake now appeared on our right, and the mountains on each ſide of us were covered with ſnow. We afterwards came to another lake on our right, and ſoon reached a river, which our guides informed us was the ſame that we had paſſed on a raft. They ſaid it was navigable for canoes from the great river, except two rapids, one of which we had ſeen. At this place it is upwards of twenty yards acroſs, and deep water. One of the guides ſwam over to fetch a raft which was on the oppoſite ſide; and having encreaſed its dimenſions, we croſſed at two trips, except four of the men, who preferred ſwimming.

Here our conductors renewed their menace of leaving us, and I was obliged to give them ſeveral articles, and promiſe more, in order to induce them to continue till we could procure other natives to ſucceed them. At four in the afternoon we forded the ſame river, and being with the guides at ſome diſtance before the reſt of the people, I ſat down to wait for them, and no ſooner did they arrive, than the former ſet off with ſo much ſpeed, that my attempt to follow them proved unſucceſsful. One of my Indians, however, who had no load, overtook them, when they excuſed themſelves to him by declaring, that their ſole motive

motive for leaving us, was to prevent the people, whom they expected to find, from ſhooting their arrows at us. At ſeven o'clock, however, we were ſo fatigued, that we encamped without them: the mountains covered with ſnow now appeared to be directly before us. As we were collecting wood for our fire, we diſcovered a croſs road, where it appeared that people had paſſed within ſeven or eight days. In ſhort, our ſituation was ſuch as to afford a juſt cauſe of alarm, and that of the people with me was of a nature to defy immediate alleviation. It was neceſſary, however, for me to attempt it; and I reſted my principles of encouragement on a repreſentation of our paſt perplexities and unexpected relief, and endeavoured to excite in them the hope of ſimilar good fortune. I ſtated to them, that we could not be at a great diſtance from the ſea, and that there were but few natives to paſs, till we ſhould arrive among thoſe, who being accuſtomed to viſit the ſea coaſt, and, having ſeen white people, would be diſpoſed to treat us with kindneſs. Such was the general tenor of the reaſoning I employed on the occaſion, and I was happy to find that it was not offered in vain. 1793. July.

The weather had been cloudy till three in the afternoon, when the ſun appeared; but ſurrounded, as we were, with ſnow-clad mountains, the air became ſo cold, that the violence of our exerciſe, was not ſufficient to produce a comfortable degree of warmth. Our courſe to-day was from Weſt to South, and at leaſt thirty-ſix miles. The land in general was very barren and ſtony, and lay in ridges, with cypreſs trees ſcattered over them. We paſſed ſeveral ſwamps, where we ſaw nothing to conſole us but a few tracks of deer.

The

1793. July. Saturday 13. The weather this morning was clear but cold, and our ſcanty covering was not ſufficient to protect us from the ſeverity of the night. About five, after we had warmed ourſelves at a large fire, we proceeded on our dubious journey. In about an hour we came to the edge of a wood, when we perceived an houſe, ſituated on a green ſpot, and by the ſide of a ſmall river. The ſmoke that iſſued from it informed us that it was inhabited. I immediately puſhed forward toward this manſion, while my people were in ſuch a ſtate of alarm, that they followed me with the utmoſt reluctance. On looking back I perceived that we were in an Indian defile, of fifty yards in length. I, however, was cloſe upon the houſe before the inhabitants perceived us, when the women and children uttered the moſt horrid ſhrieks, and the only man who appeared to be with them, eſcaped out of a back door, which I reached in time to prevent the women and children from following him. The man fled with all his ſpeed into the wood, and I called in vain on my interpreters to ſpeak to him, but they were ſo agitated with fear as to have loſt the power of utterance. It is impoſſible to deſcribe the diſtreſs and alarm of theſe poor people, who believing that they were attacked by enemies, expected an immediate maſſacre, which, among themſelves, never fails to follow ſuch an event.

Our priſoners conſiſted of three women, and ſeven children, which apparently compoſed three families. At length, however, by our demeanor, and our preſents, we contrived to diſſipate their apprehenſions. One of the women then informed us, that their people, with ſeveral others had left that place three nights before, on a trading journey to a tribe whom ſhe called Annah, which is the name the Chepewyans

give

give to the Kniſteneaux, at the diſtance of three days. She added alſo, that from the mountains before us, which were covered with ſnow, the ſea was viſible; and accompanied her information with a preſent of a couple of dried fiſh. We now expreſſed our deſire that the man might be induced to return, and conduct us in the road to the ſea. Indeed, it was not long before he diſcovered himſelf in the wood, when he was aſſured, both by the women and our interpreters, that we had no hoſtile deſign againſt him; but theſe aſſurances had no effect in quieting his apprehenſions. I then attempted to go to him alone, and ſhewed him a knife, beads, &c. to induce him to come to me, but he, in return, made an hoſtile diſplay of his bow and arrows; and, having for a time exhibited a variety of ſtrange antics, again diſappeared. However, he ſoon preſented himſelf in another quarter, and after a ſucceſſion of parleys between us, he engaged to come and accompany us. 1793. July.

While theſe negotiations were proceeding, I propoſed to viſit the fiſhing machines, to which the women readily conſented, and I found in them twenty ſmall fiſh, ſuch as trout, carp, and jub, for which I gave her a large knife; a preſent that appeared to be equally unexpected and gratifying to her. Another man now came towards us, from an hill, talking aloud from the time he appeared till he reached us. The purport of his ſpeech was, that he threw himſelf upon our mercy, and we might kill him, if it was our pleaſure, but that from what he had heard, he looked rather for our friendſhip than our enmity. He was an elderly perſon, of a decent appearance, and I gave him ſome articles to conciliate him to us. The firſt man now followed with a lad along with him, both of whom were the ſons of the old man, and, on his ar-

1793. July. rival, he gave me ſeveral half-dried fiſh, which I conſidered as a peace-offering. After ſome converſation with theſe people, reſpecting the country, and our future progreſs through it, we retired to reſt, with ſenſations very different from thoſe with which we had riſen in the morning. The weather had been generally cloudy throughout the day, and when the ſun was obſcured, extremely cold for the ſeaſon. At noon I obtained a meridian altitude, which gave 52. 58. 53. North latitude. I likewiſe took time in the afternoon.

Sunday 14. This morning we had a bright ſun, with an Eaſt wind. Theſe people examined their fiſhing machines, when they found in them a great number of ſmall fiſh, and we dreſſed as many of them as we could eat. Thus was our departure retarded until ſeven, when we proceeded on our journey, accompanied by the man and his two ſons. As I did not want the younger, and ſhould be obliged to feed him, I requeſted of his father to leave him, for the purpoſe of fiſhing for the women. He replied, that they were accuſtomed to fiſh for themſelves, and that I need not be apprehenſive of their encroaching upon my proviſions, as they were uſed to ſuſtain themſelves in their journies on herbs, and the inner tegument of the bark of trees, for the ſtripping of which he had a thin piece of bone, then hanging by his ſide. The latter is of a glutinous quality, of a clammy, ſweet taſte, and is generally conſidered by the more interior Indians as a delicacy, rather than an article of common food. Our guide informed me that there is a ſhort cut acroſs the mountains, but as there was no trace of a road, and it would ſhorten our journey but one day, he ſhould prefer the beaten way.

We

We accordingly proceeded along a lake, Weſt five miles. We then croſſed a ſmall river, and paſſed through a ſwamp, about South-Weſt, when we began gradually to aſcend for ſome time till we gained the ſummit of an hill, where we had an extenſive view to the South-Eaſt, from which direction a conſiderable river appeared to flow, at the diſtance of about three miles: it was repreſented to me as being navigable for canoes. The deſcent of this hill was more ſteep than its aſcent, and was ſucceeded by another, whoſe top, though not ſo elevated as the laſt, afforded a view of the range of mountains, covered with ſnow, which, according to the intelligence of our guide, terminates in the ocean. We now left a ſmall lake on our left, then croſſed a creek running out of it, and at one in the afternoon came to an houſe, of the ſame conſtruction and dimenſions as have already been mentioned, but the materials were much better prepared and finiſhed. The timber was ſquared on two ſides, and the bark taken off the two others; the ridge pole was alſo ſhaped in the ſame manner, extending about eight or ten feet beyond the gable end, and ſupporting a ſhed over the door: the end of it was carved into the ſimilitude of a ſnake's head. Several hieroglyphics and figures of a ſimilar workmanſhip, and painted with red earth, decorated the interior of the building. The inhabitants had left the houſe but a ſhort time, and there were ſeveral bags or bundles in it, which I did not ſuffer to be diſturbed. Near it were two tombs, ſurrounded in a neat manner with boards, and covered with bark. Beſide them ſeveral poles had been erected, one of which was ſquared, and all of them painted. From each of them were ſuſpended ſeveral rolls or parcels of bark, and our guide gave the following account of them; which, as far as we could judge from our imperfect knowledge of the language,

1793. July.

1793. July. and the incidental errors of interpretation, appeared to involve two different modes of treating their dead; or it might be one and the ſame ceremony, which we did not diſtinctly comprehend: at all events, it is the practice of theſe people to burn the bodies of their dead, except the larger bones, which are rolled up in bark and ſuſpended from poles, as I have already deſcribed. According to the other account, it appeared that they actually bury their dead; and when another of the family dies, the remains of the perſon who was laſt interred are taken from the grave and burned, as has been already mentioned; ſo that the members of a family are thus ſucceſſively buried and burned, to make room for each other; and one tomb proves ſufficient for a family through ſucceeding generations. There is no houſe in this country without a tomb in its vicinity. Our laſt courſe extended about ten miles.

We continued our journey along the lake before the houſe, and, croſſing a river that flowed out of it, came to a kind of bank, or weir, formed by the natives, for the purpoſe of placing their fiſhing machines, many of which, of different ſizes, were lying on the ſide of the river. Our guide placed one of them, with the certain expectation that on his return he ſhould find plenty of fiſh in it. We proceeded nine miles further, on a good road, Weſt-South-Weſt, when we came to a ſmall lake: we then croſſed a river that ran out of it, and our guides were in continual expectation of meeting with ſome of the natives. To this place our courſe was a mile and an half, in the ſame direction as the laſt. At nine at night we croſſed a river on rafts, our laſt diſtance being about four miles South-Eaſt, on a winding road, through a ſwampy country, and along a ſucceſſion of ſmall lakes. We were now quite exhauſted, and it was abſolutely

abſolutely neceſſary for us to ſtop for the night. The weather being clear throughout the day, we had no reaſon to complain of the cold. Our guides encouraged us with the hope that, in two days of ſimilar exertion, we ſhould arrive among the people of the other nation. 1793. July.

At five this morning we were again in motion, and paſſing along a river, we at length forded it. This ſtream was not more than knee deep, about thirty yards over, and with a ſtony bottom. The old man went onward by himſelf, in the hope of falling in with the people, whom he expected to meet in the courſe of the day. At eleven we came up with him, and the natives whom he expected, conſiſting of five men, and part of their families. They received us with great kindneſs, and examined us with the moſt minute attention. They muſt, however, have been told that we were white, as our faces no longer indicated that diſtinguiſhing complexion. They called themſelves Neguia Dinais, and were come in a different direction from us, but were now going the ſame way, to the Anah-yoe Teſſe or River, and appeared to be very much ſatisfied with our having joined them. They preſented us with ſome fiſh which they had juſt taken in the adjoining lake. Monday 15.

Here I expected that our guides, like their predeceſſors, would have quitted us, but, on the contrary, they expreſſed themſelves to be ſo happy in our company, and that of their friends, that they voluntarily, and with great cheerfulneſs proceeded to paſs another night with us. Our new acquaintance were people of a very pleaſing aſpect. The hair of the women was tied in large looſe knots over the ears, and plaited with great neatneſs from the diviſion of the head, ſo as to be included in the knots.

1793. July. knots. Some of them had adorned their treſſes with beads, with a very pretty effect. The men were clothed in leather, their hair was nicely combed, and their complexion was fairer, or perhaps it may be ſaid, with more propriety, that they were more cleanly, than any of the natives whom we had yet ſeen. Their eyes, though keen and ſharp, are not of that dark colour, ſo generally obſervable in the various tribes of Indians; they were, on the contrary, of a grey hue, with a tinge of red. There was one man amongſt them of at leaſt ſix feet four inches in height; his manners were affable, and he had a more prepoſſeſſing appearance than any Indian I had met with in my journey; he was about twenty-eight years of age, and was treated with particular reſpect by his party. Every man, woman, and child, carried a proportionate burden, conſiſting of beaver coating and parchment, as well as ſkins of the otter, the marten, the bear, the lynx, and dreſſed mooſe-ſkins. The laſt they procure from the Rocky-Mountain Indians. According to their account, the people of the ſea coaſt prefer them to any other article. Several of their relations and friends, they ſaid, were already gone, as well provided as themſelves, to barter with the people of the coaſt; who barter them in their turn, except the dreſſed leather, with white people who, as they had been informed, arrive there in large canoes.

Such an eſcort was the moſt fortunate circumſtance that could happen in our favour. They told us, that as the women and children could not travel faſt, we ſhould be three days in getting to the end of our journey; which muſt be ſuppoſed to have been very agreeable information to people in our exhauſted condition.

In

In about half an hour after we had joined our new acquaintance, the signal for moving onwards was given by the leader of the party, who vociferated the words, Huy, Huy, when his people joined him and continued a clamorous converſation. We paſſed along a winding road over hills, and through ſwampy vallies, from South to Weſt. We then croſſed a deep, narrow river, which diſcharges itſelf into a lake, on whoſe ſide we ſtopped at five in the afternoon, for the night, though we had repoſed ſeveral times ſince twelve at noon; ſo that our mode of travelling had undergone a very agreeable change. I compute the diſtance of this day's journey at about twenty miles. In the middle of the day the weather was clear and ſultry. 1792. July.

We all ſat down on a very pleaſant green ſpot, and were no ſooner ſeated, than our guide and one of the party prepared to engage in play. They had each a bundle of about fifty ſmall ſticks, neatly poliſhed, of the ſize of a quill, and five inches long: a certain number of theſe ſticks had red lines round them; and as many of theſe as one of the players might find convenient were curiouſly rolled up in dry graſs, and according to the judgment of his antagoniſt reſpecting their number and, marks, he loſt or won. Our friend was apparently the loſer, as he parted with his bow and arrows, and ſeveral articles which I had given him.

The weather of this morning was the ſame as yeſterday; but our fellow-travellers were in no hurry to proceed, and I was under the neceſſity of preſſing them into greater expedition, by repreſenting the almoſt exhauſted ſtate of our proviſions. They, however, aſſured us, that after the next night's ſleep we ſhould arrive at the river where they were going, Tueſday 16.

1793. July. going, and that we ſhould there get fiſh in great abundance. My young men, from an act of imprudence, deprived themſelves laſt night of that reſt which was ſo neceſſary to them. One of the ſtrangers aſking them ſeveral queſtions reſpecting us, and concerning their own country, one of them gave ſuch anſwers as were not credited by the audience; whereupon he demanded, in a very angry tone, if they thought he was diſpoſed to tell lies, like the Rocky-Mountain Indians; and one of that tribe happening to be of the party, a quarrel enſued, which might have been attended with the moſt ſerious conſequences, if it had not been fortunately prevented by the interference of thoſe who were not intereſted in the diſpute.

Though our ſtock of proviſions was getting ſo low, I determined nevertheleſs, to hide about twenty pounds of pemmican, by way of providing againſt our return. I therefore left two of the men behind, with directions to bury it, as uſual, under the place where we had made our fire.

Our courſe was about Weſt-South-Weſt by the ſide of the lake, and in about two miles we came to the end of it. Here was a general halt, when my men overtook us. I was now informed, that ſome people of another tribe were ſent for, who wiſhed very much to ſee us, two of whom would accompany us over the mountains; that, as for themſelves, they had changed their mind, and intended to follow a ſmall river which iſſued out of the lake, and went in a direction very different from the line of our journey. This was a diſappointment, which, though not uncommon to us, might have been followed by conſiderable inconveniences.

It

It was my wiſh to continue with them whatever way they went; but neither my promiſes or entreaties would avail: theſe people were not to be turned from their purpoſe; and when I repreſented the low ſtate of our proviſions, one of them anſwered, that if we would ſtay with them all night, he would boil a kettle of fiſh-roes for us. Accordingly, without receiving any anſwer, he began to make preparation to fulfil his engagement. He took the roes out of a bag, and having bruiſed them between two ſtones, put them in water to ſoak. His wife then took an handful of dry graſs in her hand, with which ſhe ſqueezed them through her fingers; in the mean time her huſband was employed in gathering wood to make a fire, for the purpoſe of heating ſtones. When ſhe had finiſhed her operation, ſhe filled a watape kettle nearly full of water, and poured the roes into it. When the ſtones were ſufficiently heated, ſome of them were put into the kettle, and others were thrown in from time to time, till the water was in a ſtate of boiling; the woman alſo continued ſtirring the contents of the kettle, till they were brought to a thick conſiſtency; the ſtones were then taken out, and the whole was ſeaſoned with about a pint of ſtrong rancid oil. The ſmell of this curious diſh was ſufficient to ſicken me without taſting it, but the hunger of my people ſurmounted the nauſeous meal. When unadulterated by the ſtinking oil, theſe boiled roes are not unpalatable food. 1793. July.

In the mean time four of the people who had been expected, arrived, and, according to the account given of them, were of two tribes whom I had not yet known. After ſome converſation, they propoſed, that I ſhould continue my route by their houſes; but the old guide, who was now preparing to leave us, informed me that it would lengthen my journey;

1793. July. and by his advice I propoſed to them to conduct us along the road which had been already marked out to us. This they undertook without the leaſt heſitation; and, at the ſame time, pointed out to me the paſs in the mountain, bearing South by Eaſt by compaſs. Here I had a meridian altitude, and took time.

At four in the afternoon we parted with our late fellow-travellers in a very friendly manner, and immediately forded the river. The wild parſnep, which luxuriates on the borders of the lakes and rivers, is a favourite food of the natives: they roaſt the tops of this plant, in their tender ſtate, over the fire, and taking off the outer rind, they are then a very palatable food.

We now entered the woods, and ſome time after arrived on the banks of another river that flowed from the mountain, which we alſo forded. The country ſoon after we left the river was ſwampy; and the fire having paſſed through it, the number of trees, which had fallen, added to the toil of our journey. In a ſhort time we began to aſcend, and continued aſcending till nine at night. We walked upwards of fourteen miles, according to my computation, in the courſe of the day, though the ſtraight line of diſtance might not be more than ten. Notwithſtanding that we were ſurrounded by mountains covered with ſnow, we were very much tormented with muſquitoes.

Wedneſ. 17. Before the ſun roſe, our guides ſummoned us to proceed, when we deſcended into a beautiful valley, watered by a ſmall river. At eight we came to the termination of it, where we ſaw a great number of moles, and

and began again to aſcend. We now perceived many ground-hogs, and heard them whiſtle in every direction. The Indians went in purſuit of them, and ſoon joined us with a female and her litter, almoſt grown to their full ſize. They ſtripped off their ſkins, and gave the carcaſes to my people. They alſo pulled up a root, which appeared like a bunch of white berries of the ſize of a pea; its ſhape was that of a fig, while it had the colour and taſte of a potatoe. 1793. July.

We now gained the ſummit of the mountain, and found ourſelves ſurrounded by ſnow. But this circumſtance is cauſed rather by the quantity of ſnow driſted in the paſs, than the real height of the ſpot, as the ſurrounding mountains riſe to a much higher degree of elevation. The ſnow had become ſo compact that our feet hardly made a perceptible impreſſion on it. We obſerved, however, the tracks of an herd of ſmall deer which muſt have paſſed a ſhort time before us, and the Indians and my hunters went immediately in purſuit of them. Our way was now nearly level, without the leaſt ſnow, and not a tree to be ſeen in any part of it. The graſs is very ſhort, and the ſoil a reddiſh clay, intermixed with ſmall ſtones. The face of the hills, where they are not enlivened with verdure, appears, at a diſtance, as if fire had paſſed over them. It now began to hail, ſnow, and rain, nor could we find any ſhelter but the leeward ſide of an huge rock. The wind alſo roſe into a tempeſt, and the weather was as diſtreſſing as any I had ever experienced. After an abſence of an hour and an half, our hunters brought a ſmall doe of the rein-deer ſpecies, which was all they had killed, though they fired twelve ſhots at a large herd of them. Their ill

1793. July. ſucceſs they attributed to the weather. I propoſed to leave half of the veniſon in the ſnow, but the men preferred carrying it, though their ſtrength was very much exhauſted. We had been ſo long ſhivering with cold in this ſituation that we were glad to renew our march. Here and there were ſcattered a few crowberry buſhes and ſtinted willows; the former of which had not yet bloſſomed.

Before us appeared a ſtupendous mountain, whoſe ſnow-clad ſummit was loſt in the clouds; between it and our immediate courſe, flowed the river to which we were going. The Indians informed us that it was at no great diſtance. As ſoon as we could gather a ſufficient quantity of wood, we ſtopped to dreſs ſome of our veniſon; and it is almoſt ſuperfluous to add, that we made an heartier meal than we had done for many a day before. To the comfort which I have juſt mentioned, I added that of taking off my beard, as well as changing my linen, and my people followed the humaniſing example. We then ſet forwards, and came to a large pond, on whoſe bank we found a tomb, but lately made, with a pole, as uſual, erected beſide it, on which two figures of birds were painted, and by them the guides diſtinguiſhed the tribe to which the deceaſed perſon belonged. One of them, very unceremonioufly, opened the bark and ſhewed us the bones which it contained, while the other threw down the pole, and having poſſeſſed himſelf of the feathers that were tied to it, fixed them on his own head. I therefore conjectured, that theſe funeral memorials belonged to an individual of a tribe at enmity with them.

We continued our route with a conſiderable degree of expedition, and as we proceeded the mountains appeared to withdraw from us. The country

country between them ſoon opened to our view, which apparently added to their awful elevation. We continued to deſcend till we came to the brink of a precipice, from whence our guides diſcovered the river to us, and a village on its banks. This precipice, or rather ſucceſſion of precipices, is covered with large timber, which conſiſts of the pine, the ſpruce, the hemlock, the birch, and other trees. Our conductors informed us, that it abounded in animals, which, from their deſcription, muſt be wild goats. In about two hours we arrived at the bottom, where there is a conflux of two rivers, that iſſue from the mountains. We croſſed the one which was to the left. They are both very rapid, and continue ſo till they unite their currents, forming a ſtream of about twelve yards in breadth. Here the timber was alſo very large; but I could not learn from our conductors why the moſt conſiderable hemlock trees were ſtripped of their bark to the tops of them. I concluded, indeed, at that time that the inhabitants tanned their leather with it. Here were alſo the largeſt and loftieſt elder and cedar trees that I had ever ſeen. We were now ſenſible of an entire change in the climate, and the berries were quite ripe. 1793. July.

The ſun was about to ſet, when our conductors left us to follow them as well as we could. We were prevented, however, from going far aſtray, for we were hemmed in on both ſides and behind by ſuch a barrier as nature never before preſented to my view. Our guides had the precaution to mark the road for us, by breaking the branches of trees as they paſſed. This ſmall river muſt, at certain ſeaſons, riſe to an uncommon height and ſtrength of current moſt probably on the melting of the ſnow; as we ſaw a large quantity of drift wood lying twelve feet above the

1793. July. the immediate level of the river. This circumſtance impeded our progreſs, and the protruding rocks frequently forced us to paſs through the water. It was now dark, without the leaſt appearance of houſes, though it would be impoſſible to have ſeen them, if there had been any, at the diſtance of twenty yards, from the thickneſs of the woods. My men were anxious to ſtop for the night; indeed the fatigue they had ſuffered juſtified the propoſal, and I left them to their choice; but as the anxiety of my mind impelled me forwards, they continued to follow me, till I found myſelf at the edge of the woods; and, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances that were made, I proceeded, feeling rather than ſeeing my way, till I arrived at an houſe, and ſoon diſcovered ſeveral fires, in ſmall huts, with people buſily employed in cooking their fiſh. I walked into one of them without the leaſt ceremony, threw down my burden, and, after ſhaking hands with ſome of the people, ſat down upon it. They received me without the leaſt appearance of ſurprize, but ſoon made ſigns for me to go up to the large houſe, which was erected, on upright poſts, at ſome diſtance from the ground. A broad piece of timber with ſteps cut in it, led to the ſcaffolding even with the floor, and by this curious kind of ladder I entered the houſe at one end; and having paſſed three fires, at equal diſtances in the middle of the building, I was received by ſeveral people, ſitting upon a very wide board, at the upper end of it. I ſhook hands with them, and ſeated myſelf beſide a man, the dignity of whoſe countenance induced me to give him that preference. I ſoon diſcovered one of my guides ſeated a little above me, with a neat mat ſpread before him, which I ſuppoſed to be the place of honour, and appropriated to ſtrangers. In a ſhort time my people arrived, and placed themſelves near me, when the man by whom I ſat, immediately roſe, and fetched, from behind a plank

plank of about four feet wide, a quantity of roaſted ſalmon. He then directed a mat to be placed before me and Mr. Mackay, who was now ſitting by me. When this ceremony was performed, he brought a ſalmon for each of us, and half an one to each of my men. The ſame plank ſerved alſo as a ſcreen for the beds, whither the women and children were already retired; but whether that circumſtance took place on our arrival, or was the natural conſequence of the late hour of the night, I did not diſcover. The ſigns of our protector ſeemed to denote, that we might ſleep in the houſe, but as we did not underſtand him with a ſufficient degree of certainty, I thought it prudent, from the fear of giving offence, to order the men to make a fire without, that we might ſleep by it. When he obſerved our deſign, he placed boards for us that we might not take our repoſe on the bare ground, and ordered a fire to be prepared for us. We had not been long ſeated round it, when we received a large diſh of ſalmon roes, pounded fine and beat up with water ſo as to have the appearance of a cream. Nor was it without ſome kind of ſeaſoning that gave it a bitter taſte. Another diſh ſoon followed, the principal article of which was alſo ſalmon-roes, with a large proportion of gooſeberries, and an herb that appeared to be ſorrel. Its acidity rendered it more agreeable to my taſte than the former preparation. Having been regaled with theſe delicacies, for ſuch they were conſidered by that hoſpitable ſpirit which provided them, we laid ourſelves down to reſt with no other canopy than the ſky; but I never enjoyed a more ſound and refreſhing reſt, though I had a board for my bed, and a billet for my pillow. 1793. July.

At five this morning I awoke, and found that the natives had lighted a fire Thurſday 18.

1793. June. a fire for us, and were ſitting by it. My hoſpitable friend immediately brought me ſome berries and roaſted ſalmon, and his companions ſoon followed his example. The former, which conſiſted among many others, of gooſeberries, whirtleberries and raſpberries, were the fineſt I ever ſaw or taſted, of their reſpective kinds. They alſo brought the dried roes of fiſh to eat with the berries.

Salmon is ſo abundant in this river, that theſe people have a conſtant and plentiful ſupply of that excellent fiſh. To take them with more facility, they had, with great labour, formed an embankment or weir acroſs the river for the purpoſe of placing their fiſhing machines, which they diſpoſed both above and below it. I expreſſed my wiſh to viſit this extraordinary work, but theſe people are ſo ſuperſtitious, that they would not allow me a nearer examination than I could obtain by viewing it from the bank. The river is about fifty yards in breadth, and by obſerving a man fiſh with a dipping net, I judged it to be about ten feet deep at the foot of the fall. The weir is a work of great labour, and contrived with conſiderable ingenuity. It was near four feet above the level of the water, at the time I ſaw it, and nearly the height of the bank on which I ſtood to examine it. The ſtream is ſtopped nearly two thirds by it. It is conſtructed by fixing ſmall trees in the bed of the river in a ſlanting poſition (which could be practicable only when the water is much lower than I ſaw it) with the thick part downwards; over theſe is laid a bed of gravel, on which is placed a range of leſſer trees, and ſo on alternately till the work is brought to its proper height. Beneath it the machines are placed, into which the ſalmon fall when they attempt to leap over. On either ſide there is a large frame

frame of timber-work ſix feet above the level of the upper water, in which paſſages are left for the ſalmon leading directly into the machines, which are taken up at pleaſure. At the foot of the fall dipping nets are alſo ſucceſsfully employed. 1703. July.

The water of this river is of the colour of aſſes milk, which I attributed in part to the limeſtone that in many places forms the bed of the river, but principally to the rivulets which fall from mountains of the ſame material.

Theſe people indulge an extreme ſuperſtition reſpecting their fiſh, as it is apparently their only animal food. Fleſh they never taſte, and one of their dogs having picked and ſwallowed part of a bone which we had left, was beaten by his maſter till he diſgorged it. One of my people alſo having thrown a bone of the deer into the river, a native, who had obſerved the circumſtance, immediately dived and brought it up, and, having conſigned it to the fire, inſtantly proceeded to waſh his polluted hands.

As we were ſtill at ſome diſtance from the ſea, I made application to my friend to procure us a canoe or two, with people to conduct us thither. After he had made various excuſes, I at length comprehended that his only objection was to the embarking veniſon in a canoe on their river, as the fiſh would inſtantly ſmell it and abandon them, ſo that he, his friends, and relations, muſt ſtarve. I ſoon eaſed his apprehenſions on that point, and deſired to know what I muſt do with the veniſon that remained, when he told me to give it to one of the ſtrangers whom he

1793. July. pointed out to me, as being of a tribe that eat fleſh. I now requeſted him to furniſh me with ſome freſh ſalmon in its raw ſtate; but, inſtead of complying with my wiſh, he brought me a couple of them roaſted, obſerving at the ſame time, that the current was very ſtrong, and would bring us to the next village, where our wants would be abundantly ſupplied. In ſhort, he requeſted that we would make haſte to depart. This was rather unexpected after ſo much kindneſs and hoſpitality, but our ignorance of the language prevented us from being able to diſcover the cauſe.

At eight this morning, fifteen men armed, the friends and relations of theſe people, arrived by land, in conſequence of notice ſent them in the night, immediately after the appearance of our guides. They are more corpulent and of a better appearance than the inhabitants of the interior. Their language totally different from any I had heard; the Atnah and Chin tribe, as far as I can judge from the very little I ſaw of that people, bear the neareſt reſemblance to them. They appear to be of a quiet and peaceable character, and never make any hoſtile incurſions into the lands of their neighbours.

Their dreſs conſiſts of a ſingle robe tied over the ſhoulders, falling down behind, to the heels, and before, a little below the knees, with a deep fringe round the bottom. It is generally made of the bark of the cedar tree, which they prepare as fine as hemp; though ſome of theſe garments are interwoven with ſtrips of the ſea-otter ſkin, which give them the appearance of a fur on one ſide. Others have ſtripes of red and yellow threads fancifully introduced toward the borders, which have a very agreeable effect,

effect. The men have no other covering than that which I have described, and they unceremoniously lay it aside when they find it convenient. In addition to this robe, the women wear a close fringe hanging down before them about two feet in length, and half as wide. When they sit down they draw this between their thighs. They wear their hair so short, that it requires little care or combing. The men have theirs in plaits, and being smeared with oil and red earth, instead of a comb they have a small stick hanging by a string from one of the locks, which they employ to alleviate any itching or irritation in the head. The colour of the eye is grey with a tinge of red. They have all high cheek-bones, but the women are more remarkable for that feature than the men. Their houses, arms, and utensils I shall describe hereafter. 1793. July.

I presented my friend with several articles, and also distributed some among others of the natives who had been attentive to us. One of my guides had been very serviceable in procuring canoes for us to proceed on our expedition; he appeared also to be very desirous of giving these people a favourable impression of us; and I was very much concerned that he should leave me as he did, without giving me the least notice of his departure, or receiving the presents which I had prepared for him, and he so well deserved. At noon I had an observation which gave 52. 28. 11. North longitude.

CHAPTER X.

Continue our journey. Embark on a river. Come to a weir. Dexterity of the natives in paſſing it. Arrive at a village. Alarm occaſioned among the natives. The ſubſequent favourable reception, accompanied with a banquet of ceremony. Circumſtances of it. Deſcription of a village, its houſes, and places of devotion. Account of the cuſtoms, mode of living, and ſuperſtition of the inhabitants. Deſcription of the chief's canoe. Leave the place, and proceed on our voyage.

1793. July. AT one in the afternoon we embarked, with our ſmall baggage, in two canoes, accompanied by ſeven of the natives. The ſtream was rapid, and ran upwards of ſix miles an hour. We came to a weir, ſuch as I have already deſcribed, where the natives landed us, and ſhot over it without taking a drop of water. They then received us on board again, and we continued our voyage, paſſing many canoes on the river, ſome with people in them, and others empty. We proceeded at a very great rate for about two hours and an half, when we were informed that we muſt land, as the village was only at a ſhort diſtance. I had imagined that the Canadians who accompanied me were the moſt expert canoe-men in the world, but they are very inferior to theſe people, as they themſelves acknowledged, in conducting thoſe veſſels.

Some

Some of the Indians ran before us, to announce our approach, when we took our bundles and followed. We had walked along a well-beaten path, through a kind of coppice, when we were informed of the arrival of our couriers at the houſes, by the loud and confuſed talking of the inhabitants. As we approached the edge of the wood, and were almoſt in ſight of the houſes, the Indians who were before me made ſigns for me to take the lead, and that they would follow. The noiſe and confuſion of the natives now ſeemed to encreaſe, and when we came in ſight of the village, we ſaw them running from houſe to houſe, ſome armed with bows and arrows, others with ſpears, and many with axes, as if in a ſtate of great alarm. This very unpleaſant and unexpected circumſtance, I attributed to our ſudden arrival, and the very ſhort notice of it which had been given them. At all events, I had but one line of conduct to purſue, which was to walk reſolutely up to them, without manifeſting any ſigns of apprehenſion at their hoſtile appearance. This reſolution produced the deſired effect, for as we approached the houſes, the greater part of the people laid down their weapons, and came forward to meet us. I was, however, ſoon obliged to ſtop from the number of them that ſurrounded me. I ſhook hands, as uſual with ſuch as were the neareſt to me, when an elderly man broke through the crowd, and took me in his arms; another then came, who turned him away without the leaſt ceremony, and paid me the ſame compliment. The latter was followed by a young man, whom I underſtood to be his ſon. Theſe embraces, which at firſt rather ſurpriſed me, I ſoon found to be marks of regard and friendſhip. The crowd preſſed with ſo much violence and contention to get a view of us, that we could not move in any direction. An opening was at length made to allow a perſon to approach

1793. July.

1793. July. approach me, whom the old man made me underſtand was another of his ſons. I inſtantly ſtepped forward to meet him, and preſented my hand, whereupon he broke the ſtring of a very handſome robe of ſea-otter ſkin, which he had on, and covered me with it. This was as flattering a reception as I could poſſibly receive, eſpecially as I conſidered him to be the eldeſt ſon of the chief. Indeed it appeared to me that we had been detained here for the purpoſe of giving him time to bring the robe with which he had preſented me.

The chief now made ſigns for us to follow him, and he conducted us through a narrow coppice, for ſeveral hundred yards, till we came to an houſe built on the ground, which was of larger dimenſions, and formed of better materials than any I had hitherto ſeen; it was his reſidence. We were no ſooner arrived there, than he directed mats to be ſpread before it, on which we were told to take our ſeats, when the men of the village, who came to indulge their curioſity, were ordered to keep behind us. In our front other mats were placed, where the chief and his counſellors took their ſeats. In the intervening ſpace, mats, which were very clean, and of a much neater workmanſhip than thoſe on which we ſat were alſo ſpread, and a ſmall roaſted ſalmon placed before each of us. When we had ſatisfied ourſelves with the fiſh, one of the people who came with us from the laſt village approached, with a kind of ladle in one hand, containing oil, and in the other ſomething that reſembled the inner rind of the cocoa-nut, but of a lighter colour; this he dipped in the oil, and, having eat it, indicated by his geſtures how palatable he thought it. He then preſented me with a ſmall piece of it, which I choſe to taſte in its dry ſtate, though the oil was free from any unpleaſant ſmell. A ſquare cake

of

of this was next produced, when a man took it to the water near the houſe, and having thoroughly ſoaked it, he returned, and, after he had pulled it to pieces like oakum, put it into a well-made trough, about three feet long, nine inches wide, and five deep; he then plentifully ſprinkled it with ſalmon oil, and manifeſted by his own example that we were to eat of it. I juſt taſted it, and found the oil perfectly ſweet, without which the other ingredient would have been very inſipid. The chief partook of it with great avidity, after it had received an additional quantity of oil. This diſh is conſidered by theſe people as a great delicacy; and on examination, I diſcovered it to conſiſt of the inner rind of the hemlock tree, taken off early in ſummer, and put into a frame, which ſhapes it into cakes of fifteen inches long, ten broad, and half an inch thick; and in this form I ſhould ſuppoſe it may be preſerved for a great length of time. This diſcovery ſatisfied me reſpecting the many hemlock trees which I had obſerved ſtripped of their bark. 1793. July.

In this ſituation we remained for upwards of three hours, and not one of the curious natives left us during all that time, except a party of ten or twelve of them, whom the chief ordered to go and catch fiſh, which they did in great abundance, with dipping nets, at the foot of the Weir.

At length we were relieved from the gazing crowd, and got a lodge erected, and covered in for our reception during the night. I now preſented the young chief with a blanket, in return for the robe with which he had favoured me, and ſeveral other articles, that appeared to be very gratifying to him. I alſo preſented ſome to his father, and amongſt them

was

1793. July. was a pair of ſciſſars, whoſe uſe I explained to him, for clipping his beard, which was of great length; and to that purpoſe he immediately applied them. My diſtribution of ſimilar articles was alſo extended to others, who had been attentive to us. The communication, however, between us was awkward and inconvenient, for it was carried on entirely by ſigns, as there was not a perſon with me who was qualified for the office of an interpreter.

We were all of us very deſirous to get ſome freſh ſalmon, that we might dreſs them in our own way, but could not by any means obtain that gratification, though there were thouſands of that fiſh ſtrung on cords, which were faſtened to ſtakes in the river. They were even averſe to our approaching the ſpot where they clean and prepare them for their own eating. They had, indeed, taken our kettle from us, leſt we ſhould employ it in getting water from the river; and they aſſigned as the reaſon for this precaution, that the ſalmon diſlike the ſmell of iron. At the ſame time they ſupplied us with wooden boxes, which were capable of holding any fluid. Two of the men that went to fiſh, in a canoe capable of containing ten people, returned with a full lading of ſalmon, that weighed from ſix to forty pounds, though the far greater part of them were under twenty. They immediately ſtrung the whole of them, as I have already mentioned, in the river.

I now made the tour of the village, which conſiſted of four elevated houſes, and ſeven built on the ground, beſides a conſiderable number of other buildings or ſheds, which are uſed only as kitchens, and places for curing their fiſh. The former are conſtructed by fixing a certain number

number of poſts in the earth, on ſome of which are laid, and to others are faſtened, the ſupporters of the floor, at about twelve feet above the ſurface of the ground: their length is from an hundred to an hundred and twenty feet, and they are about forty feet in breadth. Along the centre are built three, four, or five hearths, for the two-fold purpoſe of giving warmth, and dreſſing their fiſh. The whole length of the building on either ſide is divided by cedar planks, into partitions or apartments of ſeven feet ſquare, in the front of which there are boards, about three feet wide, over which, though they are not immovably fixed, the inmates of theſe receſſes generally paſs, when they go to reſt. The greater part of them are intended for that purpoſe, and ſuch are covered with boards, at the height of the wall of the houſe, which is about ſeven or eight feet, and reſt upon beams that ſtretch acroſs the building. On thoſe alſo are placed the cheſts which contain their proviſions, utenſils, and whatever they poſſeſs. The intermediate ſpace is ſufficient for domeſtic purpoſes. On poles that run along the beams, hang roaſted fiſh, and the whole building is well covered with boards and bark, except within a few inches of the ridge pole; where open ſpaces are left on each ſide to let in light and emit the ſmoke. At the end of the houſe that fronts the river, is a narrow ſcaffolding, which is alſo aſcended by a piece of timber, with ſteps cut in it; and at each corner of this erection there are openings, for the inhabitants to eaſe nature. As it does not appear to be a cuſtom among them to remove theſe heaps of excremental filth, it may be ſuppoſed that the effluvia does not annoy them. 1793. July.

The houſes which reſt on the ground are built of the ſame materials, and on the ſame plan. A ſloping ſtage that riſes to a croſs piece of timber,

1793. July. supported by two forks, joins alſo to the main building, for thoſe purpoſes which need not be repeated.

When we were ſurrounded by the natives on our arrival, I counted ſixty-five men, and ſeveral of them may be ſuppoſed to have been abſent; I cannot, therefore, calculate the inhabitants of this village at leſs than two hundred ſouls.

The people who accompanied us hither, from the other village, had given the chief a very particular account of every thing they knew concerning us: I was, therefore, requeſted to produce my aſtronomical inſtruments; nor could I have any objection to afford them this ſatisfaction, as they would neceſſarily add to our importance in their opinion.

Near the houſe of the chief I obſerved ſeveral oblong ſquares, of about twenty feet by eight. They were made of thick cedar boards, which were joined with ſo much neatneſs, that I at firſt thought they were one piece. They were painted with hieroglyphics, and figures of different animals, and with a degree of correctneſs that was not to be expected from ſuch an uncultivated people. I could not learn the uſe of them, but they appeared to be calculated for occaſional acts of devotion or ſacrifice, which all theſe tribes perform at leaſt twice in the year, at the ſpring and fall. I was confirmed in this opinion by a large building in the middle of the village, which I at firſt took for the half finiſhed frame of an houſe. The ground-plot of it was fifty feet by forty-five; each end is formed by four ſtout poſts, fixed perpendicularly

dicularly in the ground. The corner ones are plain, and ſupport a beam of the whole length, having three intermediate props on each ſide, but of a larger ſize, and eight or nine feet in height. The two centre poſts, at each end, are two feet and an half in diameter, and carved into human figures, ſupporting two ridge poles on their heads, at twelve feet from the ground. The figures at the upper part of this ſquare repreſent two perſons, with their hands upon their knees, as if they ſupported the weight with pain and difficulty: the others oppoſite to them ſtand at their eaſe, with their hands reſting on their hips. In the area of the building there were the remains of ſeveral fires. The poſts, poles, and figures, were painted red and black; but the ſculpture of theſe people is ſuperior to their painting. 1793. July.

Soon after I had retired to reſt laſt night, the chief paid me a viſit to inſiſt on my going to his bed-companion, and taking my place himſelf; but, notwithſtanding his repeated entreaties, I reſiſted this offering of his hoſpitality. Friday 19.

At an early hour this morning I was again viſited by the chief, in company with his ſon. The former complained of a pain in his breaſt; to relieve his ſuffering, I gave him a few drops of Turlington's Balſam on a piece of ſugar; and I was rather ſurpriſed to ſee him take it without the leaſt heſitation. When he had taken my medicine, he requeſted me to follow him, and conducted me to a ſhed, where ſeveral people were aſſembled round a ſick man, who was another of his ſons. They immediately uncovered him, and ſhewed me a violent ulcer in the ſmall of his back, in the fouleſt ſtate that can be imagined. One of his knees was alſo

1793. July. afflicted in the ſame manner. This unhappy man was reduced to a ſkeleton, and, from his appearance, was drawing near to an end of his pains. They requeſted that I would touch him, and his father was very urgent with me to adminiſter medicine; but he was in ſuch a dangerous ſtate, that I thought it prudent to yield no further to the importunities than to give the ſick perſon a few drops of Turlington's balſam in ſome water. I therefore left them, but was ſoon called back by the loud lamentations of the women, and was rather apprehenſive that ſome inconvenience might reſult from my compliance with the chief's requeſt. On my return I found the native phyſicians buſy in practiſing their ſkill and art on the patient. They blew on him, and then whiſtled; at times they preſſed their extended fingers, with all their ſtrength on his ſtomach; they alſo put their fore fingers doubled into his mouth, and ſpouted water from their own with great violence into his face. To ſupport theſe operations the wretched ſufferer was held up in a ſitting poſture; and when they were concluded, he was laid down and covered with a new robe made of the ſkin of a lynx. I had obſerved that his belly and breaſt were covered with ſcars, and I underſtood that they were cauſed by a cuſtom prevalent among them, of applying pieces of lighted touch-wood to their fleſh, in order to relieve pain or demonſtrate their courage. He was now placed on a broad plank, and carried by ſix men into the woods, where I was invited to accompany them. I could not conjecture what would be the end of this ceremony, particularly as I ſaw one man carry fire, another an axe, and a third dry wood. I was, indeed, diſpoſed to ſuſpect that, as it was their cuſtom to burn the dead, they intended to relieve the poor man from his pain, and perform the laſt ſad duty of ſurviving affection. When they had advanced a ſhort

diſtance

diſtance into the wood, they laid him upon a clear ſpot, and kindled a fire againſt his back, when the phyſician began to ſcarify the ulcer with a very blunt inſtrument, the cruel pain of which operation the patient bore with incredible reſolution. The ſcene afflicted me and I left it. 1793. July.

On my return to our lodge, I obſerved before the door of the chief's reſidence, four heaps of ſalmon, each of which conſiſted of between three and four hundred fiſh. Sixteen women were employed in cleaning and preparing them. They firſt ſeparate the head from the body, the former of which they boil; they then cut the latter down the back on each ſide of the bone, leaving one third of the fiſh adhering to it, and afterwards take out the guts. The bone is roaſted for immediate uſe, and the other parts are dreſſed in the ſame manner, but with more attention, for future proviſion. While they are before the fire, troughs are placed under them to receive the oil. The roes are alſo carefully preſerved, and form a favourite article of their food.

After I had obſerved theſe culinary preparations, I paid a viſit to the chief, who preſented me with a roaſted ſalmon; he then opened one of his cheſts, and took out of it a garment of blue cloth, decorated with braſs buttons; and another of a flowered cotton, which I ſuppoſed were Spaniſh; it had been trimmed with leather fringe, after the faſhion of their own cloaks. Copper and braſs are in great eſtimation among them, and of the former they have great plenty: they point their arrows and ſpears with it, and work it up into perſonal ornaments; ſuch as collars, ear-rings, and bracelets, which they wear on their wriſts, arms, and legs. I preſume they find it the moſt advantageous article of trade with the

1793. July. the more inland tribes. They alſo abound in iron I ſaw ſome of their twiſted collars of that metal which weighed upwards of twelve pounds. It is generally beat into bars of fourteen inches in length, and one inch three quarters wide. The braſs is in thin ſquares: their copper is in larger pieces, and ſome of it appeared to be old ſtills cut up. They have various trinkets; but their iron is manufactured only into poniards and daggers. Some of the former have very neat handles, with a ſilver coin of a quarter or eighth of a dollar fixed on the end of them. The blades of the latter are from ten to twelve inches in length, and about four inches broad at the top, from which they gradually leſſen into a point.

When I produced my inſtruments to take an altitude, I was deſired not to make uſe of them. I could not then diſcover the cauſe of this requeſt, but I experienced the good effect of the apprehenſion which they occaſioned, as it was very effectual in haſtening my departure. I had applied ſeveral times to the chief to prepare canoes and people to take me and my party to the ſea, but very little attention had been paid to my application till noon; when I was informed that a canoe was properly equipped for my voyage, and that the young chief would accompany me. I now diſcovered that they had entertained no perſonal fear of the inſtruments, but were apprehenſive that the operation of them might frighten the ſalmon from that part of the river. The obſervation taken in this village gave me 52. 25. 52 North latitude.

In compliance with the chief's requeſt I deſired my people to take their bundles, and lay them down on the bank of the river. In the mean time

time I went to take the dimenſions of his large canoe, in which, it was ſignified to me, that about ten winters ago he went a conſiderable diſtance towards the mid-day ſun, with forty of his people, when he ſaw two large veſſels full of ſuch men as myſelf, by whom he was kindly received: they were, he ſaid, the firſt white people he had ſeen. They were probably the ſhips commanded by Captain Cook. This canoe was built of cedar, forty-five feet long, four feet wide, and three feet and a half in depth. It was painted black and decorated with white figures of fiſh of different kinds. The gunwale, fore and aft, was inlaid with the teeth of the ſea-otter.* 1793. July.

When I returned to the river, the natives who were to accompany us, and my people, were already in the canoe. The latter, however, informed me, that one of our axes was miſſing. I immediately applied to the chief, and requeſted its reſtoration; but he would not underſtand me till I ſat myſelf down on a ſtone, with my arms in a ſtate of preparation, and made it appear to him that I ſhould not depart till the ſtolen article was reſtored. The village was immediately in a ſtate of uproar, and ſome danger was apprehended from the confuſion that prevailed in it. The axe, however, which had been hidden under the chief's canoe, was ſoon returned. Though this inſtrnment was not, in itſelf, of ſufficient value to juſtify a diſpute with theſe people, I apprehended that the ſuffering them to keep it, after we had declared its loſs,

* As Captain Cooke has mentioned, that the people of the ſea-coaſt adorned their canoes with human teeth, I was more particular in my inquiries; the reſult of which was, the moſt ſatisfactory proof, that he was miſtaken: but his miſtake aroſe from the very great reſemblance there is between human teeth and thoſe of the ſea-otter.

might

1793. July. might have occaſioned the loſs of every thing we carried with us, and of our lives alſo. My people were diſſatisfied with me at the moment; but I thought myſelf right then, and, I think now, that the circumſtances in which we were involved, juſtified the meaſure which I adopted.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XI.

Renew our voyage. Circumſtances of the river. Land at the houſe of a chief. Entertained by him. Carried down the river with great rapidity to another houſe. Received with kindneſs. Occupations of the inhabitants on its banks. Leave the canoe at a fall. Paſs over land to another village. Some account of it. Obtain a view of an arm of the ſea. Loſe our dog. Procure another canoe. Arrive at the arm of the ſea. Circumſtances of it. One of our guides returns home. Coaſt along a bay. Some deſcription of it. Meet with Indians. Our communication with them. Their ſuſpicious conduct towards us. Paſs onwards. Determine the latitude and longitude. Return to the river. Dangerous encounter with the Indians. Proceed on our journey.

1793. July. Saturday 18.

AT one in the afternoon we renewed our voyage in a large canoe with four of the natives. We found the river almoſt one continued rapid, and in half an hour we came to an houſe, where, however, we did not land, though invited by the inhabitants. In about an hour we arrived at two houſes, where we were, in ſome degree, obliged to go on ſhore, as we were informed that the owner of them was a perſon of conſideration. He indeed received and regaled us in the ſame manner

1793. July. as at the laſt village; and to increaſe his conſequence, he produced many European articles, and amongſt them were at leaſt forty pounds weight of old copper ſtills. We made our ſtay as ſhort as poſſible, and our hoſt embarked with us. In a very ſhort time we were carried by the rapidity of the current to another houſe of very large dimenſions, which was partitioned into different apartments, and whoſe doors were on the ſide. The inhabitants received us with great kindneſs; but inſtead of fiſh, they placed a long, clean, and well made trough before us full of berries. In addition to thoſe which we had already ſeen, there were ſome black, that were larger than the huckle berry, and of a richer flavour; and others white, which reſembled the blackberry in every thing but colour. Here we ſaw a woman with two pieces of copper in her under lip, as deſcribed by Captain Cook. I continued my uſual practice of making theſe people preſents in return for their friendly reception and entertainment.

The navigation of the river now became more difficult, from the numerous channels into which it was divided, without any ſenſible diminution in the velocity of its current. We ſoon reached another houſe of the common ſize, where we were well received; but whether our guides had informed them that we were not in want of any thing, or that they were deficient in inclination, or perhaps the means, of being hoſpitable to us, they did not offer us any refreſhment. They were in a ſtate of buſy preparation. Some of the women were employed in beating and preparing the inner rind of the cedar bark, to which they gave the appearance of flax. Others were ſpinning with a diſtaff and ſpindle. One of them was weaving a robe of it, intermixed with ſtripes of the ſea-

otter

otter ſkin, on a frame of adequate contrivance that was placed againſt the ſide of the houſe. The men were fiſhing on the river with drag-nets between two canoes. Theſe nets are forced by poles to the bottom, the current driving them before it; by which means the ſalmon coming up the river are intercepted, and give notice of their being taken by the ſtruggles they make in the bag or ſleeve of the net. There are no weirs in this part of the river, as I ſuppoſe, from the numerous channels into which it is divided. The machines, therefore, are placed along the banks, and conſequently theſe people are not ſo well ſupplied with fiſh as the village which has been already deſcribed, nor do they appear to poſſeſs the ſame induſtry. The inhabitants of the laſt houſe accompanied us in a large canoe. They recommended us to leave ours here, as the next village was but at a ſmall diſtance from us, and the water more rapid than that which we had paſſed. They informed us alſo, that we were approaching a caſcade. I directed them to ſhoot it, and proceeded myſelf to the foot thereof, where I re-imbarked, and we went on with great velocity, till we came to a fall, where we left our canoe, and carried our luggage along a road through a wood for ſome hundred yards, when we came to a village, conſiſting of ſix very large houſes, erected on palliſades, riſing twenty-five feet from the ground, which differed in no one circumſtance from thoſe already deſcribed, but the height of their elevation. They contained only four men and their families. The reſt of the inhabitants were with us and in the ſmall houſes which we paſſed higher up the river.* Theſe people do not ſeem to enjoy the abundance of their neighbours, as the men who returned

1793. July.

* Mr. Johnſtone came to theſe houſes the firſt day of the preceding month.

1793. July. from fiſhing had no more than five ſalmon; they refuſed to ſell one of them, but gave me one roaſted of a very indifferent kind. In the houſes there were ſeveral cheſts or boxes containing different articles that belonged to the people whom we had lately paſſed. If I were to judge by the heaps of filth beneath theſe buildings, they muſt have been erected at a more diſtant period than any which we had paſſed. From theſe houſes I could perceive the termination of the river, and its diſcharge into a narrow arm of the ſea.

As it was now half paſt ſix in the evening, and the weather cloudy, I determined to remain here for the night, and for that purpoſe we poſſeſſed ourſelves of one of the unoccupied houſes. The remains of our laſt meal, which we brought with us, ſerved for our ſupper, as we could not procure a ſingle fiſh from the natives. The courſe of the river is about Weſt, and the diſtance from the great village upwards of thirty-ſix miles. There we had loſt our dog, a circumſtance of no ſmall regret to me.

Saturday 20. We roſe at a very early hour this morning, when I propoſed to the Indians to run down our canoe, or procure another at this place. To both theſe propoſals they turned a deaf ear, as they imagined that I ſhould be ſatisfied with having come in ſight of the ſea. Two of them peremptorily refuſed to proceed; but the other two having conſented to continue with us, we obtained a larger canoe than our former one, and though it was in a leaky ſtate we were glad to poſſeſs it.

At about eight we got out of the river, which diſcharges itſelf by various

various channels into an arm of the ſea. The tide was out, and had left a large ſpace covered with ſea-weed. The ſurrounding hills were involved in fog. The wind was at Weſt, which was a-head of us, and very ſtrong; the bay appearing to be from one to three miles in breadth. As we advanced along the land we ſaw a great number of ſea-otters. We fired ſeveral ſhots at them, but without any ſucceſs from the rapidity with which they plunge under the water. We alſo ſaw many ſmall porpoiſes or divers. The white-headed eagle, which is common in the interior parts; ſome ſmall gulls, a dark bird which is inferior in ſize to the gull, and a few ſmall ducks, were all the birds which preſented themſelves to our view. 1793. July.

At two in the afternoon the ſwell was ſo high, and the wind, which was againſt us, ſo boiſterous, that we could not proceed with our leaky veſſel, we therefore landed in a ſmall cove on the right ſide of the bay. Oppoſite to us appeared another ſmall bay, in the mouth of which is an iſland, and where, according to the information of the Indians, a river diſcharges itſelf that abounds in ſalmon.

Our young Indians now diſcovered a very evident diſpoſition to leave us; and, in the evening, one of them made his eſcape. Mr. Mackay, however, with the other, purſued and brought him back; but as it was by no means neceſſary to detain him, particularly as proviſions did not abound with us, I gave him a ſmall portion, with a pair of ſhoes, which were neceſſary for his journey, and a ſilk handkerchief, telling him at the ſame time, that he might go and inform his friends, that we ſhould alſo

return

1793. July. return in three nights. He accordingly left us, and his companion, the young chief, went with him.

When we landed, the tide was going out, and at a quarter paſt four it was ebb, the water having fallen in that ſhort period eleven feet and an half. Since we left the river, not a quarter of an hour had paſſed in which we did not ſee porpoiſes and ſea-otters. Soon after ten it was high water, which rendered it neceſſary that our baggage ſhould be ſhifted ſeveral times, though not till ſome of the things had been wetted.

We were now reduced to the neceſſity of looking out for freſh water, with which we were plentifully ſupplied by the rills that ran down from the mountains.

When it was dark the young chief returned to us, bearing a large porcupine on his back. He firſt cut the animal open, and having diſencumbered it of the entrails, threw them into the ſea; he then ſinged its ſkin, and boiled it in ſeparate pieces, as our kettle was not ſufficiently capacious to contain the whole: nor did he go to reſt, till, with the aſſiſtance of two of my people who happened to be awake, every morſel of it was devoured.

I had flattered myſelf with the hope of getting a diſtance of the moon and ſtars, but the cloudy weather continually diſappointed me, and I began to fear that I ſhould fail in this important object; particularly as our proviſions were at a very low ebb, and we had, as yet, no reaſon to expect

expect any aſſiſtance from the natives. Our ſtock was, at this time, reduced to twenty pounds weight of pemmican, fifteen pounds of rice, and ſix pounds of flour, among ten half-ſtarved men, in a leaky veſſel, and on a barbarous coaſt. Our courſe from the river was about Weſt-South-Weſt, diſtance ten miles. 1793. July.

At forty minutes paſt four this morning it was low water, which made fifteen feet perpendicular height below the high-water mark of laſt night. Mr. Mackay collected a quantity of ſmall muſcles which we boiled. Our people did not partake of this regale, as they are wholly unacquainted with ſea ſhell-fiſh. Our young chief being miſſing, we imagined that he had taken his flight, but, as we were preparing to depart, he fortunately made his appearance from the woods, where he had been to take his reſt after his feaſt of laſt night. At ſix we were upon the water, when we cleared the ſmall bay, which we named Porcupine Cove, and ſteered Weſt-South-Weſt for ſeven miles, we then opened a channel about two miles and an half wide at South-South-Weſt, and had a view of ten or twelve miles into it. As I could not aſcertain the diſtance from the open ſea, and being uncertain whether we were in a bay or among inlets and channels of iſlands, I confined my ſearch to a proper place for taking an obſervation. We ſteered, therefore, along the land on the left, Weſt-North-Weſt a mile and an half; then North-Weſt one fourth of a mile, and North three miles to an iſland; the land continuing to run North-North-Weſt, then along the iſland, South-South-Weſt half a mile, Weſt a mile and an half, and from thence directly acroſs to the land on the left, (where I had an altitude,) South-Weſt three miles.* Sunday 21.

* The Cape or Point Menzies of Vancouver.

From

1793. July. From this poſition a channel, of which the iſland we left appeared to make a cheek, bears North by Eaſt.

Under the land we met with three canoes, with fifteen men in them, and laden with their moveables, as if proceeding to a new ſituation, or returning to a former one. They manifeſted no kind of miſtruſt or fear of us, but entered into converſation with our young man, as I ſuppoſed, to obtain ſome information concerning us. It did not appear that they were the ſame people as thoſe we had lately ſeen, as they ſpoke the language of our young chief, with a different accent. They then examined every thing we had in our canoe, with an air of indifference and diſdain. One of them in particular made me underſtand, with an air of inſolence, that a large canoe had lately been in this bay, with people in her like me, and that one of them, whom he called *Macubah*, had fired on him and his friends, and that *Benſins* had ſtruck him on the back, with the flat part of his ſword. He alſo mentioned another name, the articulation of which I could not determine. At the ſame time he illuſtrated theſe circumſtances by the aſſiſtance of my gun and ſword; and I do not doubt but he well deſerved the treatment which he deſcribed. He alſo produced ſeveral European articles, which could not have been long in his poſſeſſion. From his conduct and appearance, I wiſhed very much to be rid of him, and flattered myſelf that he would proſecute his voyage, which appeared to be in an oppoſite direction to our courſe. However, when I prepared to part from them, they turned their canoes about, and perſuaded my young man to leave me, which I could not prevent.

We

We coaſted along the land* at about Weſt-South-Weſt for ſix miles, and met a canoe with two boys in it, who were diſpatched to ſummon the people on that part of the coaſt to join them. The troubleſome fellow now forced himſelf into my canoe, and pointed out a narrow channel on the oppoſite ſhore, that led to his village, and requeſted us to ſteer towards it, which I accordingly ordered. His importunities now became very irkſome, and he wanted to ſee every thing we had, particularly my inſtruments, concerning which he muſt have received information from my young man. He aſked for my hat, my handkerchief, and, in ſhort, every thing that he ſaw about me. At the ſame time he frequently repeated the unpleaſant intelligence that he had been ſhot at by people of my colour. At ſome diſtance from the land a channel opened to us, at South-Weſt by Weſt, and pointing that way, he made me underſtand that *Macubah* came there with his large canoe. When we were in mid-channel, I perceived ſome ſheds, or the remains of old buildings, on the ſhore; and as, from that circumſtance, I thought it probable that ſome Europeans might have been there, I directed my ſteerſman to make for that ſpot. The traverſe is upwards of three miles North-Weſt. 1793. July.

We landed, and found the ruins of a village, in a ſituation calculated for defence. The place itſelf was over grown with weeds, and in the centre of the houſes there was a temple, of the ſame form and conſtruction as that which I deſcribed at the large village. We were ſoon followed by ten canoes, each of which contained from three to ſix men. They

* Named by Vancouver King's Iſland.

1793. July. informed us that we were expected at the village, where we ſhould ſee many of them. From their general deportment I was very apprehenſive that ſome hoſtile deſign was meditated againſt us, and for the firſt time I acknowledged my apprehenſions to my people. I accordingly deſired them to be very much upon their guard, and to be prepared if any violence was offered to defend themſelves to the laſt.

We had no ſooner landed, than we took poſſeſſion of a rock, where there was not ſpace for more than twice our number, and which admitted of our defending ourſelves with advantage, in caſe we ſhould be attacked. The people in the three firſt canoes, were the moſt troubleſome, but, after doing their utmoſt to irritate us, they went away. They were, however, no ſooner gone, than an hat, an handkerchief, and ſeveral other articles, were miſſing. The reſt of our viſitors continued their preſſing invitations to accompany them to their village; but finding our reſolution to decline them was not to be ſhaken, they, about ſun-ſet relieved us from all further importunities, by their departure.

Another canoe, however, ſoon arrived, with ſeven ſtout, well-looking men. They brought a box, which contained a very fine ſea-otter ſkin, and a goat ſkin, that was beautifully white. For the former they demanded my hanger, which, as may well be ſuppoſed, could not be ſpared in our preſent ſituation, and they actually refuſed to take a yard and an half of common broad cloth, with ſome other articles, for the ſkin, which proves the unreflecting improvidence of our European traders. The goat-ſkin was ſo bulky that I did not offer to purchaſe it. Theſe men alſo told me that *Macubah* had been there, and left his ſhip behind a point

point of land in the channel, South-Weſt from us; from whence he had come to their village in boats, which theſe people repreſented by imitating our manner of rowing. When I offered them what they did not chooſe to accept for the otter-ſkin, they ſhook their heads, and very diſtinctly anſwered "No, no." And to mark their refuſal of any thing we aſked from them, they emphatically employed the ſame Britiſh monoſyllable. In one of the canoes which had left us, there was a ſeal, that I wiſhed to purchaſe, but could not perſuade the natives to part with it. They had alſo a fiſh, which I now ſaw for the firſt time. It was about eighteen inches in length, of the ſhape and appearance of a trout, with ſtrong, ſharp teeth. We ſaw great numbers of the animals which we had taken for ſea otters, but I was now diſpoſed to think that a great part of them, at leaſt, muſt have been ſeals. 1799. July.

The natives having left us, we made a fire to warm ourſelves, and as for ſupper, there was but little of that, for our whole daily allowance did not amount to what was ſufficient for a ſingle meal. The weather was clear throughout the day, which was ſucceeded by a fine moon-light night. I directed the people to keep watch by two in turn, and laid myſelf down in my cloak.

This morning the weather was clear and pleaſant; nor had any thing occurred to diſturb us throughout the night. One ſolitary Indian, indeed, came to us with about half a pound of boiled ſeal's fleſh, and the head of a ſmall ſalmon, for which he aſked an handkerchief, but afterwards accepted a few beads. As this man came alone, I concluded that no general plan had been formed among the natives to annoy us, but this opinion did not altogether calm the apprehenſions of my people. Monday 22.

1793. July. Soon after eight in the morning, I took five altitudes for time, and the mean of them was 36° 48' at ſix in the afternoon, 58. 34. time, by the watch, which makes the achrometer ſlow apparent time 1h 21m 44'.

Two canoes now arrived from the ſame quarter as the reſt, with ſeveral men, and our young Indian along with them. They brought a very few ſmall ſea-otter ſkins, out of ſeaſon, with ſome pieces of raw ſeal's fleſh. The former were of no value, but hunger compelled ſome of my people to take the latter, at an extravagant price. Mr. Mackay lighted a bit of touch wood with a burning-glaſs, in the cover of his tobacco-box, which ſo ſurpriſed the natives, that they exchanged the beſt of their otter ſkins for it. The young man was now very anxious to perſuade our people to depart, as the natives, he ſaid, were as numerous as muſquitoes, and of very malignant character. This information produced ſome very earneſt remonſtrances to me to haſten our departure, but as I was determined not to leave this place, except I was abſolutely compelled to it, till I had aſcertained its ſituation, theſe ſolicitations were not repeated.

While I was taking a meridian, two canoes, of a larger ſize, and well manned, appeared from the main South-Weſt channel. They ſeemed to be the fore-runners of others, who were coming to co-operate with the people of the village, in conſequence of the meſſage ſent by the two boys, which has been already mentioned; and our young Indian, who underſtood them, renewed his entreaties for our departure, as they would ſoon come to ſhoot their arrows, and hurl their ſpears at us. In relating our danger, his agitation was ſo violent that he foamed at the mouth. Though I was not altogether free from apprehenſions on the occaſion, it

was

was neceſſary for me to diſguiſe them, as my people were panic ſtruck, and ſome of them aſked if it was my determination to remain there to be ſacrificed? My reply was the ſame as their former importunities had received, that I would not ſtir till I had accompliſhed my object; at the ſame time, to humour their fears, I conſented that they ſhould put every thing into the canoe, that we might be in a ſtate of preparation to depart. The two canoes now approached the ſhore, and in a ſhort time five men, with their families, landed very quietly from them. My inſtruments being expoſed, they examined them with much apparent admiration and aſtoniſhment. My altitude, by an artificial horizon, gave 52° 21′ 33″; that by the natural horizon was 52° 20′ 48″ North latitude.* 1793. July.

Theſe Indians were of a different tribe from thoſe which I had already ſeen, as our guide did not underſtand their language. I now mixed up ſome vermilion in melted greaſe, and inſcribed, in large characters, on the South-Eaſt face of the rock on which we had ſlept laſt night, this brief memorial—" Alexander Mackenzie, from Canada, by land, the twenty-ſecond of July, one thouſand ſeven hundred and ninety-three."

As I thought that we were too near the village, I conſented to leave this place, and accordingly proceeded North-Eaſt three miles, when we landed on a point, in a ſmall cove, where we ſhould not be readily ſeen, and could not be attacked except in our front.

Among other articles that had been ſtolen from us, at our laſt ſtation,

* This I found to be the cheek of Vancouver's Caſcade Canal.

was

1793. July. was a ſounding-line, which I intended to have employed in this bay, though I ſhould not probably have found the bottom, at any diſtance from the ſhore, as the appearance both of the water and land indicated a great depth. The latter diſplayed a ſolid rock, riſing, as it appeared to me, from three to ſeven hundred feet above high water mark. Where any ſoil was ſcattered about, there were cedars, ſpruce-firs, white birch, and other trees of large growth. From its precipices iſſued ſtreams of fine water, as cold as ice.

The two canoes which we had left at our laſt ſtation, followed us hither, and when they were preparing to depart, our young chief embarked with them. I was determined, however, to prevent his eſcape, and compelled him, by actual force, to come on ſhore, for I thought it much better to incur his diſpleaſure, than to ſuffer him to expoſe himſelf to any untoward accident among ſtrangers, or to return to his father before us. The men in the canoe made ſigns for him to go over the hill, and that they would take him on board at the other ſide of it. As I was neceſſarily engaged in other matters, I deſired my people to take care that he ſhould not run away; but they peremptorily refuſed to be employed in keeping him againſt his will. I was, therefore, reduced to the neceſſity of watching him myſelf.

I took five altitudes, and the mean of them was 29. 23. 48. at 3. 5. 53. in the afternoon, by the watch, which makes it ſlow apparent time $1^m\ 22^h\ 38''$

In the forenoon it was	.	1	21	44	2	44	22
	Mean of both	.			1	22	11
Difference nine hours going of the time-piece ſlow							8
					1	22	19

I obſerved

I obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's third ſatellite, which gave 8° 32' 21" difference of longitude. I then obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite, which gave 8. 31. 48. The mean of theſe obſervations is 8° 32' 2" which is equal to 128. 2. Weſt of Greenwich. 1793. July.

I had now determined my ſituation, which is the moſt fortunate circumſtance of my long, painful, and perilous journey, as a few cloudy days would have prevented me from aſcertaining the final longitude of it.*

At twelve it was high water, but the tide did not come within a foot and an half of the high water mark of laſt night. As ſoon as I had completed my obſervations, we left this place: it was then ten o'clock in the afternoon. We returned the ſame way that we came, and though the tide was running out very ſtrong, by keeping cloſe in with the rocks, we proceeded at a conſiderable rate, as my people were very anxious to get out of the reach of the inhabitants of this coaſt.

During our courſe we ſaw ſeveral fires on the land to the Southward, and after the day dawned, their ſmokes were viſible. At half paſt four this morning we arrived at our encampment of the night of the 21ſt, which had been named Porcupine Cove. The tide was out, and conſiderably lower than we found it when we were here before; the high- Tueſday 23.

* Mr. Meares was undoubtedly wrong in the idea, ſo poſitively inſiſted on by him in his voyage, that there was a North-Weſt paſſage to the Southward of ſixty-nine degrees and an half of latitude, as I flatter myſelf has been proved by my former voyage. Nor can I refrain from expreſſing my ſurpriſe at his aſſertion, that there was an inland ſea or archipelago of great extent between the iſlands of Nootka and the main, about the latitude where I was at this time. Indeed I have been informed that Captain Grey, who commanded an American veſſel, and on whoſe authority he ventured this opinion, denies that he had given Mr. Meares any ſuch information. Beſides, the contrary is indubitably proved by Captain Vancouver's ſurvey, from which no appeal can be made.

water

1793. July. water mark being above the place where we had made our fire. This fluctuation muſt be occaſioned by the action of the wind upon the water, in thoſe narrow channels.

As we continued onwards, towards the river, we ſaw a canoe, well manned, which at firſt made from us with great expedition, but afterwards waited, as if to reconnoitre us; however, it kept out of our way, and allowed us to paſs. The tide being much lower than when we were here before, we were under the neceſſity of landing a mile below the village. We obſerved that ſtakes were fixed in the ground along the bay, and in ſome places machines were faſtened to them, as I afterwards learned, to intercept the ſeals and otters. Theſe works are very extenſive, and muſt have been erected with no common labour. The only bird we ſaw to-day was the white-headed eagle.*

Our guide directed us to draw the canoe out of the reach of the tide and to leave it. He would not wait, however, till this operation was performed, and I did not wiſh to let him go alone. I therefore followed him through a bad road encumbered with underwood. When we had quitted the wood, and were in ſight of the houſes, the young man being about fifteen or twenty paces before me, I was ſurpriſed to ſee two men running down towards me from one of the houſes, with daggers in their hands and fury in their aſpect. From their hoſtile appearance, I could not doubt of their purpoſe. I therefore ſtopped ſhort, threw down my cloak, and put myſelf in a poſture of defence, with my gun preſented

* This bay was now named Mackenzie's Outlet.

towards

towards them. Fortunately for me, they knew the effect of fire-arms, and inſtantly dropped their daggers, which were faſtened by a ſtring to their wriſts, and had before been held in a menacing attitude. I let my gun alſo fall into my left hand, and drew my hanger. Several others ſoon joined them, who were armed in the ſame manner; and among them I recogniſed the man whom I have already mentioned as being ſo troubleſome to us, and who now repeated the names of Macubah and Benzins, ſignifying at the ſame time by his action, as on a former occaſion, that he had been ſhot at by them. Until I ſaw him my mind was undiſturbed; but the moment he appeared, conceiving that he was the cauſe of my preſent perilous ſituation, my reſentment predominated, and, if he had come within my reach, I verily believe, that I ſhould have terminated his inſolence for ever. 1793. July.

The reſt now approached ſo near, that one of them contrived to get behind me, and graſped me in his arms. I ſoon diſengaged myſelf from him; and, that he did not avail himſelf of the opportunity which he had of plunging his dagger into me, I cannot conjecture. They certainly might have overpowered me, and though I ſhould probably have killed one or two of them, I muſt have fallen at laſt.

One of my people now came out of the wood. On his appearance they inſtantly took to flight, and with the utmoſt ſpeed ſought ſhelter in the houſes from whence they had iſſued. It was, however, upwards of ten minutes before all my people joined me; and as they came one after the other, theſe people might have ſucceſſively diſpatched every

1793. July. one of us. If they had killed me, in the firſt inſtance, this conſequence would certainly have followed, and not one of us would have returned home to tell the horrid fate of his companions.

After having ſtated the danger I had encountered, I told my people that I was determined to make theſe natives feel the impropriety of their conduct toward us, and compel them to return my hat and cloak which they had taken in the ſcuffle, as well as the articles previouſly purloined from us; for moſt of the men who were in the three canoes that we firſt ſaw, were now in the village. I therefore told my men to prime their pieces afreſh, and prepare themſelves for an active uſe of them, if the occaſion ſhould require it.

We now drew up before the houſe, and made ſigns for ſome one to come down to us. At length our young chief appeared, and told us that the men belonging to the canoes had not only informed his friends, that we had treated him very ill, but that we had killed four of their companions whom we had met in the bay. When I had explained to them as well as it was in my power, the falſehood of ſuch a ſtory, I inſiſted on the reſtoration of every thing that had been taken from us, as well as a neceſſary ſupply of fiſh, as the conditions of my departure; accordingly the things were reſtored, and a few dried fiſh along with them. A reconciliation now took place, but our guide or young chief was ſo much terrified that he would remain no longer with us, and requeſted us to follow with his father's canoe, or miſchief would follow. I determined, however, before my departure, to take an obſervation, and at noon got a meridian

a meridian altitude, making this place, which I named Raſcal's Village, 52. 23. 43. North latitude. 1793. July.

On my informing the natives that we wanted ſomething more to eat, they brought us two ſalmons; and when we ſignified that we had no poles to ſet the canoe againſt the current, they were furniſhed with equal alacrity, ſo anxious were they for our departure. I paid, however, for every thing which we had received, and did not forget the loan of the canoe.

CHAPTER XII.

Return up the river. Slow progreſs of the canoe, from the ſtrength of the current. The hoſtile party of the natives precede us. Impetuous conduct of my people. Continue our very tedious voyage. Come to ſome houſes; received with great kindneſs. Arrive at the principal, or Salmon Village. Our preſent reception very different from that we experienced on our former viſit. Continue our journey. Circumſtances of it. Find our dog. Arrive at the Upper, or Friendly Village. Meet with a very kind reception. Some further account of the manners and cuſtoms of its inhabitants. Brief vocabulary of their language.

1793. July.

THE current of the river was ſo ſtrong, that I ſhould have complied with the wiſhes of my people, and gone by land, but one of my Indians was ſo weak, that it was impoſſible for him to perform the journey. He had been ill ſome time; and, indeed, we had been all of us more or leſs afflicted with colds on the ſea coaſt. Four of the people therefore ſet off with the canoe, and it employed them an hour to get half a mile. In the mean time the native, who has been already mentioned as having treated us with ſo much inſolence, and four of his companions, went up the river in a canoe, which they had above the rapid, with as many boxes as men

in

in her. This circumſtance was the cauſe of freſh alarm, as it was generally concluded that they would produce the ſame miſchief and danger in the villages above, as they had in that below. Nor was it forgotten that the young chief had left us in a manner which would not be interpreted in our favour by his father and friends. 1793. July.

At length the canoe arrived, and the people declared in the moſt unreſerved terms, that they would proceed no further in her; but when they were made acquainted with the circumſtances which have juſt been deſcribed, their violence increaſed, and the greater part of the men announced their determination to attempt the mountains, and endeavour, by paſſing over them, to gain the road by which we came to the firſt village. So reſolved were they to purſue this plan, that they threw every thing which they had into the river, except their blankets. I was all this time ſitting patiently on a ſtone, and indulging the hope that, when their frantic terror had ſubſided, their returning reaſon would have diſpoſed them to perceive the raſhneſs of their project; but when I obſerved that they perſiſted in it, I no longer remained a ſilent liſtener to their paſſionate declarations, but proceeded to employ ſuch arguments as I truſted would turn them from their ſenſeleſs and impracticable purpoſe. After reproving my young Indian in very ſevere terms, for encouraging the reſt to follow their mad deſign of paſſing the mountains, I addreſſed myſelf generally to them, ſtating the difficulty of aſcending the mountains, the eternal ſnows with which they were covered, our ſmall ſtock of proviſions, which two days would exhauſt, and the conſequent probability that we ſhould periſh with cold and hunger. I urged the folly of being affected by the alarm of danger

1793. July.

danger which might not exiſt, and if it did, I encouraged them with the means we poſſeſſed of ſurmounting it. Nor did I forget to urge the inhumanity and injuſtice of leaving the poor ſick Indian to languiſh and die. I alſo added, that as my particular object had been accompliſhed, I had now no other but our common ſafety; that the ſole wiſh of my heart was to employ the beſt means in my power, and to purſue the beſt method which my underſtanding could ſuggeſt, to ſecure them and myſelf from every danger that might impede our return.

My ſteerſman, who had been with me for five years in that capacity, inſtantly replied that he was ready to follow me wherever I ſhould go, but that he would never again enter that canoe, as he had ſolemnly ſworn he would not, while he was in the rapid. His example was followed by all the reſt, except two, who embarked with Mr. Mackay,* myſelf, and the ſick Indian. The current, however, was ſo ſtrong, that we dragged up the greateſt part of the way, by the branches of trees. Our progreſs, as may be imagined, was very tedious, and attended with uncommon labour; the party who went by land being continually obliged to wait for us. Mr. Mackay's gun was carried out of the canoe and loſt, at a time when we appeared to ſtand in very great need of it, as two canoes, with ſixteen or eighteen men, were coming down the ſtream; and the apprehenſions which they occaſioned did not ſubſide till they ſhot by us with great rapidity.

At length we came in ſight of the houſe, when we ſaw our young Indian

* It is but common juſtice to him, to mention in this place that I had every reaſon to be ſatisfied with his conduct.

with

with ſix others, in a canoe coming to meet us. This was a very encouraging circumſtance, as it ſatisfied us that the natives who had preceded, and whoſe malignant deſigns we had every reaſon to ſuſpect, had not been able to prejudice the people againſt us. We, therefore, landed at the houſe, where we were received in a friendly manner, and having procured ſome fiſh, we proceeded on our journey. 1793. July.

It was almoſt dark when we arrived at the next houſe, and the firſt perſons who preſented themſelves to our obſervation were the turbulent Indian and his four companions. They were not very agreeable objects; but we were nevertheleſs well received by the inhabitants, who preſented us with fiſh and berries. The Indians who had cauſed us ſo much alarm, we now diſcovered to be inhabitants of the iſlands, and traders in various articles, ſuch as cedar-bark, prepared to be wove into mats, fiſh-ſpawn, copper, iron, and beads, the latter of which they get on their own coaſt. For theſe they receive in exchange roaſted ſalmon, hemlock-bark cakes, and the other kind made of ſalmon roes, ſorrel, and bitter berries. Having procured as much fiſh as would ſerve us for our ſupper, and the meals of the next day, all my people went to reſt except one, with whom I kept the firſt watch.

After twelve laſt night, I called up Mr. Mackay, and one of the men, to relieve us, but as a general tranquillity appeared to prevail in the place, I recommended them to return to their reſt. I was the firſt awake the morning, and ſent Mr. Mackay to ſee if our canoe remained where we left it; but he returned to inform me that the Iſlanders had loaded it with their articles of traffic, and were ready to depart. On this intel- Wedneſ. 24.

ligence

1793. July. ligence I hurried to the water ſide, and ſeizing the canoe by the ſtem, I ſhould certainly have overſet it, and turned the three men that were in it, with all their merchandiſe, into the river, had not one of the people of the houſe, who had been very kind to us, informed me that this was their own canoe, and that my guide had gone off with ours. At the ſame moment the other two Indians who belonged to the party, jumped nimbly into it, and puſhed off with all the haſte and hurry that their fears may be ſuppoſed to dictate.

We now found ourſelves once more without a guide or a canoe. We were, however, ſo fortunate as to engage, without much difficulty, two of theſe people to accompany us; as, from the ſtrength of the current, it would not have been poſſible for us to have proceeded by water without their aſſiſtance. As the houſe was upon an iſland, we ferried over the pedeſtrian party to the main bank of the river, and continued our courſe till our conductors came to their fiſhing ground, when they propoſed to land us, and our ſmall portion of baggage; but as our companions were on the oppoſite ſhore, we could not acquieſce, and after ſome time perſuaded them to proceed further with us. Soon after we met the chief, who had regaled us in our voyage down the river. He was ſeining between two canoes, and had taken a conſiderable quantity of ſalmon. He took us on board with him, and proceeded upwards with great expedition. Theſe people are ſurpriſingly ſkilful and active in ſetting againſt a ſtrong current. In the roughеſt part they almoſt filled the canoe with water, by way of a ſportive alarm to us.

We landed at the houſe of the chief, and he immediately placed a fiſh before

before me. Our people now appeared on the oppoſite bank, when a canoe was ſent for them. As ſoon as they had made their meal of fiſh, they proceeded on their route, and we followed them, the chief and one of the natives having undertaken to conduct us. 1793. July.

At five in the afternoon we came to two houſes, which we had not ſeen in going down. They were upon an iſland, and I was obliged to ſend for the walking party, as our conductors, from the lateneſs of the hour, refuſed to proceed any further with us till the next day. One of our men, being at a ſmall diſtance before the others, had been attacked by a female bear, with two cubs, but another of them arrived to his reſcue, and ſhot her. Their fears probably prevented them from killing the two young ones. They brought a part of the meat, but it was very indifferent. We were informed that our former guide, or young chief, had paſſed this place, at a very early hour of the morning, on foot.

Theſe people take plenty of another fiſh, beſides ſalmon, which weigh from fifteen to forty pounds. This fiſh is broader than the ſalmon, of a greyiſh colour, and with an hunch on its back; the fleſh is white, but neither rich nor well flavoured. Its jaw and teeth are like thoſe of a dog, and the latter are larger and ſtronger than any I had ever ſeen in a fiſh of equal ſize: thoſe in front bend inwards, like the claws of a bird of prey. It delights in ſhallow water, and its native name is Dilly.

We received as many fiſh and berries from theſe people as completely ſatisfied our appetites. The latter excelled any of the kind that we

1793. July. had ſeen. I ſaw, alſo, three kinds of gooſeberries, which, as we paſſed through the woods, we found in great abundance.

Thurſday 25. I aroſe before the ſun, and the weather was very fine. The men who were to accompany us went to viſit their machines, and brought back plenty of fiſh, which they ſtrung on a rope, and left them in the river. We now embarked thirteen in a canoe, and landed my men on the South bank, as it would have been impracticable to have ſtemmed the tide with ſuch a load. The under-wood was ſo thick that it was with great difficulty they could paſs through it. At nine we were under the neceſſity of waiting to ferry them over a river from the South, which is not fordable. After ſome time we came to two deſerted houſes, at the foot of a rapid, beyond which our boatmen abſolutely refuſed to conduct us by water. Here was a road which led oppoſite to the village. We had, however, the curioſity to viſit the houſes, which were erected upon poſts; and we ſuffered very ſeverely for the indulgence of it; for the floors were covered with fleas, and we were immediately in the ſame condition, for which we had no remedy but to take to the water. There was not a ſpot round the houſes, free from graſs, that was not alive, as it were, with this vermin.

Our guides propoſed to conduct us on our way, and we followed them on a well-beaten track. They, however, went ſo faſt, that we could not all of us keep up with them, particularly our ſick Indian, whoſe ſituation was very embarraſſing to us, and at length they contrived to eſcape. I very much wiſhed for theſe men to have accompanied us to the village, in order to do away any ill impreſſions which might have ariſen from the

young

young chief's report to his father, which we were naturally led to expect would not be in our favour. 1793. July.

This road conducted us through the fineſt wood of cedar trees that I had ever ſeen. I meaſured ſeveral of them that were twenty-four feet in the girth, and of a proportionate height. The alder trees are alſo of an uncommon ſize; ſeveral of them were ſeven feet and an half in circumference, and roſe to forty feet without a branch; but my men declared that they had, in their progreſs, ſeen much larger of both kinds. The other wood was hemlock, white birch, two ſpecies of ſpruce-firs, willows, &c. Many of the large cedars appeared to have been examined, as I ſuppoſe by the natives, for the purpoſe of making canoes, but finding them hollow at heart, they were ſuffered to ſtand. There was but little underwood, and the ſoil was a black rich mould, which would well reward the trouble of cultivation. From the remains of bones on certain ſpots, it is probable that the natives may have occaſionally burned their dead in this wood.

As it was uncertain what our reception might be at the village, I examined every man's arms and ammunition, and gave Mr. Mackay, who had unfortunately loſt his gun, one of my piſtols. Our late conductors had informed us that the man whom we left in a dying ſtate, and to whom I had adminiſtered ſome Turlington's balſam, was dead; and it was by no means improbable that I might be ſuſpected of haſtening his end.

At one in the afternoon we came to the bank of the river, which was

1793. July. oppoſite to the village, which appeared to be in a ſtate of perfect tranquillity. Several of the natives were fiſhing above and below the weir, and they very readily took us over in their canoes. The people now hurried down to the water ſide, but I perceived none of the chief's family among them. They made ſigns to me to go to his houſe; I ſignified to them not to crowd about us, and indeed drew a line, beyond which I made them underſtand they muſt not paſs. I now directed Mr. Mackay, and the men to remain there, with their arms in readineſs, and to keep the natives at a diſtance, as I was determined to go alone to the chief's houſe; and if they ſhould hear the report of my piſtols, they were ordered to make the beſt of their way from theſe people, as it would then be equally fruitleſs and dangerous to attempt the giving me any aſſiſtance, as it would be only in the laſt extremity, and when I was certain of their intention to deſtroy me, that I ſhould diſcharge my piſtols. My gun I gave to Mr. Mackay, when, with my loaded piſtols in my belt, and a poniard in my hand, I proceeded to the abode of the chief. I had a wood to paſs in my way thither, which was interſected by various paths, and I took one that led to the back inſtead of the front of the houſe; and as the whole had been very much altered ſince I was here before, I concluded that I had loſt my way. But I continued to proceed, and ſoon met with the chief's wife, who informed me, that he was at the next houſe. On my going round it, I perceived that they had thrown open the gable ends, and added two wings, nearly as long as the body, both of which were hung round with ſalmon as cloſe as they could be placed. As I could diſcover none of the men, I ſat down upon a large ſtone near ſome women who were ſupping on ſalmon roes and berries. They invited me to partake of their fare, and I was about to accept their invitation,

when

when Mr. Mackay joined me, as both himſelf and all my party were alarmed at my being alone. Nor was his alarm leſſened by an old man whom he met in the wood, and who made uſe of ſigns to perſuade him to return. As he came without his gun, I gave him one of my piſtols. When I ſaw the women continue their employment without paying the leaſt attention to us, I could not imagine that any hoſtile deſign was preparing againſt us. Though the non-appearance of the men awakened ſome degree of ſuſpicion that I ſhould not be received with the ſame welcome as on my former viſit. At length the chief appeared, and his ſon, who had been our guide, following him: diſpleaſure was painted in the old man's countenance, and he held in his hand a bead tobacco pouch which belonged to Mr. Mackay, and the young chief had purloined from him. When he had approached within three or four yards of me, he threw it at me with great indignation, and walked away. I followed him, however, until he had paſſed his ſon, whom I took by the hand, but he did not make any very cordial return to my ſalutation; at the ſame time he made ſigns for me to diſcharge my piſtol, and give him my hanger which Mr. Mackay had brought me, but I did not pay the leaſt attention to either of his demands. 1793. July.

We now joined the chief, who explained to me that he was in a ſtate of deep diſtreſs for the loſs of his ſon, and made me underſtand that he had cut off his hair and blackened his face on the melancholy occaſion. He alſo repreſented the alarm which he had ſuffered reſpecting his ſon who had accompanied us; as he apprehended we had killed him, or had all of us periſhed together. When he had finiſhed his narrative, I took him and his ſon by their hands, and requeſted them to come with me to the

1793. July. the place where I had left my people, who were rejoiced to ſee us return, having been in a ſtate of great anxiety from our long abſence. I immediately remunerated the young chief for his company and aſſiſtance in our voyage to the ſea, as well as his father, for his former attentions. I gave them cloth and knives, and, indeed, a portion of every thing which now remained to us. The preſents had the deſired effect of reſtoring us to their favour; but theſe people are of ſo changeable a nature, that there is no ſecurity with them. I procured three robes and two otter-ſkins, and if I could have given ſuch articles in exchange as they preferred, I ſhould probably have obtained more. I now repreſented the length of the way which I had to go, and requeſted ſome fiſh to ſupport us on our journey, when he deſired us to follow him to the houſe, where mats were immediately arranged and a fiſh placed before each of us.

We were now informed, that our dog, whom we had loſt, had been howling about the village ever ſince we left it, and that they had reaſon to believe he left the woods at night to eat the fiſh he could find about the houſes. I immediately diſpatched Mr. Mackay, and a man, in ſearch of the animal, but they returned without him.

When I manifeſted my intention to proceed on my journey, the chief voluntarily ſent for ten roaſted ſalmon, and having attended us with his ſon, and a great number of his people, to the laſt houſe in the village, we took our leave. It was then half paſt three in the afternoon.

I directed Mr. Mackay to take the lead, and the others to follow him

in

in Indian files, at a long and ſteady pace, as I determined to bring up the rear. I adopted this meaſure from a confuſſon that was obſervable among the natives which I did not comprehend. I was not without my ſuſpicions that ſome miſchief was in agitation, and they were increaſed from the confuſed noiſe we heard in the village. At the ſame time a conſiderable number came running after us; ſome of them making ſigns for us to ſtop, and others ruſhing by me. I perceived alſo, that thoſe who followed us were the ſtrangers who live among theſe people, and are kept by them in a ſtate of awe and ſubjection; and one of them made ſigns to me that we were taking a wrong road. I immediately called out to Mr. Mackay to ſtop. This was naturally enough taken for an alarm, and threw my people into great diſorder. When, however, I was underſtood, and we had muſtered again, our Indian informed us, that the noiſe we heard was occaſioned by a debate among the natives, whether they ſhould ſtop us or not. When, therefore, we had got into the right road, I made ſuch arrangements as might be neceſſary for our defence, if we ſhould have an experimental proof that our late and fickle friends were converted into enemies. 1793. July.

Our way was through a foreſt of ſtately cedars, beneath a range of lofty hills, covered with rocks, and without any view of the river. The path was well beaten, but rendered incommodious by the large ſtones which lay along it.

As we were continuing our route, we all felt the ſenſation of having found a loſt friend at the ſight of our dog; but he appeared, in a great degree, to have loſt his former ſagacity. He ran in a wild way backwards and forwards; and though he kept our road, I could not induce him

1793. July. him to acknowledge his maſter. Sometimes he ſeemed diſpoſed to approach as if he knew us; and then, on a ſudden, he would turn away, as if alarmed at our appearance. The poor animal was reduced almoſt to a ſkeleton, and we occaſionally dropped ſomething to ſupport him, and by degrees he recovered his former ſagacity.

When the night came on we ſtopped at a ſmall diſtance from the river, but did not venture to make a fire. Every man took his tree, and laid down in his clothes, and with his arms, beneath the ſhade of its branches. We had removed to a ſhort diſtance from the path; no centinel was now appointed, and every one was left to watch for his own ſafety.

Friday 26. After a very reſtleſs, though undiſturbed night, we ſet forward as ſoon as day appeared, and walked on with all poſſible expedition, till we got to the upper, which we now called Friendly Village, and was the firſt we viſited on our outward journey.

It was eight in the morning of a very fine day when we arrived, and found a very material alteration in the place ſince we left it. Five additional houſes had been erected and were filled with ſalmon: the increaſe of inhabitants was in the ſame proportion. We were received with great kindneſs, and a meſſenger was diſpatched to inform the chief, whoſe name was Soocomlick, and who was then at his fiſhing-weir, of our arrival. He immediately returned to the village to confirm the cordial reception of his people; and having conducted us to his houſe, entertained us with the moſt reſpectful hoſpitality. In ſhort, he behaved to us with ſo much attention and kindneſs, that I did not withhold any thing in my power

power to give, which might afford him ſatisfaction. I preſented him with two yards of blue cloth, an axe, knives, and various other articles. He gave me in return a large ſhell which reſembled the under ſhell of a Guernſey oyſter, but ſomewhat larger. Where they procure them I could not diſcover, but they cut and poliſh them for bracelets, ear-rings, and other perſonal ornaments. He regretted that he had no ſea-otter ſkins to give me, but engaged to provide abundance of them whenever either my friends or myſelf ſhould return by ſea; an expectation which I thought it right to encourage among theſe people. He alſo earneſtly requeſted me to bring him a gun and ammunition. I might have procured many curious articles at this place, but was prevented by the conſideration that we muſt have carried them on our backs upwards of three hundred miles through a mountainous country. The young chief, to his other acts of kindneſs, added as large a ſupply of fiſh as we choſe to take. 1793. July.

Our viſit did not occaſion any particular interruption of the ordinary occupation of the people; eſpecially of the women, who were employed in boiling ſorrel, and different kinds of berries, with ſalmon-roes, in large ſquare kettles of cedar wood. This pottage, when it attained a certain conſiſtency, they took out with ladles, and poured it into frames of about twelve inches ſquare and one deep, the bottom being covered with a large leaf, which were then expoſed to the ſun till their contents became ſo many dried cakes. The roes that are mixed up with the bitter berries, are prepared in the ſame way. From the quantity of this kind of proviſion, it muſt be a principal article of food, and probably of traffic. Theſe people have alſo portable cheſts of cedar, in which they pack them, as

1793. July. well as their ſalmon, both dried and roaſted. It appeared to me, that they eat no fleſh, except ſuch as the ſea may afford them, as that of the ſea-otter and the ſeal. The only inſtance we obſerved to the contrary, was in the young Indian who accompanied us among the iſlands, and has been already mentioned as feaſting on the fleſh of a porcupine: whether this be their cuſtom throughout the year, or only during the ſeaſon of the ſalmon fiſhery; or, whether there were any caſts of them, as in India, I cannot pretend to determine. It is certain, however, that they are not hunters, and I have already mentioned the abhorrence they expreſſed at ſome veniſon which we brought to their village. During our former viſit to theſe people, they requeſted us not to diſcharge our fire-arms, leſt the report ſhould frighten away the ſalmon, but now they expreſſed a wiſh that I ſhould explain the uſe and management of them. Though their demeanour to us was of the moſt friendly nature, and they appeared without any arms, except a few who accidentally had their daggers, I did not think it altogether prudent to diſcharge our pieces; I therefore fired one of my piſtols at a tree marked for the purpoſe, when I put four out of five buck-ſhot, with which it was loaded, into the circle, to their extreme aſtoniſhment and admiration.

Theſe people were in general of the middle ſtature, well-ſet, and better clothed with fleſh than any of the natives of the interior country. Their faces are round, with high cheek bones, and their complexion between the olive and the copper. They have ſmall grey eyes with a tinge of red; they have wedge-heads, and their hair is of a dark brown colour, inclining to black. Some wear it long, keep it well combed, and let it hang looſe over their ſhoulders, while they divide and tie it in knots over the

the temples. Others arrange its plaits, and bedawb it with brown earth, ſo as to render it impervious to the comb; they, therefore, carry a bodkin about them to eaſe the frequent irritation, which may be ſuppoſed to proceed from ſuch a ſtate of the head. The women are inclined to be fat, wear their hair ſhort, and appear to be very ſubject to ſwelled legs, a malady that, probably, proceeds from the poſture in which they are always ſitting: as they are chiefly employed in the domeſtic engagements of ſpinning, weaving, preparing the fiſh, and nurſing their children, which did not appear to be numerous. Their cradle differed from any that I had ſeen; it conſiſted of a frame fixed round a board of ſufficient length, in which the child, after it has been ſwathed, is placed on a bed of moſs, and a conductor contrived to carry off the urinary diſcharge. They are ſlung over one ſhoulder by means of a cord faſtened under the other, ſo that the infant is always in a poſition to be readily applied to the breaſt, when it requires nouriſhment I ſaw ſeveral whoſe heads were incloſed in boards covered with leather, till they attain the form of a wedge. The women wear no clothing but the robe, either looſe or tied round the middle with a girdle, as the occaſion may require, with the addition of a fringed apron, already mentioned, and a cape, in the form of an inverted bowl or diſh. To the robe and cap, the men add, when it rains, a circular mat with an opening in the middle ſufficient to admit the head, which extending over the ſhoulders, throws off the wet. They alſo occaſionally wear ſhoes of dreſſed mooſe-ſkin, for which they are indebted to their neighbours. Thoſe parts, which among all civilized nations are covered from familiar view, are here openly expoſed. 1793. July.

1793. July. They are altogether dependent on the ſea and rivers for their ſuſtenance, ſo that they may be conſidered as a ſtationary people; hence it is that the men engage in thoſe toilſome employments, which the tribes who ſupport themſelves by the chaſe, leave entirely to the women. Polygamy is permitted among them, though, according to my obſervation, moſt of the men were ſatisfied with one wife, with whom, however, chaſtity is not conſidered as a neceſſary virtue. I ſaw but one woman whoſe under lip was ſplit and disfigured with an appendant ornament. The men frequently bathe, and the boys are continually in the water. They have nets and lines of various kinds and ſizes, which are made of cedar bark, and would not be known from thoſe made of hemp. Their hooks conſiſt of two pieces of wood or bone, forming when fixed together, an obtuſe angle.

Their ſpears or darts are from four to ſixteen feet in length; the barb or point being fixed in a ſocket, which, when the animal is ſtruck, ſlips from it: thus the barb being faſtened by a ſtring to the handle, remains as a buoy; or enables the aquatic hunter to tire and take his prey. They are employed againſt ſea-otters, ſeals, and large fiſh.

Their hatchets are made principally of about fourteen inches of bar-iron, fixed into a wooden handle, as I have already deſcribed them; though they have ſome of bone or horn: with theſe, a mallet and wooden wedge, they hew their timbers and form their planks. They muſt alſo have other tools with which they complete and poliſh their work, but my ſtay was ſo ſhort, my anxiety ſo great, and my ſituation ſo critical, that many circumſtances may be ſuppoſed to have eſcaped me.

Their

Their canoes are made out of the cedar tree, and will carry from eight to fifty perſons. 1793. July.

Their warlike weapons, which, as far as I could judge, they very ſeldom have occaſion to employ, are bows and arrows, ſpears, and daggers. The arrows are ſuch as have been already deſcribed, but rather of a ſlighter make. The bows are not more than two feet and an half in length; they are formed of a ſlip of red cedar; the grain being on one ſide untouched with any tool, while the other is ſecured with ſinews attached to it by a kind of glue. Though this weapon has a very ſlender appearance, it throws an arrow with great force, and to a conſiderable diſtance. Their ſpears are about ten feet long, and pointed with iron. Their daggers are of various kinds, being of Britiſh, Spaniſh, and American manufacture.

Their houſehold furniture conſiſts of boxes, troughs, and diſhes formed of wood, with different veſſels made of watape. Theſe are employed, according to their ſeveral applications, to contain their valuables and proviſions, as well as for culinary purpoſes, and to carry water. The women make uſe of muſcle-ſhells to ſplit and clean their fiſh, and which are very well adapted to that purpoſe.

Their ornaments are necklaces, collars, bracelets for the arms, wriſts, and legs, with ear-rings, &c.

They burn their dead, and diſplay their mourning, by cutting their hair ſhort, and blackening their faces. Though I ſaw ſeveral places where bodies

1805. July. bodies had been burned, I was ſurpriſed at not ſeeing any tomb or memorial of the dead, particularly when their neighbours are ſo ſuperſtitiouſly attentive to the erection and preſervation of them.

From the number of their canoes, as well as the quantity of their cheſts and boxes, to contain their moveables, as well as the inſufficiency of their houſes, to guard againſt the rigours of a ſevere winter, and the appearance of the ground around their habitations, it is evident that theſe people reſide here only during the ſummer or ſalmon ſeaſon, which does not probably laſt more than three months. It may be reaſonably inferred, therefore, that they have villages on the ſea-coaſt, which they inhabit during the reſt of the year. There it may be ſuppoſed they leave the ſick, the infirm, and the aged; and thither they may bear the aſhes of thoſe who die at the place of their ſummer reſidence.

Of their religion I can ſay but little, as my means of obſervation were very contracted. I could diſcover, however, that they believed in a good and an evil ſpirit: and that they have ſome forms of worſhip to conciliate the protection of one, and perhaps to avert the enmity of the other, is apparent from the temples which I have deſcribed; and where, at ſtated periods, it may be preſumed they hold the feaſts, and perform the ſacrifices, which their religion, whatever it may be, has inſtituted as the ceremonials of their public worſhip.

From the very little I could diſcover of their government, it is altogether different from any political regulation which had been remarked by

by me among the ſavage tribes. It is on this river alone that one man appears to have an excluſive and hereditary right to what was neceſſary to the exiſtence of thoſe who are aſſociated with him. I allude to the ſalmon weir, or fiſhing place, the ſole right to which confers on the chief an arbitrary power. Thoſe embankments could not have been formed without a very great and aſſociated labour; and, as might be ſuppoſed, on the condition that thoſe who aſſiſted in conſtructing it ſhould enjoy a participating right in the advantages to be derived from it. Nevertheleſs, it evidently appeared to me, that the chief's power over it, and the people, was unlimited, and without control. No one could fiſh without his permiſſion, or carry home a larger portion of what he had caught, than was ſet apart for him. No one could build an houſe without his conſent; and all his commands appeared to be followed with implicit obedience. The people at large ſeemed to be on a perfect equality, while the ſtrangers among them were obliged to obey the commands of the natives in general, or quit the village. They appear to be of a friendly diſpoſition, but they are ſubject to ſudden guſts of paſſion, which are as quickly compoſed; and the tranſition is inſtantaneous, from violent irritation to the moſt tranquil demeanor. Of the many tribes of ſavage people whom I have ſeen, theſe appear to be the moſt ſuſceptible of civilization. They might ſoon be brought to cultivate the little ground about them which is capable of it. There is a narrow border of a rich black ſoil, on either ſide of the river, over a bed of gravel, which would yield any grain or fruit, that are common to ſimilar latitudes in Europe.

1793. July.

The

1793. July. The very few words which I collected of their language, are as follow:—

Zimilk,	Salmon.
Dilly,	A fiſh of the ſize of a ſalmon, with canine teeth.
Sepnas,	Hair of the head.
Kietis,	An axe.
Clougus,	Eyes.
Itzas,	Teeth.
Ma-acza,	Noſe.
Ich-yeh,	Leg.
Shous-ſhey,	Hand.
Watts,	Dog.
Zla-achle,	Houſe.
Zimnez,	Bark mat robe.
Couloun,	Beaver or otter ditto.
Dichts,	Stone.
Neach,	Fire
Ulkan,	Water.
Gits com,	A mat.
Shiggimia,	Thread.
Till-kewan,	Cheſt or box.
Thlogatt,	Cedar bark.
Achimoul,	Beads got upon their coaſt.
Il-caiette,	A bonnet.
Couny,	A clam ſhell.
Nochaſky,	A diſh compoſed of berries and ſalmon roes.
Caiffre,	What?

CHAP.

CHAPTER XIII.

Leave the Friendly Village. Attentions of the natives at our departure. Stop to divide our proviſions. Begin to aſcend the mountains. Circumcumſtances of the aſcent. Journey continued. Arrive at the place from whence we ſet out by land. Meet with Indians there. Find the canoe, and all the other articles in a ſtate of perfect ſecurity and preſervation. Means employed to compel the reſtoration of articles which were afterwards ſtolen. Proceed on our homeward-bound voyage. Some account of the natives on the river. The canoe is run on a rock, &c. Circumſtances of the voyage. Enter the Peace River. Statement of courſes. Continue our route. Circumſtances of it. Proceed onwards in a ſmall canoe, with an Indian, to the lower fort, leaving the reſt of the people to follow me. Arrive at Fort Chepewyan. The voyage concluded.

AT eleven in the morning we left this place, which I called Friendly Village, accompanied by every man belonging to it, who attended us about a mile, when we took a cordial leave of them; and if we might judge from appearances, they parted from us with regret. 1793. July.

In a ſhort time we halted, to make a diviſion of our fiſh, and each man had about twenty pounds weight of it, except Mr. Mackay and myſelf, who were content with ſhorter allowance, that we might have leſs weight

1793. July. to carry. We had alſo a little flour, and ſome pemmican. Having completed this arrangement with all poſſible expedition, we proceeded onwards, the ground riſing gradually, as we continued our route. When we were clear of the wood, we ſaw the mountain towering above, and apparently of impracticable aſcent. We ſoon came to the fork of the river, which was at the foot of the precipice, where the ford was three feet deep, and very rapid. Our young Indian, though much recovered, was ſtill too weak to croſs the water, and with ſome difficulty I carried him over on my back.

It was now one in the afternoon, and we had to aſcend the ſummit of the firſt mountain before night came on, in order to look for water. I left the ſick Indian, with his companion and one of my men, to follow us, as his ſtrength would permit him. The fatigue of aſcending theſe precipices I ſhall not attempt to deſcribe, and it was paſt five when we arrived at a ſpot where we could get water, and in ſuch an extremity of wearineſs, that it was with great pain any of us could crawl about to gather wood for the neceſſary purpoſe of making a fire. To relieve our anxiety, which began to increaſe every moment for the ſituation of the Indian, about ſeven he and his companions arrived; when we conſoled ourſelves by ſitting round a blazing fire, talking of paſt dangers, and indulging the delightful reflection that we were thus far advanced on our homeward journey. Nor was it poſſible to be in this ſituation without contemplating the wonders of it. Such was the depth of the precipices below, and the height of the mountains above, with the rude and wild magnificence of the ſcenery around, that I ſhall not attempt to deſcribe ſuch an aſtoniſhing and awful combination of objects; of which, indeed, no deſcription can convey an adequate idea.

Even

Even at this place, which is only, as it were, the firſt ſtep towards gaining the ſummit of the mountains, the climate was very ſenſibly changed. The air that fanned the village which we left at noon, was mild and cheering; the graſs was verdant, and the wild fruits ripe around it. But here the ſnow was not yet diſſolved, the ground was ſtill bound by the froſt, the herbage had ſcarce begun to ſpring, and the crowberry buſhes were juſt beginning to bloſſom. 1793. July.

So great was our fatigue of yeſterday, that it was late before we proceeded to return over the mountains, by the ſame route which we had followed in our outward journey. There was little or no change in the appearance of the mountains ſince we paſſed them, though the weather was very fine. Saturday 27.

At nine this morning we arrived at the ſpot, where we ſlept with the natives on the 16th inſtant, and found our pemmican in good condition where we had buried it. Sunday 28.

The latitude of this place, by obſervation, when I paſſed, I found to be 52. 46. 32. I now took time, and the diſtance between ſun and moon. I had alſo an azimuth, to aſcertain the variation.

We continued our route with fine weather, and without meeting a ſingle perſon on our way, the natives being all gone, as we ſuppoſed, to the Great River. We recovered all our hidden ſtores of proviſions, and arrived about two in the afternoon of Sunday, Auguſt the 4th, at the place which we had left a month before.

A conſiderable number of Indians were encamped on the oppoſite ſide

1793. August. of the ſmall river, and in conſequence of the weather, confined to their lodges: as they muſt have heard of, if not ſeen, us, and our arms being out of order from the rain, I was not ſatisfied with our ſituation; but did not wiſh to create an alarm. We, therefore, kept in the edge of the wood, and called to them, when they turned out like ſo many furies, with their arms in their hands, and threatening deſtruction if we dared to approach their habitations. We remained in our ſtation till their paſſion and apprehenſions had ſubſided, when our interpreter gave them the neceſſary information reſpecting us. They proved to be ſtrangers to us, but were the relations of thoſe whom we had already ſeen here, and who, as they told us, were upon an iſland at ſome diſtance up the river. A meſſenger was accordingly ſent to inform them of our arrival.

On examining the canoe, and our property, which we had left behind, we found it in perfect ſafety; nor was there the print of a foot near the ſpot. We now pitched our tent, and made a blazing fire, and I treated
Monday 5. myſelf, as well as the people, with a dram; but we had been ſo long without taſting any ſpirituous liquor, that we had loſt all reliſh for it. The Indians now arrived from above, and were rewarded for the care they had taken of our property with ſuch articles as were acceptable to them.

At nine this morning I ſent five men in the canoe, for the various articles we had left below, and they ſoon returned with them, and except ſome bale goods, which had got wet, they were in good order, particularly the proviſions, of which we were now in great need.

Many of the natives arrived both from the upper and lower parts of the

the river, each of whom was dreſſed in a beaver robe. I purchaſed fifteen of them; and they preferred large knives in exchange. It is an extraordinary circumſtance, that theſe people, who might have taken all the property we left behind us, without the leaſt fear of detection, ſhould leave that untouched, and purloin any of our utenſils, which our confidence in their honeſty gave them a ready opportunity of taking. In fact, ſeveral articles were miſſing, and as I was very anxious to avoid a quarrel with the natives, in this ſtage of our journey, I told thoſe who remained near us, without any appearance of anger, that their relations who were gone, had no idea of the miſchief that would reſult to them from taking our property. I gravely added, that the ſalmon, which was not only their favourite food, but abſolutely neceſſary to their exiſtence, came from the ſea which belonged to us white men; and that as, at the entrance of the river, we could prevent thoſe fiſh from coming up it, we poſſeſſed the power to ſtarve them and their children. To avert our anger, therefore, they muſt return all the articles that had been ſtolen from us. This fineſſe ſucceeded. Meſſengers were diſpatched to order the reſtoration of every thing that had been taken. We purchaſed ſeveral large ſalmon of them and enjoyed the delicious meal which they afforded. 1793. Auguſt.

At noon this day, which I allotted for repoſe, I got a meridian altitude, o. 1. 11. which gave 53. 24. 10. I alſo took time. The weather had been cloudy at intervals.

Every neceſſary preparation had been made yeſterday for us to continue our route to day; but before our departure, ſome of the natives arrived Tueſday 6.

1798. August. arrived with part of the ſtolen articles; the reſt, they ſaid, had been taken by people down the river, who would be here in the courſe of the morning, and recommended their children to our commiſeration, and themſelves to our forgiveneſs.

The morning was cloudy, with ſmall rain, nevertheleſs I ordered the men to load the canoe, and we proceeded in high ſpirits on finding ourſelves once more ſo comfortably together in it. We landed at an houſe on the firſt iſland, where we procured a few ſalmon, and four fine beaver ſkins. There had been much more rain in theſe parts than in the country above, as the water was pouring down the hills in torrents. The river conſequently roſe with great rapidity, and very much impeded our progreſs.

The people on this river are generally of the middle ſize, though I ſaw many tall men among them. In the cleanlineſs of their perſons they reſemble rather the Beaver Indians than the Chepewyans. They are ignorant of the uſe of fire arms, and their only weapons are bows and arrows, and ſpears. They catch the larger animals in ſnares, but though their country abounds in them, and the rivers and lakes produce plenty of fiſh, they find a difficulty in ſupporting themſelves, and are never to be ſeen but in ſmall bands of two or three families. There is no regular government among them; nor do they appear to have a ſufficient communication or underſtanding with each other, to defend themſelves againſt an invading enemy, to whom they fall an eaſy prey. They have all the animals common on the weſt ſide of the mountains, except the buffalo and the wolf; at leaſt we ſaw none of the latter, and there being

none

none of the former, it is evident that their progreſs is from the South-East. The ſame language is ſpoken, with very little exception from the extent of my travels down this river, and in a direct line from the North-Eaſt head of it in the latitude 53° or 54° to Hudſon's Bay; ſo that a Chepewyan, from which tribe they have all ſprung, might leave Churchill River, and proceeding in every direction to the North-Weſt of this line without knowing any language except his own, would underſtand them all: I except the natives of the ſea coaſt, who are altogether a different people. As to the people to the Eaſtward of this river, I am not qualified to ſpeak of them. 1793. Auguſt.

At twelve we ran our canoe upon a rock, ſo that we were obliged to land in order to repair the injury ſhe had received; and as the rain came on with great violence, we remained here for the night. The ſalmon were now driving up the current in ſuch large ſhoals, that the water ſeemed, as it were, to be covered with the fins of them.

About nine this morning the weather cleared, and we embarked. The ſhoals of ſalmon continued as yeſterday. There were frequent ſhowers throughout the day, and every brook was deluged into a river. The water had riſen at leaſt one foot and an half perpendicular in the laſt twenty-four hours. In the duſk of the evening we landed for the night. Wedneſ. 7.

The water continued riſing during the night; ſo that we were diſturbed twice in the courſe of it, to remove our baggage. At ſix in the morning we were on our way, and proceeded with continual and laborious Thurſday 8.

1793, Auguſt. rious exertion, from the increaſed rapidity of the current. After having paſſed the two carrying places of Rocky Point, and the Long Portage, we encamped for the night.

Friday 9. We ſet off at five, after a rainy night, and in a foggy morning. The water ſtill retained its height. The ſun, however, ſoon beamed upon us; and our clothes and baggage were in ſuch a ſtate that we landed to dry them. After ſome time we re-embarked, and arrived at our firſt encampment on this river about ſeven in the evening. The water fell conſiderably in the courſe of the day.

Saturday 10. The weather was cloudy with ſlight ſhowers, and at five this morning we embarked, the water falling as faſt as it had riſen. This circumſtance ariſes from the mountainous ſtate of the country on either ſide of the river, from whence the water ruſhes down almoſt as faſt as it falls from the heavens, with the addition of the ſnow it melts in its way. At eight in the evening we ſtopped for the night.

Sunday 11. At five this morning we proceeded with clear weather. At ten we came to the foot of the long rapid, which we aſcended with poles much eaſier than we expected. The rapids that were ſo ſtrong, and violent in our paſſage downwards, were now ſo reduced, that we could hardly believe them to be the ſame. At ſun-ſet we landed and encamped.

Monday 12. The weather was the ſame as yeſterday, and we were on the water at a very early hour. At nine we came to a part of the river where there was little or no current. At noon we landed to gum the canoe, when I took

took a meridian altitude, which gave 54. 11. 36. North latitude. We continued our route nearly Eaſt, and at three in the afternoon approached the fork, when I took time, and the diſtance between the ſun and moon. At four in the afternoon we left the main branch. The current was quite ſlack, as the water had fallen ſix feet, which muſt have been in the courſe of three days. At ſun-ſet we landed and took our ſtation for the night. 1793. Auguſt.

There was a very heavy rain in the night, and the morning was cloudy; we renewed our voyage, however, at a very early hour, and came to the narrow gut between the mountains of rock, which was a paſſage of ſome riſk; but fortunately the ſtate of the water was ſuch, that we got up without any difficulty, and had more time to examine theſe extraordinary rocks than in our outward paſſage. They are as perpendicular as a wall, and give the idea of a ſucceſſion of enormous Gothic churches. We were now cloſely hemmed in by the mountains, which have loſt much of their ſnow ſince our former paſſage by them. We encamped at a late hour, cold, wet, and hungry: for ſuch was the ſtate of our proviſions, that our neceſſary allowance did not anſwer to the active cravings of our appetites. Tueſday 13.

The weather was cold and raw, with ſmall rain, but our neceſſities would not ſuffer us to wait for a favourable change of it, and at half paſt five we arrived at the ſwampy carrying-place, between this branch and the ſmall river. At three in the afternoon the cold was extreme, and the men could not keep themſelves warm even by their violent exertions which our ſituation required; and I now gave them the remainder Wedneſ. 14.

1793. August. of our rum to fortify and ſupport them. The canoe was ſo heavy that the lives of two of them were endangered in this horrible carrying place. At the ſame time it muſt be obſerved, that from the fatiguing circumſtances of our journey, and the inadequate ſtate of our proviſions, the natural ſtrength of the men had been greatly diminiſhed. We encamped on the banks of the bad river.

Thurſday 15. The weather was now clear, and the ſun ſhone upon us. The water was much lower than in the downward paſſage, but as cold as ice, and, unfortunately, the men were obliged to be continually in it to drag on the canoe. There were many embarras, through which a paſſage might have been made, but we were under the neceſſity of carrying both the canoe and baggage.

About ſun-ſet we arrived at our encampment of the 13th of June, where ſome of us had nearly taken our eternal voyage. The legs and feet of the men were ſo benumbed, that I was very apprehenſive of the conſequences. The water being low, we made a ſearch for our bag of ball, but without ſucceſs. The river was full of ſalmon, and another fiſh like the black baſs.

Friday 16. The weather continued to be the ſame as yeſterday, and at two in the afternoon we came to the carrying-place which leads to the firſt ſmall lake; but it was ſo filled with drift wood, that a conſiderable portion of time was employed in making our way through it. We now reached the high land which ſeparates the ſource of the Tacoutche Teſſe, or Columbia River, and Unjigah, or Peace River: the latter of which, after receiving many

many tributary ſtreams, paſſes through the great Slave Lake, and diſ- 1793. Auguſt.
embogues itſelf in the Frozen Ocean, in latitude 69½ North, longitude 135. Weſt from Greenwich; while the former, confined by the immenſe mountains that run nearly parallel with the Pacific Ocean, and keep it in a Southern courſe, empties itſelf in 46. 20. North latitude and longitude 124. Weſt from Greenwich.

If I could have ſpared the time, and had been able to exert myſelf, for I was now afflicted with a ſwelling in my ancles, ſo that I could not even walk, but with great pain and difficulty, it was my intention to have taken ſome ſalmon alive, and coloniſed them in the Peace River, though it is very doubtful whether that fiſh would live in waters that have not a communication with the ſea.

Some of the inhabitants had been here ſince we paſſed; and I apprehend, that on ſeeing our road through their country, they miſtook us for enemies, and had therefore deſerted the place, which is a moſt convenient ſtation; as on one ſide, there is great plenty of white fiſh, and trout, jub, carp, &c. and on the other, abundance of ſalmon, and probably other fiſh. Several things that I had left here in exchange for articles of which I had poſſeſſed myſelf, as objects of curioſity, were taken away. The whirtle berries were now ripe, and very fine of their kind.

The morning was cloudy, and at five we renewed our progreſs. We Saturday 17.
were compelled to carry from the lake to the Peace River, the paſſage,

1793. Auguſt. from the falling of the water, being wholly obſtructed by drift-wood. The meadow through which we paſſed was entirely inundated; and from the ſtate of my foot and ancle, I was obliged, though with great reluctance, to ſubmit to be carried over it.

At half paſt ſeven we began to glide along with the current of the Peace River; and almoſt at every canoe's length we perceived Beaver roads to and from the river. At two in the afternoon, an object attracted our notice at the entrance of a ſmall river, which proved to be the four beaver ſkins, already mentioned to have been preſented to me by a native, and left in his poſſeſſion to receive them on my return. I imagine, therefore, that being under the neceſſity of leaving the river, or, perhaps, fearing to meet us again, he had taken this method to reſtore them to me; and to reward his honeſty, I left three times the value of the ſkins in their place. The ſnow appeared in patches on the mountains. At four in the afternoon we paſſed the place where we found the firſt natives, and landed for the night at a late hour. In the courſe of the day we caught nine outards, or Canddo geeſe, but they were as yet without their feathers.

Sunday 18. As ſoon as it was light we proceeded on our voyage, and drove on before the current, which was very much diminiſhed in its ſtrength, ſince we came up it. The water indeed was ſo low, that in many parts it expoſed a gravelly beach. At eleven we landed at our encampment of the ſeventh of June, to gum the canoe and dry our clothes: we then re-embarked, and at half paſt five arrived at the place, where I loſt my book

book of memorandums, on the fourth of June, in which were certain courſes and diſtances between that day and the twenty ſixth of May, which I had now an opportunity to ſupply. They were as follow: 1793. Auguſt.

North-North-Weſt half a mile, Eaſt by North half a mile, North by Eaſt a quarter of a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt a quarter of a mile, Weſt-South-Weſt half a mile, North-Weſt a mile and a quarter, North-North Weſt three quarters of a mile, North by Eaſt half a mile, North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt half a mile, North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile and a quarter, North three quarters of a mile, Weſt by North one quarter of a mile, North-Weſt one mile and an half, Weſt-North-Weſt half a mile, North-North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt one quarter of a mile, North-North-Eaſt half a mile, North-North-Weſt two miles, and North-Weſt four miles.

We were ſeven days in going up that part of the river which we came down to-day; and it now ſwarmed, as it were, with beavers and wild fowl. There was rain in the afternoon, and about ſun-ſet we took our ſtation for the night.

We had ſome ſmall rain throughout the night. Our courſe to-day was South-South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt half a mile, North half a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, North by Weſt half a mile; a ſmall river to the left, South-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt a mile and an half, North-Weſt by North four miles, a rivulet on the right, Weſt-North-Weſt three quarters of a mile; a conſiderable river from the left, North-North-Weſt Monday 29.

two

1793. Auguſt. two miles, North half a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile and an half; a rivulet on the right, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a quarter, Weſt-North-Weſt one mile, Weſt-South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, North-North-Weſt half a mile, North-Weſt half a mile, Weſt-South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt three miles, Weſt-South-Weſt three quarters of a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile; a ſmall river on the right, South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt, iſlands, four miles and an half, a river on the left, North half a mile, Weſt a quarter of a mile, North a quarter of a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt three quarters of a mile, North-North-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, North-Weſt by North half a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt a mile and an half, and North-Weſt by North half a mile. The mountains were covered with freſh ſnow, whoſe ſhowers had diſſolved in rain before they reached us. North-Weſt three quarters of a mile, South-Weſt a quarter of a mile, North a mile and three quarters, Weſt-North-Weſt a mile and a quarter, North-Weſt a mile and an half, North-North-Weſt half a mile, Weſt-North-Weſt a quarter of a mile, North half a mile; here the current was ſlack: North-Weſt by North half a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt a quarter of a mile, North-North-Weſt a quarter of a mile, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a quarter, North half a mile, North-Eaſt by North one mile and three quarters, South-Weſt one mile and a quarter, with an iſland, North by Eaſt one mile, North-Weſt. Here the other branch opened to us, at the diſtance of three quarters of a mile.

I expected from the ſlackneſs of the current in this branch, that the Weſtern one would be high, but I found it equally low. I had every reaſon to believe that from the upper part of this branch, the diſtance could

could not be great to the country through which I paſſed when I left the Great River; but it has ſince been determined otherwiſe by Mr. J. Finlay, who was ſent to explore it, and found its navigation ſoon terminated by falls and rapids. 1793. Aug. 1.

The branches are about two hundred yards in breadth, and the water was ſix feet lower than on our upward paſſage. Our courſe, after the junction, was North-North-Weſt one mile, the rapid North-Eaſt down it three quarters of a mile, North by Weſt one mile and a quarter, North by Eaſt one mile and an half, Eaſt by South one mile, North-Eaſt two miles and an half, Eaſt-North-Eaſt a quarter of a mile; a rivulet; Eaſt by South one mile and an half, North-Eaſt two miles, Eaſt-North-Eaſt one mile, North-North-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt half a mile, Eaſt-South-Eaſt a quarter of a mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt half a mile, North-Eaſt two miles, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles and a quarter, South-Eaſt by Eaſt a quarter of a mile; a rivulet from the left; Eaſt by North a mile and an half, Eaſt by South one mile, Eaſt-North-Eaſt one mile and three quarters; a river on the right; North-North-Eaſt three quarters of a mile, North-Eaſt a mile and an half, North-Eaſt by Eaſt a mile and a quarter, Eaſt-North-Eaſt half a mile, and North-Eaſt by North half a mile. Here we landed at our encampment of the 27th of June, from whence I diſpatched a letter in an empty keg, as was mentioned in that period of my journal, which ſet forth our exiſting ſtate, progreſs, and expectation.

Though the weather was clear, we could not embark this morning before five, as there was a rapid very near us, which required day-light to run it, that we might not break our canoe on the rocks. The bag- Tueſday 20.

gage

1793. August. gage we were obliged to carry. Our courſe was North by Eaſt a mile and an half, North-North-Eaſt a mile and an half down another rapid on the Weſt ſide; it requires great care to keep directly between the eddy current, and that which was driving down with ſo much impetuoſity. We then proceeded North-North-Weſt, a river from the right; a mile and a quarter, North-North-Eaſt a mile and an half, a river from the left; North one mile and three quarters, North-Eaſt two miles, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles and a quarter, Eaſt by North one mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt four miles, a river from the left, and Eaſt by South a mile and an half. Here was our encampment on the 26th of May, beyond which it would be altogether ſuperfluous for me to take the courſes, as they are inſerted in their proper places.

As we continued our voyage, our attention was attracted by the appearance of an Indian encampment. We accordingly landed, and found there had been five fires, and within that number of days, ſo that there muſt have been ſome inhabitants in the neighbourhood, though we were not ſo fortunate as to ſee them. It appeared that they had killed a number of animals, and fled in a ſtate of alarm, as three of their canoes were left careleſsly on the beach, and their paddles laying about in diſorder. We ſoon after came to the carrying-place called the Portage de la Montagne de Roche. Here I had a meridian altitude, which made the latitude 56. 3. 51. North.

The water, as I have already obſerved, was much lower than when we came up it, though at the ſame time, the current appeared to be ſtronger from this place to the forks; the navigation, however, would now be attended with greater facility, as there is a ſtony beech all the way, ſo that

that poles, or the towing line, may be employed with the beſt effect, where the current overpowers the uſe of paddles. 1793. Auguſt.

We were now reduced to a very ſhort allowance; the diſappointment, therefore, at not ſeeing any animals was proportioned to our exigences, as we did not poſſeſs at this time more than was ſufficient to ſerve us for two meals. I now diſpatched Mr. Mackay and the Indians to proceed to the foot of the rapids, and endeavour in their way to procure ſome proviſions, while I prepared to employ the utmoſt expedition in getting there; having determined, notwithſtanding the diſinclination of my people, from the recollection of what they had ſuffered in coming that way, to return by the ſame route. I had obſerved, indeed, that the water which had fallen fifteen feet perpendicular, at the narrow paſs below us, had loſt much of its former turbulence.

As diſpatch was eſſential in procuring a ſupply of proviſions, we did not delay a moment in making preparation to renew our progreſs. Five of the men began to carry the baggage, while the ſixth and myſelf took the canoe aſunder, to cleanſe her of the dirt, and expoſe her lining and timbers to the air, which would render her much lighter. About ſun-ſet Mr. Mackay and our hunters returned with heavy burdens of the fleſh of a buffalo: though not very tender, it was very acceptable, and was the only animal that they had ſeen, though the country was covered with tracks of them, as well as of the mooſe-deer and the elk. The former had done rutting, and the latter were beginning to run. Our people returned, having left their loads mid-way on the carrying place. My companion and myſelf completed our

1793. August. undertaking, and the canoe was ready to be carried in the morning. An hearty meal concluded the day, and every fear of future want was removed.

Wedneſ. 21. When the morning dawned we ſet forwards, but as a fire had paſſed through the portage, it was with difficulty we could trace our road in many parts; and with all the exertion of which we were capable, we did not arrive at the river till four in the afternoon. We found almoſt as much difficulty in carrying our canoe down the mountain as we had in getting it up; the men being not ſo ſtrong as on the former occaſion, though they were in better ſpirits; and I was now enabled to aſſiſt them, my ancle being almoſt well. We could not, however, proceed any further till the following day, as we had the canoe to gum, with ſeveral great and ſmall poles to prepare; thoſe we had left here having been carried away by the water, though we had left them in a poſition from fifteen to twenty feet above the water-mark, at that time. Theſe occupations employed us till a very late hour.

Thurſd. 22. The night was cold, and though the morning was fine and clear, it was ſeven before we were in a ſtate of preparation to leave this place, ſometimes driving with the current, and at other times ſhooting the rapids. The latter had loſt much of their former ſtrength; but we, nevertheleſs, thought it neceſſary to land very frequently, in order to examine the rapids before we could venture to run them. However, the canoe being light, we very fortunately paſſed them all, and at noon arrived at the place where I appointed to meet Mr. Mackay and the hunters: there we found them, with plenty of excellent fat meat, ready

ready roaſted, as they had killed two elks within a few hundred yards of the ſpot where we then were. When the men had ſatisfied their appetites, I ſent them for as much of the meat as they could carry. In coming hither, Mr. Mackay informed me, that he and the hunters kept along the high land, and did not ſee or croſs the Indian path. At the ſame time, there can be no doubt but the road from this place to the upper part of the rapids is to be preferred to that which we came, both for expedition and ſafety. 1793. Auguſt.

After ſtaying here about an hour and an half, we proceeded with the ſtream, and landed where I had forgotten my pipe-tomahawk and ſeal, on the eighteenth of May. The former of them I now recovered.

On leaving the mountains we ſaw animals grazing in every direction. In paſſing along an iſland, we fired at an elk, and broke its leg; and, as it was now time to encamp, we landed; when the hunters purſued the wounded animal, which had croſſed over to the main land, but could not get up the bank. We went after it, therefore, in the canoe, and killed it. To give ſome notion of our appetites, I ſhall ſtate the elk, or at leaſt the carcaſe of it, which we brought away, to have weighed two hundred and fifty pounds; and as we had taken a very hearty meal at one o'clock, it might naturally be ſuppoſed that we ſhould not be very voracious at ſupper; nevertheleſs, a kettle full of the elk fleſh was boiled and eaten, and that veſſel repleniſhed and put on the fire. All that remained, with the bones, &c. was placed, after the Indian faſhion, round the fire to roaſt,

1793. August. and at ten next morning the whole was conſumed by ten perſons and a large dog, who was allowed his ſhare of the banquet. This is no exaggeration; nor did any inconvenience reſult from what may be conſidered as an inordinate indulgence.

Friday 23. We were on the water before day-light; and when the ſun roſe a beautiful country appeared around us, enriched and animated by large herds of wild cattle. The weather was now ſo warm, that to us, who had not of late been accuſtomed to heat, it was overwhelming and oppreſſive. In the courſe of this day we killed a buffalo and a bear; but we were now in the midſt of abundance, and they were not ſufficiently fat to ſatisfy our faſtidious appetites, ſo we left them where they fell. We landed for the night, and prepared ourſelves for arriving at the Fort on the following day.

Saturday 24. The weather was the ſame as yeſterday, and the country increaſing in beauty; though as we approached the Fort, the cattle appeared proportionably to diminiſh. We now landed at two lodges of Indians, who were as aſtoniſhed to ſee us, as if we had been the firſt white men whom they had ever beheld. When we had paſſed theſe people not an animal was to be ſeen on the borders of the river.

At length, as we rounded a point, and came in view of the Fort, we threw out our flag, and accompanied it with a general diſcharge of our fire-arms; while the men were in ſuch ſpirits, and made ſuch an active uſe of their paddles, that we arrived before the two men whom we left

left here in the ſpring, could recover their ſenſes to anſwer us. Thus we landed at four in the afternoon, at the place which we left on the ninth of May.———Here my voyages of diſcovery terminate. Their toils and their dangers, their ſolicitudes and ſufferings, have not been exaggerated in my deſcription. On the contrary, in many inſtances, language has failed me in the attempt to deſcribe them. I received, however, the reward of my labours, for they were crowned with ſucceſs. 1793. Auguſt.

As I have now reſumed the character of a trader, I ſhall not trouble my readers with any ſubſequent concern, but content myſelf with the cloſing information, that after an abſence of eleven months, I arrived at Fort Chepewyan, where I remained, for the purpoſes of trade, during the ſucceeding winter.

THE following general, but ſhort, geographical view of the country may not be improper to cloſe this work, as well as ſome remarks on the probable advantages that may be derived from advancing the trade of it, under proper regulations, and by the ſpirit of commercial enterprize.

By ſuppoſing a line from the Atlantic, Eaſt, to the Pacific, Weſt, in the parallel of forty-five degrees of North latitude, it will, I think, nearly deſcribe the Britiſh territories in North America. For I am of opinion, that the extent of the country to the South of this line, which we have a right to claim, is equal to that to the North of it, which may be claimed by other powers.

The

The outline of what I ſhall call the firſt diviſion, is along that track of country which runs from the head of James-Bay, in about latitude 51. North, along the Eaſtern coaſt, as far North as to, and through, Hudſon's Straits, round by Labrador; continuing on the Atlantic coaſt, on the outſide of the great iſlands, in the gulf of St. Laurence, to the river St. Croix, by which it takes its courſe, to the height of land that divides the waters emptying themſelves into the Atlantic, from thoſe diſcharged into the river St. Laurence. Then following theſe heights, as the boundary between the Britiſh poſſeſſions, and thoſe of the American States, it makes an angle Weſterly until it ſtrikes the diſcharge of Lake Champlain, in latitude 45. North, when it keeps a direct Weſt line till it ſtrikes the river St. Laurence, above Lake St. Francis, where it divides the Indian village St. Rigeſt; from whence it follows the centre of the waters of the great river St. Laurence: it then proceeds through Lake Ontario, the connection between it and Lake Erie; through the latter, and its chain of connection, by the river Detroit, as far South as latitude 42. North, and then through the lake and river St. Clair, as alſo Lake Huron, through which it continues to the ſtrait of St. Mary, latitude 46½. North; from which we will ſuppoſe the line to ſtrike to the Eaſt of North, to the head of James-Bay, in the latitude already mentioned.

Of this great tract, more than half is repreſented as barren and broken, diſplaying a ſurface of rock and freſh water lakes, with a very ſcattered and ſcanty proportion of ſoil. Such is the whole coaſt of Labrador, and the land, called Eaſt Main to the Weſt of the heights, which divide the waters running into the river and gulf of St. Laurence, from thoſe flowing into Hudſon's Bay. It is conſequently inhabited only by a few

a few ſavages, whoſe numbers are proportioned to the ſcantineſs of the ſoil; nor is it probable, from the ſame cauſe, that they will encreaſe. The freſh and ſalt waters, with a ſmall quantity of game, which the few, ſtinted woods afford, ſupply the wants of nature: from whence, to that of the line of the American boundary, and the Atlantic ocean, the ſoil, wherever cultivation has been attempted, has yielded abundance; particularly on the river St. Laurence, from Quebec upwards, to the line of boundary already mentioned; but a very inconſiderable proportion of it has been broken by the ploughſhare.

The line of the ſecond diviſion may be traced from that of the firſt at St. Mary's, from which alſo the line of American boundary runs, and is ſaid to continue through Lake Superior, (and through a lake called the Long Lake which has no exiſtence), to the Lake of the Woods, in latitude 49. 37. North, from whence it is alſo ſaid to run Weſt to the Miſſiſſipi, which it may do, by giving it a good deal of Southing, but not otherwiſe; as the ſource of that river does not extend further North than latitude 47. 38. North, where it is no more than a ſmall brook; conſequently, if Great-Britain retains the right of entering it along the line of diviſion, it muſt be in a lower latitude, and wherever that may be, the line muſt be continued Weſt, till it terminates in the Pacific Ocean, to the South of the Columbia. This diviſion is then bounded by the Pacific Ocean on the Weſt, the Frozen Sea and Hudſon's Bay on the North and Eaſt. The Ruſſians, indeed, may claim with juſtice, the iſlands and coaſt from Behring's Straits to Cook's Entry.

The

The whole of this country will long continue in the poſſeſſion of its preſent inhabitants, as they will remain contented with the produce of the woods and waters for their ſupport, leaving the earth, from various cauſes, in its virgin ſtate. The proportion of it that is fit for cultivation is very ſmall, and is ſtill leſs in the interior parts: it is alſo very difficult of acceſs; and whilſt any land remains uncultivated to the South of it, there will be no temptation to ſettle it. Beſides, its climate is not in general ſufficiently genial to bring the fruits of the earth to maturity. It will alſo be an aſylum for the deſcendants of the original inhabitants of the country to the South, who prefer the modes of life of their forefathers, to the improvements of civiliſation. Of this diſpoſition there is a recent inſtance. A ſmall colony of Iroquois emigrated to the banks of the Saſkatchiwine, in 1799, who had been brought up from their infancy under the Romiſh miſſionaries, and inſtructed by them at a village within nine miles of Montreal.

A further diviſion of this country is marked by a ridge of high land, riſing, as it were, from the coaſt of Labrador, and running nearly South-Weſt to the ſource of the Utawas River, dividing the waters going either way to the river and gulf of St. Laurence and Hudſon's Bay, as before obſerved. From thence it ſtretches to the North of Weſt, to the Northward of Lake Superior, to latitude 50. North, and longitude 89. Weſt, when it forks from the laſt courſe at about South-Weſt, and continues the ſame diviſion of waters until it paſſes North of the ſource of the Miſſiſſipi. The former courſe runs, as has been obſerved, in a North-Weſt direction, until it ſtrikes the river Nelſon, ſeparating the waters that diſcharge themſelves into Lake Winipic, which forms part

of

of the ſaid river, and thoſe that alſo empty themſelves into Hudſon's Bay, by the Albany, Severn, and Hay's or Hill's Rivers. From thence it keeps a courſe of about Weſt-North-Weſt, till it forms the banks of the Miſſinipi or Churchill River, at Portage de Traite, latitude 55. 25. North. It now continues in a Weſtern direction, between the Saſkatchiwine and the ſource of the Miſſinipi, or Beaver River, which it leaves behind, and divides the Saſkatchiwine from the Elk River; when, leaving thoſe alſo behind, and purſuing the ſame direction it leads to the high land that lies between the Unjigah and Tacoutche rivers, from whence it may be ſuppoſed to be the ſame ridge. From the head of the Beaver River, on the Weſt, the ſame kind of high ground runs to the Eaſt of North, between the waters of the Elk River and the Miſſinipi forming the Portage la Loche, and continuing on to the latitude 57¼. North, dividing the waters that run to Hudſon's Bay from thoſe going to the North Sea: from thence its courſe is nearly North, when an angle runs from it to the North of the Slave Lake, till it ſtrikes Mackenzie's River.

The laſt, but by no means the leaſt, is the immenſe ridge, or ſucceſſion of ridges of ſtony mountains, whoſe Northern extremity dips in the North Sea, in latitude 70. North, and longitude 135. Weſt, running nearly South-Eaſt, and begins to be parallel with the coaſt of the Pacific Ocean, from Cook's entry, and ſo onwards to the Columbia. From thence it appears to quit the coaſt, but ſtill continuing, with leſs elevation, to divide the waters of the Atlantic from thoſe which run into the Pacific. In thoſe ſnow-clad mountains riſes the Miſſiſſippi, if we admit the Miſſiſouri to be its ſource,

which flows into the Gulph of Mexico; the River Nelſon, which is loſt in Hudſon's Bay; Mackenzie's River, that diſcharges itſelf into the North Sea; and the Columbia emptying itſelf into the Pacific Ocean. The great River St. Laurence and Churchill River, with many leſſer ones, derive their ſources far ſhort of theſe mountains. It is, indeed, the extenſion of theſe mountains ſo far South on the ſea-coaſt, that prevents the Columbia from finding a more direct courſe to the ſea, as it runs obliquely with the coaſt upwards of eight degrees of latitude before it mingles with the ocean.

It is further to be obſerved, that theſe mountains, from Cook's entry to the Columbia, extend from ſix to eight degrees in breadth Eaſterly; and that along their Eaſtern ſkirts is a narrow ſtrip of very marſhy, boggy, and uneven ground, the outer edge of which produces coal and bitumen: theſe I ſaw on the banks of Mackenzie's River, as far North as latitude 66. I alſo diſcovered them in my ſecond journey, at the commencement of the rocky mountains in 56. North latitude, and 120. Weſt longitude; and the ſame was obſerved by Mr. Fidler, one of the ſervants of the Hudſon's-Bay Company, at the ſource of the South branch of the Saſkatchiwine, in about latitude 52. North, and longitude 112½. Weſt.* Next to this narrow belt are immenſe plains, or meadows, commencing in a point at about the junction of the River of the Mountain with Mackenzie's River, widening as they continue Eaſt and South, till they reach the Red River at its confluence with the Aſſiniboin River, from whence

* Bitumen is alſo found on the coaſt of the Slave Lake, in latitude 60. North, near its diſcharge by Mackenzie's River; and alſo near the forks of the Elk River.

they

they take a more Southern direction, along the Miſſiſſippi towards Mexico. Adjoining to theſe plains is a broken country, compoſed of lakes, rocks, and ſoil.

From the banks of the rivers running through the plains, there appeared to ooze a ſaline fluid, concreting into a thin, ſcurf on the graſs. Near that part of the Slave River where it firſt loſes the name of Peace River, and along the extreme edge of theſe plains, are very ſtrong ſalt ſprings, which in the ſummer concrete and cryſtallize in great quantities. About the Lake Dauphin, on the South-Weſt ſide of Lake Winipic, are alſo many ſalt ponds, but it requires a regular proceſs to form ſalt from them. Along the Weſt banks of the former is to be ſeen, at intervals, and traced in the line of the direction of the plains, a ſoft rock of lime-ſtone, in thin and nearly horizontal ſtratas, particularly on the Beaver, Cedar, Winipic, and Superior lakes, as alſo in the beds of the rivers croſſing that line. It is alſo remarkable that, at the narroweſt part of Lake Winipic, where it is not more than two miles in breadth, the Weſt ſide is faced with rocks of this ſtone thirty feet perpendicular; while, on the Eaſt ſide, the rocks are more elevated, and of a dark-grey granite.

The latter is to be found throughout the whole extent North of this country, to the coaſt of Hudſon's Bay, and as I have been informed, from that coaſt, onwards to the coaſt of Labrador; and it may be further obſerved, that between theſe extenſive ranges of granite and lime-ſtone are found all the great lakes of this country.

There is another very large diſtrict which muſt not be forgotten; and behind all the others in ſituation as well as in ſoil, produce, and climate. This comprehends the tract called the Barren Grounds, which is to the North of a line drawn from Churchill, along the North border of the Rein-Deer Lake, to the North of the Lake of the Hills and Slave Lake, and along the North ſide of the latter to the rocky mountains, which terminate in the North Sea, latitude 70. North, and longitude 135. Weſt; in the whole extent of which no trees are viſible, except a few ſtinted ones, ſcattered along its rivers, and with ſcarce any thing of ſurface that can be called earth; yet, this inhoſpitable region is inhabited by a people who are accuſtomed to the life it requires. Nor has bountiful Nature withheld the means of ſubſiſtence; the rein deer, which ſupply both food and clothing, are ſatisfied with the produce of the hills, though they bear nothing but a ſhort curling moſs, on a ſpecies of which, that grows on the rocks, the people themſelves ſubſiſt when famine invades them. Their ſmall lakes are not furniſhed with a great variety of fiſh, but ſuch as they produce are excellent, which, with hares and partridges, form a proportion of their food.

The climate muſt neceſſarily be ſevere in ſuch a country as we have deſcribed, and which diſplays ſo large a ſurface of freſh water. Its ſeverity is extreme on the coaſt of Hudſon's Bay, and proceeds from its immediate expoſure to the North-Weſt winds that blow off the Frozen Ocean.

Theſe winds, in croſſing directly from the bay over Canada and the

Britiſh

British dominions on the Atlantic, as well as over the Eaſtern States of North America to that ocean, (where they give to thoſe countries a length of winter aſtoniſhing to the inhabitants of the ſame latitudes in Europe), continue to retain a great degree of force and cold in their paſſage, even over the Atlantic, particularly at the time when the ſun is in its Southern declination. The ſame winds which come from the Frozen Ocean, over the barren grounds, and acroſs frozen lakes and ſnowy plains, bounded by the rocky mountains, loſe their frigid influence, as they travel in a Southern direction, till they get to the Atlantic Ocean, where they cloſe their progreſs. Is not this a ſufficient cauſe for the difference between the climate in America, and that of the ſame latitude in Europe?

It has been frequently advanced, that the difference of clearing away the wood has had an aſtoniſhing influence in meliorating the climate in the former: but I am not diſpoſed to aſſent to that opinion in the extent which it propoſes to eſtabliſh, when I conſider the very trifling proportion of the country cleared, compared with the whole. The employment of the axe may have had ſome inconſiderable effect; but I look to other cauſes. I myſelf obſerved in a country, which was in an abſolute ſtate of nature, that the climate is improving; and this circumſtance was confirmed to me by the native inhabitants of it. Such a change, therefore, muſt proceed from ſome predominating operation in the ſyſtem of the globe which is beyond my conjecture, and, indeed, above my comprehenſion, and may, probably, in the courſe of time, give to America the climate of Europe. It is well known, indeed, that the waters are decreaſing there, and that many lakes are draining and filling up by the earth

which

which is carried into them from the higher lands by the rivers: and this may have ſome partial effect.

The climate on the Weſt coaſt of America aſſimilates much more to that of Europe in the ſame latitudes: I think very little difference will be found, except ſuch as proceeds from the vicinity of high mountains covered with ſnow. This is an additional proof that the difference in the temperature of the air proceeds from the cauſe already mentioned.

Much has been ſaid, and much more ſtill remains to be ſaid on the peopling of America. On this ſubject I ſhall confine myſelf to one or two obſervations, and leave my readers to draw their inferences from them.

The progreſs of the inhabitants of the country immediately under our obſervation, which is compriſed within the line of latitude 45. North, is as follows: that of the Eſquimaux, who poſſeſs the ſea coaſt from the Atlantic through Hudſon's Straits and Bay, round to Mackenzie's River, (and I believe further) is known to be weſtward: they never quit the coaſt, and agree in appearance, manners, language, and habits with the inhabitants of Greenland. The different tribes whom I deſcribe under the name of Algonquins and Kniſteneaux, but originally the ſame people, were the inhabitants of the Atlantic coaſt, and the banks of the river St. Laurence and adjacent countries: their progreſs is Weſterly, and they are even found Weſt and North as far

as

as Athabaſca. On the contrary, the Chepewyans, and the numerous tribes who ſpeak their language, occupy the whole ſpace between the Kniſteneaux country and that of the Eſquimaux, ſtretching behind the natives of the coaſt of the Pacific, to latitude 52. North, on the river Columbia. Their progreſs is Eaſterly; and, according to their own traditions, they came from Siberia; agreeing in dreſs and manner with the people now found upon the coaſt of Aſia.

Of the inhabitants of the coaſt of the Pacific Ocean we know little more than that they are ſtationary there. The Nadowaſis or Aſſiniboins, as well as the different tribes not particularly deſcribed, inhabiting the plains on and about the ſource and banks of the Saſkatchiwine and Aſſiniboin rivers, are from the Southward, and their progreſs is North-Weſt.

The diſcovery of a paſſage by ſea, North-Eaſt or North-Weſt from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, has for many years excited the attention of governments, and encouraged the enterpriſing ſpirit of individuals. The non-exiſtence, however, of any ſuch practical paſſage being at length determined, the practicability of a paſſage through the continents of Aſia and America becomes an object of conſideration. The Ruſſians, who firſt diſcovered that, along the coaſts of Aſia no uſeful or regular navigation exiſted, opened an interior communication by rivers, &c.

and

through that long and wide-extended continent, to the ſtrait that ſeparates Aſia from America, over which they paſſed to the adjacent iſlands and continent of the latter. Our ſituation, at length, is in ſome degree ſimilar to theirs: the non-exiſtence of a practicable paſſage by ſea, and the exiſtence of one through the continent, are clearly proved; and it requires only the countenance and ſupport of the Britiſh Government, to increaſe in a very ample proportion this national advantage, and ſecure the trade of that country to its ſubjects.

Experience, however, has proved, that this trade, from its very nature cannot be carried on by individuals. A very large capital, or credit, or indeed both, is neceſſary, and conſequently an aſſociation of men of wealth to direct, with men of enterpriſe to act, in one common intereſt, muſt be formed on ſuch principles, as that in due time the latter may ſucceed the former, in continual and progreſſive ſucceſſion. Such was the equitable and ſucceſsful mode adopted by the merchants from Canada, which has been already deſcribed.

The junction of ſuch a commercial aſſociation with the Hudſon's-Bay Company, is the important meaſure which I would propoſe, and the trade might then be carried on with a very ſuperior degree of advantage, both private and public, under the privilege of their charter, and would prove, in fact, the complete fulfilment of the conditions, on which it was firſt granted.

It would be an equal injuſtice to either party to be excluded from the option

option of ſuch an undertaking; for if the one has a right by charter, has not the other a right by prior poſſeſſion, as being ſucceſſors to the ſubjects of France, who were excluſively poſſeſſed of all the then known parts of this country, before Canada was ceded to Great-Britain, except the coaſt of Hudſon's Bay, and having themſelves been the diſcoverers of a vaſt extent of country ſince added to his Majeſty's territories, even to the Hyperborean and the Pacific Oceans?

If, therefore, that company ſhould decline, or be averſe to engage in, ſuch an extenſive, and perhaps hazardous, undertaking, it would not, ſurely, be an unreaſonable propoſal to them, from government, to give up a right which they refuſe to exerciſe, on allowing them a juſt and reaſonable indemnification for their ſtock, regulated by the average dividends of a certain number of years, or the actual price at which they transfer their ſtock.

By enjoying the privilege of the company's charter, though but for a limited period, there are adventurers who would be willing, as they are able, to engage in, and carry on the propoſed commercial undertaking, as well as to give the moſt ample and ſatisfactory ſecurity to government for the fulfilment of its contract with the company. It would, at the ſame time, be equally neceſſary to add a ſimilar privilege of trade on the Columbia River, and its tributary waters.

If however, it ſhould appear that the Hudſon's-Bay Company have an excluſive right to carry on their trade as they think proper, and continue it on the narrow ſcale, and with ſo little benefit to the public as they now do; if they ſhould refuſe to enter into a co-operative junction with

others, what reaſonable cauſe can they aſſign to government for denying the navigation of the bay to Nelſon's River; and, by its waters, a paſſage to and from the interior country, for the uſe of the adventurers, and for the ſole purpoſe of tranſport, under the moſt ſevere and binding reſtrictions not to interfere with their trade on the coaſt, and the country between it and the actual eſtabliſhments of the Canadian traders*.

By theſe waters that diſcharge themſelves into Hudſon's Bay at Port Nelſon, it is propoſed to carry on the trade to their ſource, at the head of the Saſkatchiwine River, which riſes in the Rocky Mountains, not eight degrees of longitude from the Pacific Ocean. The Tacoutche or Columbia river flows alſo from the ſame mountains, and diſcharges itſelf likewiſe in the Pacific, in latitude 46. 20. Both of them are capable of receiving ſhips at their mouths, and are navigable throughout for boats.

The diſtance between theſe waters is only known from the report of the Indians. If, however, this communication ſhould prove inacceſſible, the route I purſued, though longer, in conſequence of the great

* Independent of the proſecution of this great object, I conceive that the merchants from Canada are entitled to ſuch anindulgence, (evenif they ſhould be conſidered as not poſſeſſing a rightful claim,) in order that they might be enabled to extend their trade beyond their preſent limits, and have it in their power to ſupply the natives with a larger quantity of uſeful articles; the enhanced value of which, and the preſent difficulty of tranſporting them, will be fully comprehended when I relate, that the tract of tranſport occupies an extent of from three to four thouſand miles, through upwards of ſixty large lakes, and numerous rivers; and that the means of tranſport are ſlight bark canoes. It muſt alſo be obſerved, that thoſe waters are intercepted by more than two hundred rapids, along which the articles of merchandiſe are chiefly carried on men's backs, and over an hundred and thirty carrying-places, from twenty-five paces to thirteen miles in length, where the canoes and cargoes proceed by the ſame toilſome and perilous operations.

angle

angle it makes to the North, will anſwer every neceſſary purpoſe. But whatever courſe may be taken from the Atlantic, the Columbia is the line of communication from the Pacific Ocean, pointed out by nature, as it is the only navigable river in the whole extent of Vancouver's minute ſurvey of that coaſt: its banks alſo form the firſt level country in all the Southern extent of continental coaſt from Cook's entry, and, conſequently, the moſt Northern ſituation fit for colonization, and ſuitable to the reſidence of a civilized people. By opening this intercourſe between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, and forming regular eſtabliſhments through the interior, and at both extremes, as well as along the coaſts and iſlands, the entire command of the fur trade of North America might be obtained, from latitude 48. North to the pole, except that portion of it which the Ruſſians have in the Pacific. To this may be added the fiſhing in both ſeas, and the markets of the four quarters of the globe. Such would be the field for commercial enterpriſe, and incalculable would be the produce of it, when ſupported by the operations of that credit and capital which Great Britain ſo pre-eminently poſſeſſes. Then would this country begin to be remunerated for the expences it has ſuſtained in diſcovering and ſurveying the coaſt of the Pacific Ocean, which is at preſent left to American adventurers, who without regularity or capital, or the deſire of conciliating future confidence, look altogether to the intereſt of the moment. They, therefore, collect all the ſkins they can procure, and in any manner that ſuits them, and having exchanged them at Canton for the produce of China, return to their own country. Such adventurers, and many of them, as I have been informed, have been very ſucceſsful, would inſtantly diſappear from before a well-regulated trade.

It would be very unbecoming in me to ſuppoſe for a moment, that the Eaſt India Company would heſitate to allow thoſe privileges to their fellow-ſubjects which are permitted to foreigners, in a trade that is ſo much out of the line of their own commerce, and therefore cannot be injurious to it.

Many political reaſons, which it is not neceſſary here to enumerate, muſt preſent themſelves to the mind of every man acquainted with the enlarged ſyſtem and capacities of Britiſh commerce, in ſupport of the meaſure which I have very briefly ſuggeſted, as promiſing the moſt important advantages to the trade of the united kingdoms.

THE END.

R. Noble,
Old Bailey.

ERRATA.

The Reader is particularly requeſted to attend to the following Errata, *as they are eſſential to the ſenſe of the paſſages to which they apply.*

PRELIMINARY ACCOUNT OF THE FUR TRADE.

Page 12,	Line	2,	*for* Croix *read* Croſſe.
		18,	*for* thirty *read* forty.
15,		16,	*for* Miſſiſſooric *read* Miſſiſouri.
17,		11,	*dele* Portage.
21,		9,	*for* and Montreal, where they received ſtores *read* and at Montreal, where they received, ſtored, &c.
27,		17,	*for* others *read* winterers.
28,		28,	*for* four *read* eight.
		12,	*for* this *read* the.
31,		24,	*for* over *read* to.
32,		14,	*for* at *read* to.
33,		7,	*for* Portage *read* décharge.
		11,	*inſtead of* but a very ſhort diſtance from Lake Coulonge *read* at a very ſhort diſtance from the Décharge.
34,		8,	*for* the latter comes in *read* the latter river comes from.
		26,	*after the word* paces *add* next to this is mauvais de Muſique, where, &c.
35,		3,	*inſtead of* take its ſource from the firſt vaſe to the great river *read* at the firſt vaſe, from whence the great river.
		5,	*for* the whole diſtance *read* the diſtance of this Portage.
36,		5,	*for* in every lake and river *read* along every great river.
39,		22,	*dele* the whole of.
40,		8,	*for* St. Mary's *read* St. Mary's coaſtways.
43,		22,	*for* clear *read* is cleared of wood.
46,		14,	*for* about *read* in.
50,		4,	*for* Perche *read* Peche.
		16,	*for* they *read* we.
51,		4,	*for* which leads through *read* which conducts theſe waters through the ſucceeding lakes and rivers, till they diſcharge themſelves.
		11,	*for* ends *read* runs.
		12,	*dele* falling into a lake-pond.
52,		4,	*for* la Roche *read* le Roché.
53,		6,	*for* lake Paſcau, &c. *read* Paſſeau Minac Sagaigan, or lake of Dry Berries.
54,		4,	*for* portage *read* pointe.
55,		21,	*after* an half, *place a period*; *after* water, *a comma*.
56,		2,	*for* land *read* lake.
60,		3,	*for* that enters lake Winipic, *read* which enters that lake.
63,		15,	*dele* off.
73,		4,	*for* pounds *read* ſhillings.
		5,	*for* which *read* of which.
		21,	*dele* of the lake.
80,		20,	*for* Croiſé *read* Croſſe.
83,		17,	*dele* and a.
101,		4,	*for* beech-tree *read* birch-tree.
106,		18,	*for* conſiderable *read* inconſiderable.

JOURNALS

ERRATA.

JOURNALS OF THE VOYAGES, &c.

Page 8,	Line 20,	*for* 1785 *read* 1786.
14,		in the ſecond note, *for* fiſh *read* fleſh.
18,	7,	*for* Frenchmen *read* Canadians.
23,	12,	*for* evening *read* morning.
27,	10,	*for* army *read* arms.
48,	10,	*for* curve *read* groove.
88,	10,	*for* whirtle-berries *read* hurtle-berries.
104,	12,	*for* them *read* it.
105,	8,	*for* obtained *read* completed.
109,	10,	*dele* five geeſe.
133,	9,	*for* theſe people *read* my people.
138,	14,	*for* the *read* his.
141,	3,	*for* the hunter *read* our hunter.
157,	20,	*dele* where.
	21,	*for* iſland ſeveral *read* where ſeveral.
184,	9,	*for* according *read* accordingly.
211,	16,	*for* Eaſt by Eaſt *read* Eaſt-South-Eaſt.
216,		date omitted.
	17,	*read* Wedneſday 12.
257,	9,	*for* Chin Indians *read* Carrier Indians, and *vice verſâ*.
288,	20,	*for* ſtruck *read* ſtuck.
297,		date wanting.
322,	14,	*for* and *read* or.
332,	14,	*for* ſkin of a lynx *read* ſkins of the lynx.
334,	3,	*for* beat into bars *read* in bars.
335,	6,	*for* their iron is manufactured only into *read* their manufactured iron conſiſts only of.
351,	1,	in the note, *for* poſitively *read* earneſtly.
	2,	*for* paſſage *read* practicable paſſage.
381,	22,	*dele* 0. 1. 11.
388,	17,	*for* Cando *read* Canada.
403,	22,	*for* from *read* along.
404,	13,	*dele* difference of.
410,	11,	*for* and Columbia rivers flow *read* or Columbia River flows.
	12,	*for* themſelves *read* itſelf.
	7,	in the note, *for* large lakes *read* large freſh water lakes.

It is to be obſerved, that the Courſes *throughout the Journals are taken by* Compaſs, *and that the* Variation *muſt be conſidered.*